

## FOREWORD

---

Congratulations on your selection of this Lexus. In Lexus vehicles we have invested all our engineering and design resources; all the know-how we have gained in over 60 years of making automobiles; the highest motivation of our most talented employees; and our tradition of incessant striving toward ever greater quality.

This Owner's Manual explains the features of your new Lexus. Please read it and follow the instructions carefully so that you can enjoy many years of safe motoring.

When it comes to service, remember that your Lexus dealer knows your vehicle best and is interested in your complete satisfaction. Your Lexus dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.

If there is not a Lexus dealer near you, or you need emergency assistance for any reason, please call the following number:

### U.S. OWNERS

☞ When traveling in the U.S. mainland or Canada:  
**Lexus Roadside Assistance 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free)**  
**(1-800-255-3987)**

☞ HAWAII:  
**Lexus Customer Service Assistance 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free)**  
**(1-800-255-3987)**

### CANADIAN OWNERS

☞ When traveling in Canada or the U.S. mainland:  
**Lexus Roadside Assistance/Customer Service 1-800-26-LEXUS (Toll-Free)**  
**(1-800-265-3987)**

**Please leave this Owner's Manual in this vehicle at the time of resale. The next owner will need this information also.**

**All information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.**

**Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.**

**TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION**

## INTRODUCTION

---

### **New vehicle warranty**

Your new vehicle is covered by the following Lexus limited warranties:

- 🔑 New vehicle warranty
- 🔑 Emission control systems warranty
- 🔑 Others

For further information, please refer to the “Owner’s Guide”, “Owner’s Manual Supplement” or “Warranty Booklet”.

### **Your responsibility for maintenance**

It is the owner’s responsibility to make sure the specified maintenance is performed. Section 5 of this Owner’s Manual gives details of these maintenance requirements. Included in Section 6 is general maintenance. For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”.

### **Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus**

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

### **Spark ignition system of your Lexus**

The spark ignition system in your Lexus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard.

### **Installation of a mobile two-way radio system**

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, cruise control system, dynamic laser cruise control system, anti-lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

### **Scrapping of your Lexus**

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as a fire. Be sure to have the system of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

The contents of this manual are explained briefly on this page to help you make the best use of the manual. Please read this page and the rest of the Owner's Manual carefully to make sure you fully understand the operation of your vehicle.

This will help you enjoy safe and comfortable driving.

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

The table of contents and the pictorial index provide easy reference to the appropriate pages.

### BASIC OPERATION – QUICK REFERENCE

Operation of basic equipment is briefly explained in an easily understandable way for quick reference.

### SECTION 1 – INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

The vehicle's equipment is divided into the 7 groups listed below. Use of the equipment is explained, including any points you should pay particular attention to.

1. Keys and doors
2. Switches
3. Gauges, meters and service reminder indicators
4. Interior equipment
5. Exterior equipment
6. Comfort adjustment
7. Theft deterrent

### SECTION 2 – AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO

The features of the vehicle's air conditioning and audio are explained in detail. Be sure to read this section so that you can make full use of them.

### SECTION 3 – STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting the engine, driving, stopping, operation of features affecting vehicle handling, hints on vehicle safety and safe driving techniques are all explained. Please read everything in this section, and remember – drive safely!

### SECTION 4 – IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

This section explains what to do in the event of an urgent situation such as the engine not starting or getting a flat tire, etc. If such a problem occurs, check the contents of this Owner's Manual and follow the instructions given.

### SECTION 5 – MAINTENANCE

This section explains the importance of regular maintenance. Regular and periodic inspection and maintenance of your Lexus will help to keep your vehicle in its best condition.

### SECTION 6 – SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Simple maintenance procedure and service data are provided here for your reference should you wish to perform inspection and maintenance yourself.

### INDEX

The page number is listed for each item in the Owner's Manual so that you can rapidly find the item and page you are searching for.

## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

---

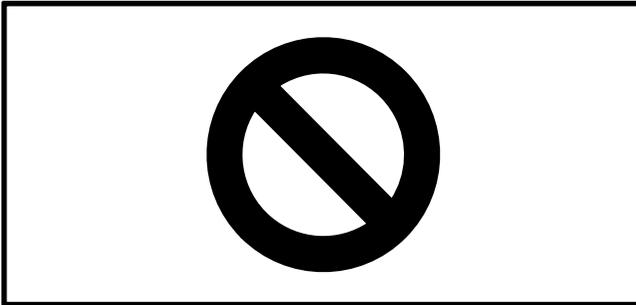
### **GAS STATION INFORMATION**

The information you need to know for appropriate servicing at the gas station is provided here.

### **QUICK INDEX**

This is designed so that you can quickly find the needed information when an urgent situation arises.

### **Safety symbol**



In this manual, you will also see a circle with a slash through it. This means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen".

### **Safety and vehicle damage warnings**

In this manual you will see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings. These are used in the following ways:



**This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.**

### **NOTICE**

*This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.*

Your Lexus Owner's Manual provides you with a considerable amount of information. To use this information most effectively, please take the time to familiarize yourself with the contents and use of the manual.

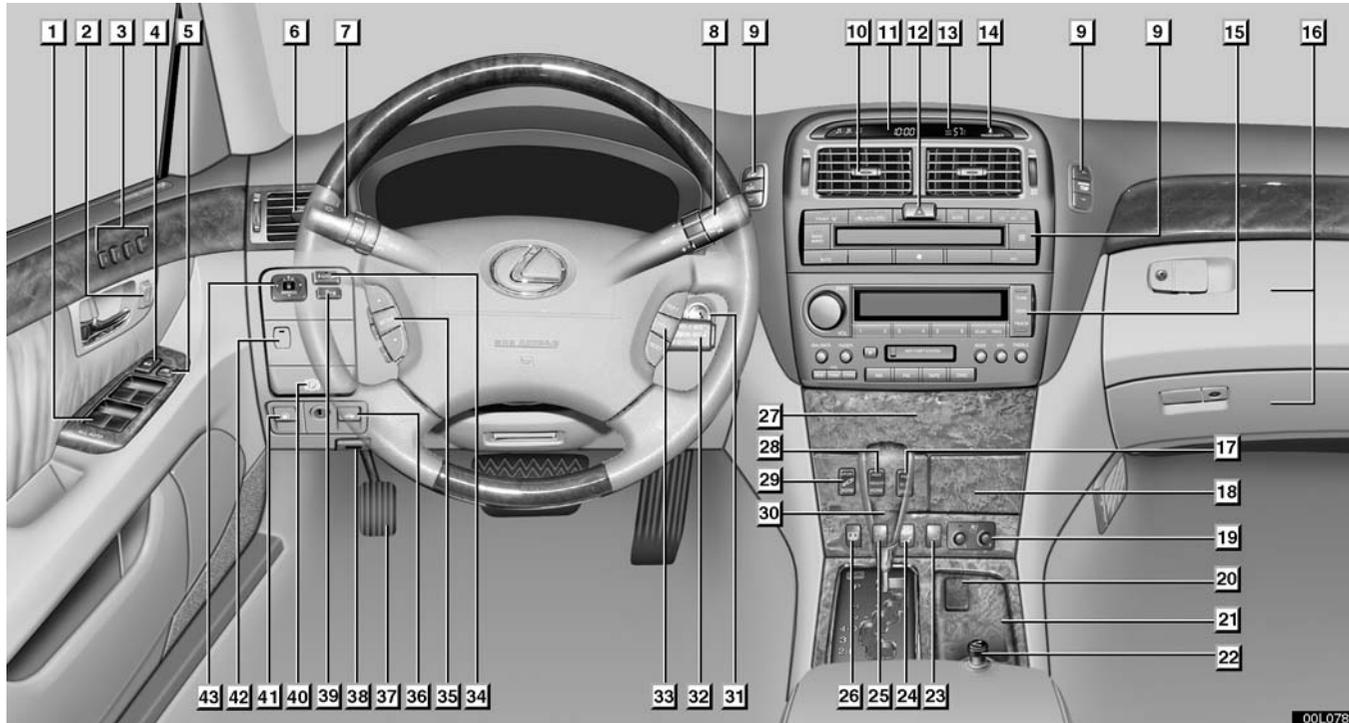
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

<b>BASIC OPERATION</b>	– QUICK REFERENCE .....	1		BASIC OPERATION
<b>SECTION 1</b>	INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS			SECTION 1
	<input type="checkbox"/> Keys and doors .....	7		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Switches .....	23		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Gauges, meters and service reminder indicators .....	43		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Interior equipment .....	69		SECTION 2
	<input type="checkbox"/> Exterior equipment .....	97		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Comfort adjustment .....	107		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Theft deterrent .....	175		SECTION 3
<b>SECTION 2</b>	AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO			
	<input type="checkbox"/> Air conditioning .....	179		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Audio .....	199		SECTION 4
<b>SECTION 3</b>	STARTING AND DRIVING			
	<input type="checkbox"/> Starting and driving .....	229		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Driving tips .....	285		
<b>SECTION 4</b>	IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY .....	297		SECTION 5
<b>SECTION 5</b>	MAINTENANCE .....	333		
<b>SECTION 6</b>	SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS			SECTION 6
	<input type="checkbox"/> Introduction .....	341		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Engine .....	349		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Chassis .....	365		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Electrical components .....	383		SECTION 7
	<input type="checkbox"/> Body .....	403		
<b>SECTION 7</b>	REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS FOR U.S. OWNERS .....	411		
<b>INDEX</b>	.....	413		INDEX
	GAS STATION INFORMATION .....		Inside back cover	
	QUICK INDEX .....		Back cover	

PICTORIAL INDEX

INSTRUMENT PANEL



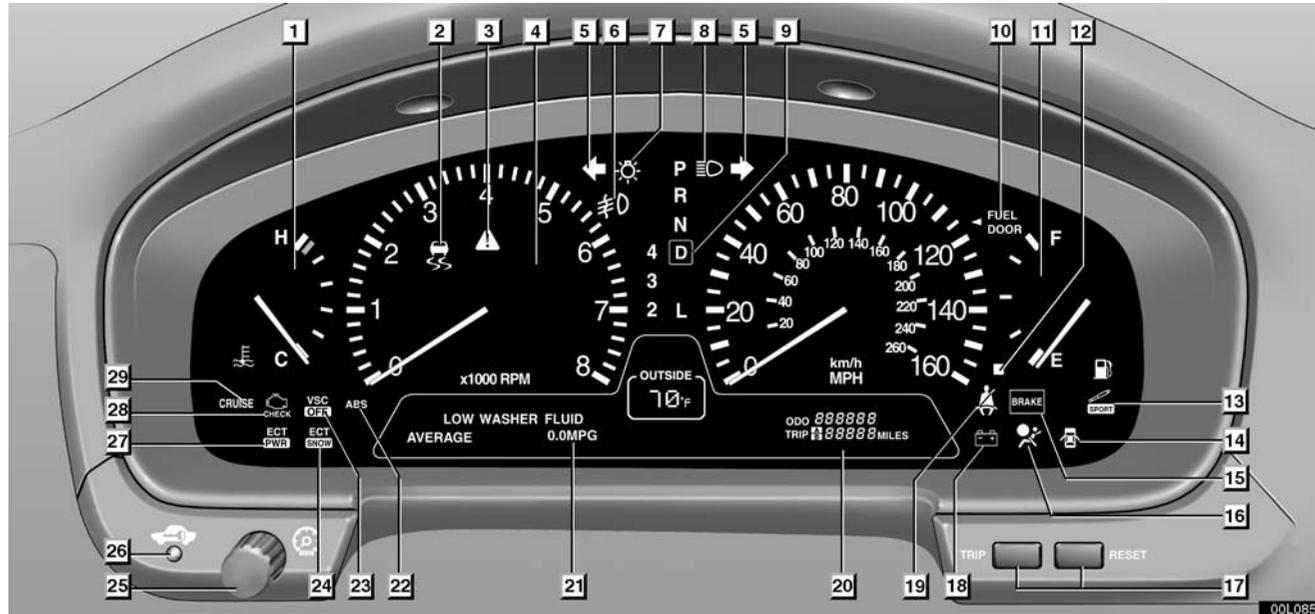
PICTORIAL INDEX

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
<b>1</b>	<i>Power window switches</i> .....	<b>22</b>	<i>Cigarette lighter</i> .....
<b>2</b>	<i>Shoulder anchor control switch</i> .....	<b>23</b>	<i>Headlight cleaner switch</i> .....
<b>3</b>	<i>Driving position memory switch</i> .....	<b>24</b>	<i>Rear seat and rear head restraints</i> <i>return switch</i> .....
<b>4</b>	<i>Door lock switch</i> .....	<b>25</b>	<i>Vehicle skid control system off switch</i> .....
<b>5</b>	<i>Window lock switch</i> .....	<b>26</b>	<i>Rear electric sunshade switch</i> .....
<b>6</b>	<i>Side vents</i> .....	<b>27</b>	<i>CD automatic changer</i> .....
<b>7</b>	<i>Headlight, turn signal and fog</i> <i>light switch</i> .....	<b>28</b>	<i>Height control switch</i> .....
<b>8</b>	<i>Wiper and washer switch</i> .....	<b>29</b>	<i>Damping mode select switch</i> .....
<b>9</b>	<i>Automatic air conditioning controls</i> .....	<b>30</b>	<i>Automatic transmission selector lever</i> .....
<b>10</b>	<i>Center vents</i> .....	<b>31</b>	<i>Ignition switch</i> .....
<b>11</b>	<i>Clock</i> .....	<b>32</b>	<i>Cruise control switch/Dynamic laser cruise</i> <i>control switch</i> .....
<b>12</b>	<i>Emergency flasher switch</i> .....	<b>33</b>	<i>Multi-information display control switch</i> .....
<b>13</b>	<i>Outside temperature display</i> .....	<b>34</b>	<i>Rear view mirror folding switch</i> .....
<b>14</b>	<i>Front passenger's seat belt reminder light</i> .....	<b>35</b>	<i>Steering pad switches</i> .....
<b>15</b>	<i>Car audio</i> .....	<b>36</b>	<i>Trunk lid opener</i> .....
<b>16</b>	<i>Glove box</i> .....	<b>37</b>	<i>Parking brake</i> .....
<b>17</b>	<i>Driving pattern selector switch</i> .....	<b>38</b>	<i>Hood opener</i> .....
<b>18</b>	<i>Auxiliary box</i> .....	<b>39</b>	<i>Lexus park assist system switch</i> .....
<b>19</b>	<i>Seat heater switches/ Climate control seat switches</i> .....	<b>40</b>	<i>Parking brake release lever</i> .....
<b>20</b>	<i>Power outlet</i> .....	<b>41</b>	<i>Fuel filler door opener</i> .....
<b>21</b>	<i>Auxiliary box if power outlet is selected/ Ashtray if cigarette lighter is selected</i> .....	<b>42</b>	<i>Coin box</i> .....
		<b>43</b>	<i>Power rear view mirror control switches</i> .....

*For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.*

PICTORIAL INDEX

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Vehicles sold in U. S. A.)



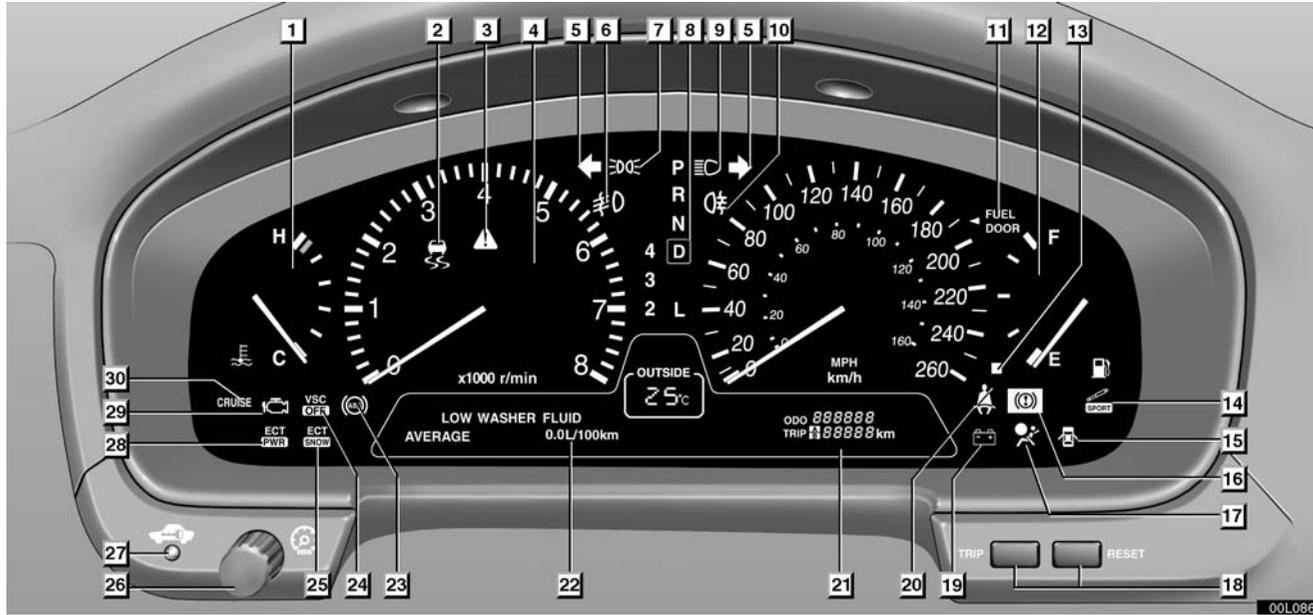
**PICTORIAL INDEX**

		<i>Page</i>			<i>Page</i>
<b>1</b>	<b>Engine coolant temperature gauge</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>SRS warning light</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Slip indicator light</b>	<b>276, 277</b>	<b>17</b>	<b>ODO/TRIP RESET button</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Master warning light</b>	<b>51</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>Discharge warning light</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Tachometer</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>Driver's seat belt reminder light</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Turn signal indicator light</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>Odometer and trip meter</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Fog light indicator light</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>Multi-information display</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Headlight indicator light</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>22</b>	<b>Anti-lock brake system warning light</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Headlight high beam indicator light</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>Vehicle skid control system OFF indicator light</b>	<b>278</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Automatic transmission indicator lights</b>	<b>235</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>Snow mode indicator light</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Fuel filler door indicator</b>	<b>102</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>Instrument panel light control</b>	<b>67</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Fuel gauge</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>Security indicator light</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Low fuel level warning light</b>	<b>52</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>Power mode indicator light</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>Damping mode indicator light</b>	<b>276</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>Malfunction indicator lamp</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>14</b>	<b>Open door warning light</b>	<b>52</b>	<b>29</b>	<b>Cruise control indicator light</b>	<b>248</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>Brake system warning light</b>	<b>48</b>			

*For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.*

PICTORIAL INDEX

**INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Vehicles sold in Canada)**



**PICTORIAL INDEX**

		<i>Page</i>			<i>Page</i>
<b>1</b>	<b>Engine coolant temperature gauge</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>17</b>	<b>SRS warning light</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Slip indicator light</b>	<b>276, 277</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>ODO/TRIP RESET button</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Master warning light</b>	<b>51</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>Discharge warning light</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Tachometer</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>Driver's seat belt reminder light</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Turn signal indicator light</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>Odometer and trip meter</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Front fog light indicator light</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>22</b>	<b>Multi-information display</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Tail indicator light</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>Anti-lock brake system warning light</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Automatic transmission indicator lights</b>	<b>235</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>Vehicle skid control system OFF indicator light</b>	<b>278</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Headlight high beam indicator light</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>Snow mode indicator light</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Rear fog light indicator light</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>Instrument panel light control</b>	<b>67</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Fuel filler door indicator</b>	<b>102</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>Security indicator light</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Fuel gauge</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>Power mode indicator light</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>Low fuel level warning light</b>	<b>52</b>	<b>29</b>	<b>Malfunction indicator lamp</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>14</b>	<b>Damping mode indicator light</b>	<b>276</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>Cruise control indicator light</b>	<b>248</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>Open door warning light</b>	<b>52</b>			
<b>16</b>	<b>Brake system warning light</b>	<b>48</b>			

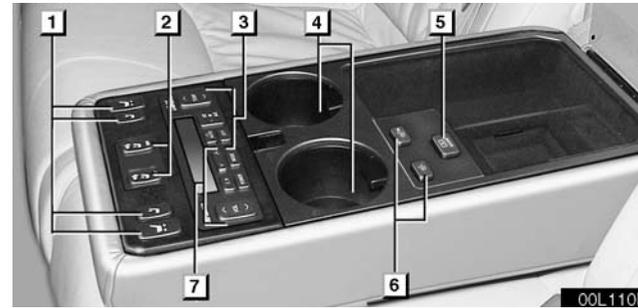
*For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.*

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE



	<i>Page</i>
<b>1</b> Moon roof .....	104
<b>2</b> Garage door opener .....	78
<b>3</b> Lexus Link System .....	321

## REAR ARMREST



	<i>Page</i>
<b>1</b> Rear seat control switch .....	115
<b>2</b> Refreshing rear seat switch .....	41
<b>3</b> Rear air conditioning control switch .....	196
<b>4</b> Cup holder .....	81
<b>5</b> Rear electric sunshade switch .....	91
<b>6</b> Rear seat heater switch .....	37
<b>7</b> Audio rear control switch .....	220

**SEAT AND STEERING WHEEL**



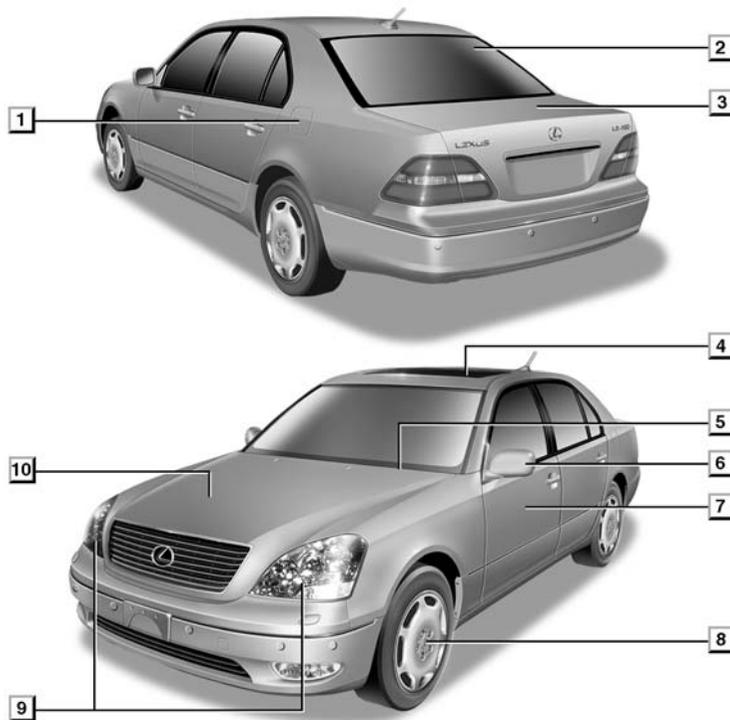
	<i>Page</i>
<b>1</b> <i>Tilt and telescopic steering adjustment switch</i> .....	119
<b>2</b> <i>Seat cushion length control switch</i> .....	109
<b>3</b> <i>Seat position, seat cushion angle and height control switch</i> .....	110, 111
<b>4</b> <i>Seatback angle and head restraint control switch</i> ....	111, 116
<b>5</b> <i>Lumbar support control switches</i> .....	112

*For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.*

## PICTORIAL INDEX

---

### EXTERIOR VIEW



00L107c

	<i>Page</i>
<b>1</b> Fuel filler door .....	102
<b>2</b> Rear window defogger .....	32
<b>3</b> Trunk lid .....	99
<b>4</b> Moon roof .....	104
<b>5</b> Wiper and washer .....	28, 397
<b>6</b> Outside rear view mirror .....	121
<b>7</b> Door .....	19
<b>8</b> Tire and wheel .....	373
<b>9</b> Headlight .....	24, 399
<b>10</b> Hood .....	98

*For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.*

## ***BASIC OPERATION***

---

### **QUICK REFERENCE**

Driver's seat .....	2
Steering wheel .....	3
Automatic transmission .....	4
Headlight and turn signal switch .....	5
Wiper switch .....	6

**B**

## QUICK REFERENCE

### 1. DRIVER'S SEAT



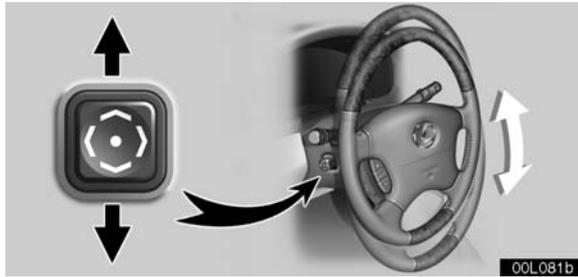
Seat adjustment

	Seat cushion length		
	Seat position		
	Seat cushion angle		
	Seat cushion height		
	Head restraint height		
	Seatback angle		
	Upper lumbar support		
	Lower lumbar support		
—	Head restraint angle		

00L 139

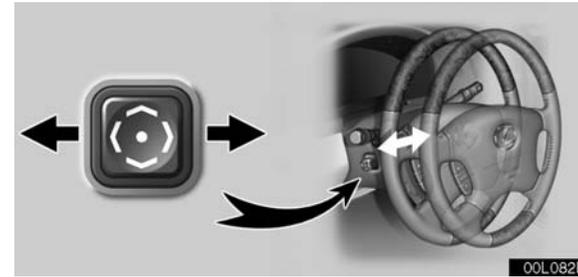
## 2. STEERING WHEEL

### TILT STEERING WHEEL



To tilt the steering wheel up or down to the desired angle, push the control switch in the required direction and release the button when the steering wheel reaches the desired angle.

### TELESCOPIC STEERING WHEEL



To move the steering wheel to the desired position, push the control switch away from you or pull it toward you until the steering wheel reaches the desired position.

**B**

## QUICK REFERENCE

### 3. AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



#### SELECTOR LEVER POSITION

- P:** Parking, engine starting and key removal position
- R:** Reverse position
- N:** Neutral position
- D:** Normal driving position (Shifting into overdrive possible)
- 4:** Position for engine braking (Shifting into overdrive not possible)\*
- 3, 2:** Position for more powerful engine braking
- L:** Position for maximum engine braking

#### OPERATION OF SELECTOR LEVER



- ⊖ Shift while pressing the brake pedal. (Ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.)

\*When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For the operation to decrease the vehicle speed, see page 250.

## 4. HEADLIGHT AND TURN SIGNAL SWITCH

### HEADLIGHT SWITCH

With the ignition OFF

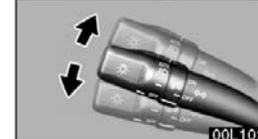
	Parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights turn on.
	Headlights also turn on.
	Automatic light control

With the engine started and parking brake released

	Parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights turn on.
	Headlights also turn on at full intensity.
	Automatic light control

	High beam
	Headlight flasher

### TURN SIGNAL SWITCH

	Right or left turn
	Lane change (Right or left)

**B**

## QUICK REFERENCE

### 5. WIPER SWITCH

Intermittent operation type	
	Mist wiper operation
	Intermittent operation
	Low speed operation
	High speed operation
	Washer on

00L129a

Raindrop detection type	
	Mist wiper operation
	Automatic operation
	Low speed operation
	High speed operation
	Washer on

00L130

# SECTION 1 - 1

---

## INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Keys and doors

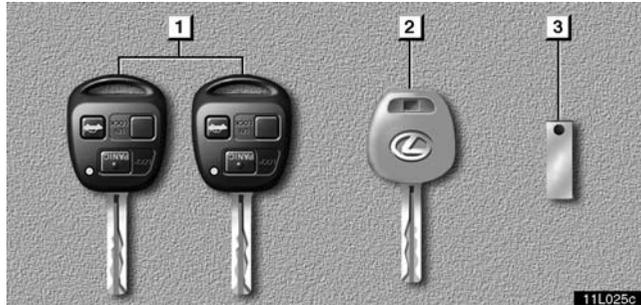
Keys .....	8
Engine immobiliser system .....	11
Wireless remote control .....	13
Doors .....	19



## KEYS AND DOORS

---

### KEYS



- 1 Master keys (black) – These master keys work for every lock. For your Lexus dealer to make a new key with built-in transponder chip, your dealer will need one of them.**
- 2 Sub key (gray) – The sub key will not open the trunk, trunk main switch, the glove box and trunk storage extension door.**
- 3 Key number plate – Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.**

A transponder chip for the engine immobiliser system has been placed in the head of the master and sub keys. These chips are required for the system to function correctly, so be careful not to lose these keys. If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

To protect items locked in the trunk or glove box when using valet parking, leave the sub key with the attendant.

Since the doors and trunk lid can be locked without a key, you should always carry a spare master key in case you accidentally lock your keys inside the vehicle.

If you should lose your keys or if you need additional keys, duplicates can be made by a Lexus dealer using the key number.

We recommend writing down the key number and storing it in a safe place.

## Flat key



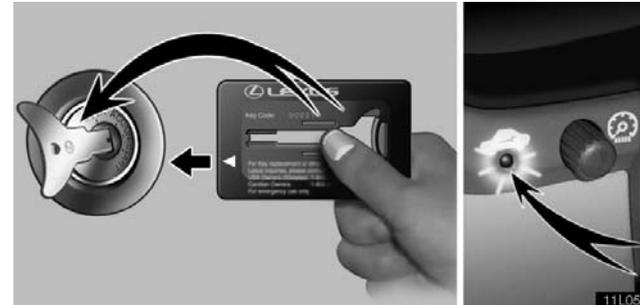
**As a transponder chip is built in its key case, you can start the engine with this key.**

**The flat key works in every lock.**

A transponder chip for the engine immobiliser system has been placed in the key case of the flat key. This chip is required for the system to function correctly, so be careful not to lose this key. If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

Insert your key plate in its key case as shown. We recommend that you always carry this with you for emergency use. Do not leave it in your vehicle.

## Starting the engine using a flat key

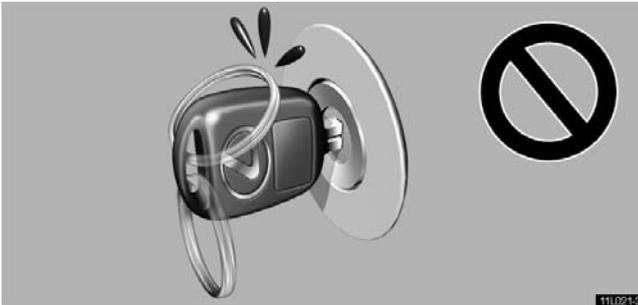


1. Remove the key plate from the key case.
2. Insert the key plate into the ignition switch. The security indicator light keeps flashing.
3. Bring the key case closer to the ignition switch within 10 seconds as indicated by the arrow head. The indicator light goes out. This means the engine immobiliser system is automatically canceled. (For details, see "Engine immobiliser system" on page 11.) You can put the key case away then. You cannot cancel the engine immobiliser system if 10 seconds have passed after you inserted the key plate. You need to remove the key plate from the ignition switch and try it again from the step 2.
4. Start the engine within 20 seconds after the security indicator light goes out. You cannot start the engine if 20 seconds have passed after the security indicator went off. You need to remove the key plate from the ignition switch and try it again from the step 2.

## KEYS AND DOORS

### NOTICE

- Do not let the key case become bent as the key plate may fall out or become bent also.
- The flat key is designed for emergency use only, so do not use it regularly instead of the other master keys.



When using a key containing a transponder chip, observe the following precautions:

- When starting the engine, do not use the key with a key ring resting on the key grip and do not press the key ring against the key grip. Doing so may prevent the engine from starting, or may cause the engine to stop soon after it starts.

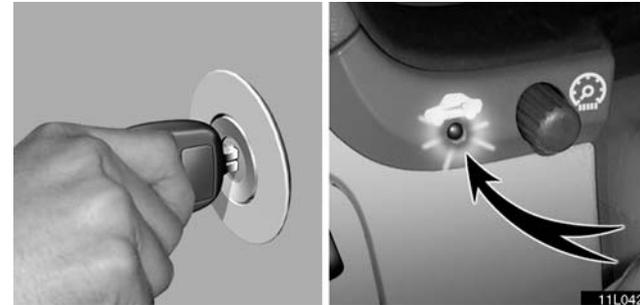


- When starting the engine, do not use the key in proximity with other transponder keys (including the flat key and keys of other vehicles), and do not press other key plates against the key grip. Doing so may prevent the engine from starting, or may cause the engine to stop soon after it starts. If this happens, remove the key once and then insert it again after taking off other transponder keys (including the flat key and keys of other vehicles) from the ring or while gripping or covering them with your hand to start the engine.



- ⚠ ***Do not bend the key grip or flat key.***
- ⚠ ***Do not cover the key grip or flat key with any material that cuts off electromagnetic waves.***
- ⚠ ***Do not knock the key or flat key hard against other objects.***
- ⚠ ***Do not leave the key or flat key exposed to high temperatures for a long period, such as on the dashboard or hood under direct sunlight.***
- ⚠ ***Do not put the key or flat key in water or wash it in an ultrasonic washer.***
- ⚠ ***Do not use the key or flat key with electromagnetic materials.***

## ENGINE IMMOBILISER SYSTEM



The engine immobiliser system is a theft prevention system. When you insert the key in the ignition switch, the transponder chip in the key's head transmits an electronic code to the vehicle. The engine will start only when the electronic code in the chip corresponds to the registered ID code for the vehicle.

The system is automatically set when the key is removed from the ignition switch. At this time, the security indicator light flashes. When you insert the key in the ignition switch, the security indicator light goes out and the system is canceled automatically, which enables the engine to start.

The transponder chip of the flat key is in its key case. You can cancel the engine immobiliser system using the flat key. (For details, see "Flat key" on page 9.)

## KEYS AND DOORS

---

For your Lexus dealer to make you a new key with built-in transponder chip, your dealer will need your key number and master key or the flat key. However, there is a limit to the number of additional keys your Lexus dealer can make for you.

**If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.**

**For vehicles sold in U.S.A.**

**FCC ID: NI4RI-16BTY  
MADE IN JAPAN**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:  
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

**For vehicles sold in Canada**

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.  
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:  
(1) This device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROL\*



- 1 Locking the doors and sounding an alarm**
- 2 Unlocking the doors, and opening the windows and moon roof**
- 3 Indicator light**
- 4 Unlocking the trunk lid**

*NOTE: \*This feature can be deactivated as vehicle theft deterrent measure in case of the loss of the wireless remote control key. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

When you operate any button on the key, push it slowly and surely. At this time, the indicator light on the key grip flashes once.

The operational range of the wireless remote control is approximately 1 m (3 ft.). The effective range may vary with different conditions. To activate the wireless remote control without fail, do it approximately 1 m (3 ft.) from your Lexus.

In the following cases, the battery in the key may be discharged. If this is the case, replace it using a special screwdriver.

- 🔧 The remote control does not work.
- 🔧 The operational range of wireless remote control becomes extremely short.
- 🔧 The indicator light on the key is dimmed or does not come on.

For the replacement of the battery, see "Replacing the battery" on page 17. You can also have the battery of the key replaced by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose the wireless key, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to avoid the possibility of theft, or an accident.

You can use up to 4 master keys and 3 sub keys for the same vehicle. Contact your Lexus dealer for detailed information.

**The wireless remote control key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions in order not to cause damage to the key.**

- 🔧 Do not leave the wireless remote control key on places where the temperature becomes high such as on the dashboard.
- 🔧 Do not disassemble it.
- 🔧 Avoid knocking it hard against other objects or dropping it.
- 🔧 Avoid putting it in water.

## KEYS AND DOORS

---

### Locking/Unlocking the doors

**When you push the "LOCK" button on the key briefly, all the doors can be locked from outside the vehicle.**

At this time, you can hear one beep and turn signal lights flash once.\* However, when you push the "LOCK" button with any door not closed securely, the buzzer sounds for 10 seconds.\*\* To stop the buzzer, close all the doors securely or push the "UNLOCK" button. If the key is in the ignition switch, locking cannot be done.

*NOTE: \*The turn signal lights can be set not to flash. \*\*The buzzer can be set not to sound if a door is not closed securely. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

If outer foot lights are illuminated, you can turn off the lights by pushing the "LOCK" button on the key. (For details, see "Outer foot lights" on page 124.)

#### **NOTICE**

**Do not push the "LOCK" button any longer than 2 to 3 seconds. Pushing the button longer activates an alarm. For details, see page 16.**

**When you push the "UNLOCK" button, the driver's door is unlocked and outer foot lights come on. Pushing the "UNLOCK" button once again within 3 seconds will unlock all other doors.\***

*NOTE: \*The 2-step unlocking function can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

At this time, two beeps sound and turn signal lights flash twice.\* Together with the activation of unlocking, the interior light comes on for 15 seconds if the interior light switch is in "DOOR" position.\*\* However, this function does not work when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position. For further information, see "Interior lights" on page 71.

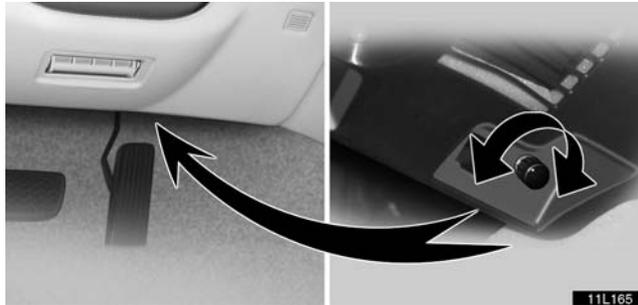
For outer foot lights, see "Outer foot lights" on page 124.

You have 30 seconds to open a door after using the wireless remote unlock feature.\*\*\* If a door is not opened by then, all the doors will be automatically locked again.

*NOTE: \*The turn signal lights can be set not to flash. \*\*The interior light can be set not to come on or the duration of lighting can be changed. \*\*\*The time before automatic re-locking can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

Even if the "LOCK" or "UNLOCK" button is kept pressed in, the locking or unlocking operation is not repeated. Release the button and then push again.

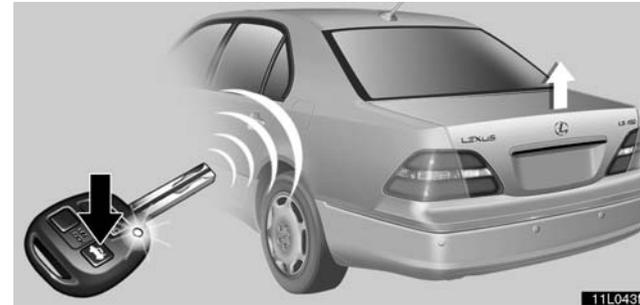
### Adjusting beep volume



**You can adjust the volume of the beeps which confirm the locking or unlocking the doors or remind you when the doors are not completely closed.**

Turn the knob counterclockwise to increase the volume or clockwise to decrease it. The beep sound is completely deactivated when you turn the knob clockwise until you hear a click.

### Unlocking the trunk lid



**When you keep the button pushed for about 1 second, you can unlock the trunk lid.\* One beep sounds.**

This function does not work when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

*NOTE: \*The operation method can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

## KEYS AND DOORS

---

### Sounding an alarm\*



When you keep the "PANIC" button pushed for about 2 to 3 seconds, an alarm sounds to deter any person trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

If you want to stop the alarm, push any button.

This function does not work when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

*NOTE: \*The alarm can be set not to sound. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

### Operating the windows and moon roof

The windows and moon roof can be operated using a wireless remote control key from outside the vehicle.\*

*NOTE: \*The windows can be deactivated. The moon roof can be set to slide open or tilt up or deactivated. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*



Push the "UNLOCK" button until the windows and moon roof start to move. At this time one beep sounds. When you release the button, the windows and moon roof stop operating.

This function will work even with the window lock switch pressed in.

For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

<p><b>FCC ID: NI412BBB</b> <b>MADE IN JAPAN</b></p>
<p><b>FCC ID: NI4B11UE</b> <b>MADE IN JAPAN</b></p>
<p>This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p>

<p><b>⚠ CAUTION</b></p>
<p><b>Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.</b></p>

For vehicles sold in Canada

<p>This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.</p>
---

**Replacing the battery**

When you replace the battery, prepare a lithium battery CR1616 or equivalent and a special screwdriver.

<p><b>⚠ CAUTION</b></p>
<p><b>Special care should be taken that small children do not swallow the removed battery or components.</b></p>

<p><b>NOTICE</b></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>⚡ When replacing the battery, be careful not to lose the components, screws and O-ring.</i></li> <li><i>⚡ Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.</i></li> <li><i>⚡ Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.</i></li> </ul>

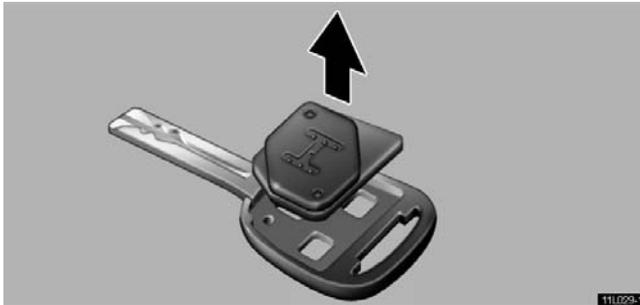


1. Remove the screw, and then the cover while pushing it in the

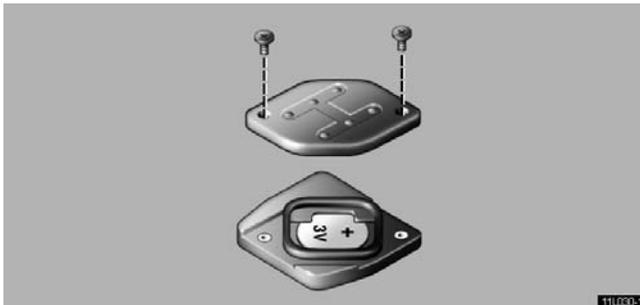
1

## KEYS AND DOORS

arrow direction.



2. Remove the module from the key frame.



3. Remove the 2 screws to take out the lid of the module.

4. Take out the discharged battery and put a new battery with the positive side up.

### NOTICE

- Make sure the positive side and negative side of the battery should be faced correctly.*
- Do not replace the battery with wet hands. Water may cause unexpected rust.*
- Do not touch or move any components inside the transmitter, or it may interfere with proper operation.*
- Be careful not to bend the electrode of the battery insertion and that dust or oils do not adhere to the inside of the module.*
- Take care not to lose the screws and O-ring.*

5. Install the lid with the 2 screws.

### NOTICE

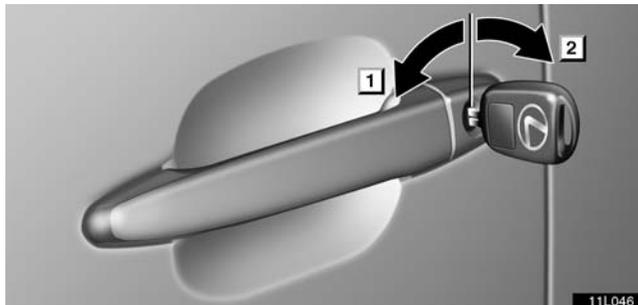
*Take care not to damage or bend the O-ring when installing.*

6. Install the module into the key frame and secure the cover with the screw.

7. When pushing any switch on the wireless key, make sure the indicator light comes on.

## DOORS

### Locking with key



✕ **1 Lock 2 Unlock**

**Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to lock and towards the back to unlock.**

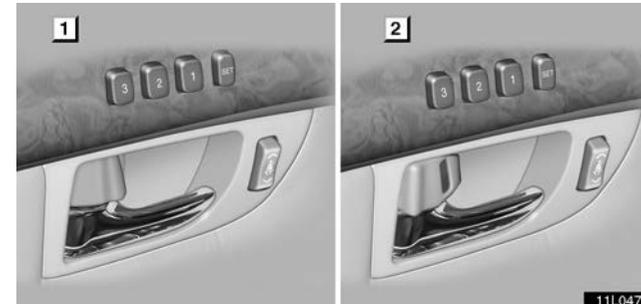
The doors lock and unlock simultaneously with driver's door. Turning the key once will unlock the driver's door and twice in succession will unlock all doors simultaneously.\*

*NOTE: \*The 2-step unlocking function can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

If a wrong key is used, the key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism. So, door locking is protected from thieves.

The windows and moon roof can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the key. For details, see "Power window switches" on page 33 and "Moon roof" on page 104.

### Locking with inside lock button



✕ **1 Lock 2 Unlock**

**Push in the lock button to lock and unlock the door.**

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handles even if the lock buttons are in the locked position.

### CAUTION

**Do not pull the inside handle of the front doors while driving. The doors will open and an accident may occur. Lexus strongly recommends that all children be placed in the rear seat of the vehicle.**

Closing the door with the lock button pushed in will also lock the door. Be careful not to lock your keys in the vehicle. Doors cannot be locked when either front door is open and the key is in the ignition.

**1**

## KEYS AND DOORS

If the vehicle is subjected to a severe frontal, rear or side impact with the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, all doors will unlock automatically after a few seconds.

### CAUTION

Before driving, make sure the doors are closed and locked, especially when small children are in the vehicle. Along with the proper use of seat belts, locking the doors helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out from the vehicle during an accident. It also helps prevent the doors from being opened unintentionally.

### Locking with power door lock switch



✂ 1 Lock 2 Unlock

To lock all the doors simultaneously, push the power door lock switch down on the front side. Pushing down on the rear side will unlock them.

When you push the power door lock switch on the rear side to unlock the doors to allow a passenger to get in, the outer foot lights come on. To turn off the lights, push the power door lock switch on the front side. (For details, see "Outer foot lights" on page 124.)

The same switch is also found on the front passenger's side. However, pushing this switch will neither turn on nor off the outer foot lights.

**Auto door locking function\*:** All the doors will lock automatically when the selector lever is moved out of “P” position. This auto door locking function is operable if any doors are unlocked while the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

*NOTE: \*This setting can be changed as in the following:*

- ◆ *All the doors are locked automatically at 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher vehicle speed. However, if any door is unlocked during driving, this auto locking function does not operate until the unlocked door is once opened.*
- ◆ *When the selector lever is moved out of “P” position and the brake pedal is held off your foot, this function is enabled.*

*Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

### Door closer (some models)

**If any door is closed but does not latch shut, it automatically closes completely. This system is equipped on all the doors and will activate regardless of the ignition switch position.**

Pulling the door handle will cancel the door closer, allowing you to open the door which is about to close. However, pulling the door handle of the rear door which is locked with the child protector will not cancel the door closer.



 <b>CAUTION</b>
💡 <b>Careful attention is needed so as not to get your fingers trapped as the door automatically closes when the door has not been fully closed.</b>
💡 <b>Never allow a child to operate the door.</b>

## KEYS AND DOORS

---

### Locking with rear door child-protector



✕ **1** Lock **2** Unlock

Whenever small children are in the vehicle, lock the rear door so that it does not open from the inside. To do this, move the knob to the "LOCK" position as shown and then close the door.

# SECTION 1-2

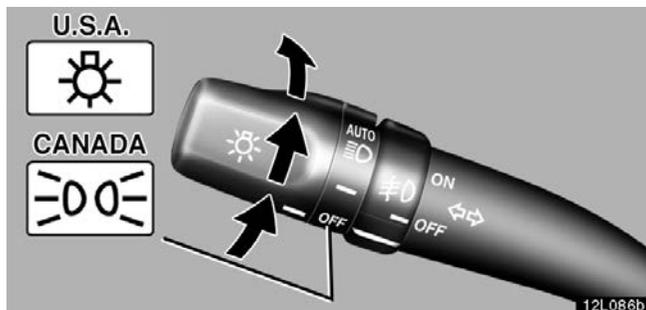
## INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Switches

Headlight switch .....	24
Headlight dimmer and turn signal switch .....	26
Front fog light switch .....	27
Rear fog light switch .....	28
Windshield wiper and washer switch .....	28
Headlight cleaner switch .....	31
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch .....	32
Power window switches .....	33
Emergency flasher switch .....	36
Seat heater switches .....	37
Climate control seat switches .....	38
Refreshing rear seat switches .....	41

## SWITCHES

### HEADLIGHT SWITCH



**To turn the lights on, twist the knob on the end of the lever.**

**FIRST CLICKSTOP:** Only the parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights turn on.

**SECOND CLICKSTOP:** Headlights also turn on.

**THIRD CLICKSTOP ("AUTO"):** The headlights and all other lights automatically turn on depending on the darkness of the surroundings.\*

**Vehicles sold in U.S.A.:** When the headlights are on, the headlight indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.

**Vehicles sold in Canada:** When the tail lights are on, the tail light indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.

**Manually twist the knob to the second clickstop to turn on the headlights if they are needed immediately when entering a dark tunnel, parking structure, etc.**

When the headlight switch is turned to the first or second clickstop, the brightness of the instrument cluster will be reduced slightly unless the instrument panel light control knob is turned fully on.

*NOTE: \*The operating condition or sensitivity can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*



The automatic light control sensor is on the top center of the instrument panel.

Do not place anything on the instrument panel, and/or do not affix anything on the windshield to block this sensor.

When you turn on the headlights, the lights automatically turn off about 30 seconds after any of the doors is opened and closed with the ignition switch turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.\* To turn them on again, turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position, or turn the headlight switch off and then twist the knob until the first or second clickstop. If you are going to park for over one week, make sure the headlight switch is off.

When the headlight switch is on with all the doors locked and the trunk closed, pushing the "LOCK" button on the wireless remote control key turns off the headlights.

*NOTE: \*The time before turning off the lights can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

#### Daytime Running Light System

The headlights turn on at reduced intensity when the parking brake is released with the engine started, even with the light switch in the "OFF" position. They will not go off until the ignition switch is turned off.

To turn on the other exterior lights and instrument panel lights, twist the knob to the first clickstop.

Twist the knob to the second clickstop to turn on the headlights to full intensity for driving at night.

When setting the knob to the third clickstop ("AUTO"), the headlights will automatically adjust to full intensity and/or turn on the other lights depending on the darkness of the surroundings. Likewise, as the surroundings become brighter, the headlights will turn to reduced intensity, ultimately turning off the other lights.

#### **NOTICE**

***To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.***

#### Automatic headlight leveling system

As the headlight beam level is always maintained automatically at the proper level in all loading conditions, your headlights do not dazzle other road users.

If this system fails, the multi-information display shows a message "HEADLIGHT LEVELING". If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by Lexus dealer. See page 61 for additional information.

## SWITCHES

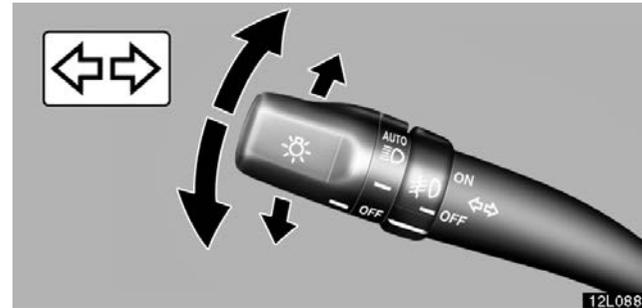
### HEADLIGHT DIMMER AND TURN SIGNAL SWITCH



**For high beam, push the lever forward. Pull it back for low beam. For the headlight flasher, pull it further back.**

A blue light in the instrument cluster indicates high beam or headlight flasher is on.

The headlight flasher works even when the headlight switch is off.



**For signaling turns, move the lever up or down in the conventional manner.**

The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

The turn signal is self-cancelling after a turn, but after a lane change, you may have to cancel it by hand. You can also signal a lane change by moving the turn signal lever partway and holding it there.

If the green light in the instrument cluster flashes faster than normal, it indicates that the front or rear turn signal bulb has burned out. If this indicator light does not come on, the fuse or the indicator light itself has probably failed.

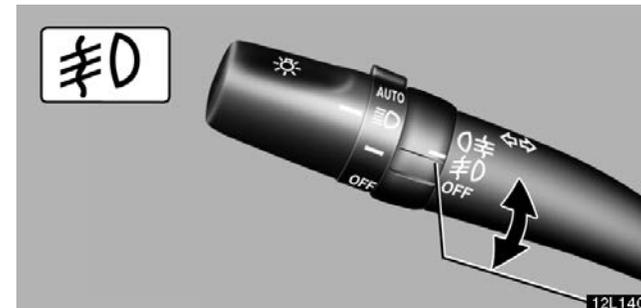
## FRONT FOG LIGHT SWITCH



✕ *Vehicles sold in U.S.A.*

**To turn on the front fog lights, turn the switch to the “ON” position. They will come on only when the headlights are on low beam.**

When the front fog lights are on, the indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.



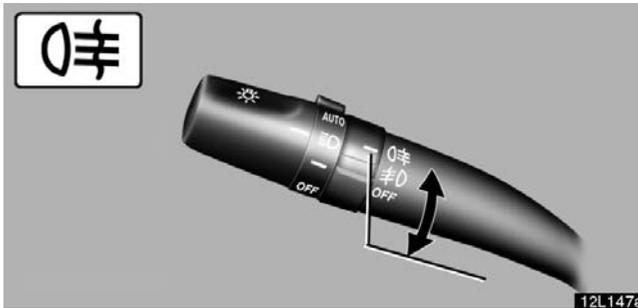
✕ *Vehicles sold in Canada*

**To turn on the front fog lights, turn the switch to the fog light mark. They will come on only when the tail lights are turned on.**

When the front fog lights are on, the indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.

## SWITCHES

### REAR FOG LIGHT SWITCH (Canada only)



To turn on the rear fog lights, turn the switch to the rear fog light mark. They will come on when the headlights are turned on.

To turn off the lights, turn the switch from the rear fog light mark. They will go out when the headlight switch is turned to the "OFF" position.

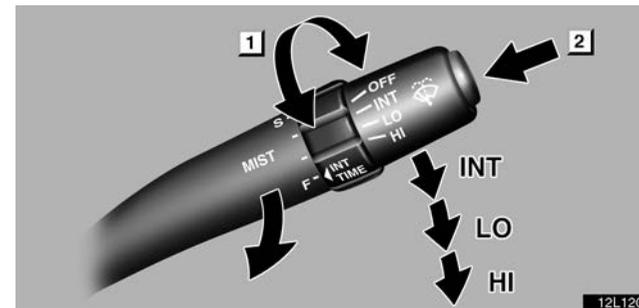
When the rear fog lights are on, the indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.

After the headlight switch is turned off, the rear fog lights do not come on even if you turn on the headlight switch again.

To turn on the rear fog lights, turn the switch to the rear fog light mark again under the condition stated above.

### WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER SWITCH

Intermittent operation type



✂ 1 Interval adjuster 2 Washer on

To turn the wipers on, move the lever down until you reach the desired speed setting.

The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

**There are 3 settings:**

**"INT" position:** Intermittent operation

**"LO" position:** Low speed operation

**"HI" position:** High speed operation

**Twist the interval adjuster upward to increase the wiping time interval between sweeps, and downward to decrease it.**

The wiper lever must be in the "INT" position.

The time interval between sweeps is shortened when the vehicle speed increases. When the vehicle speed reaches more than about 20 km/h (12 mph) with the interval adjuster in "F" position, the time interval becomes the shortest 1.5 seconds.

If you stop the vehicle with the wiper switch in the "LO" position, the wiper speed automatically changes from low speed to intermittent operation speed.\* This function does not work when the interval adjuster is in the "F" position.

*NOTE: \*This feature can be deactivated. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

**For mist wiper operations (a single wipe), pull the lever toward you and release it.**

**To make the washer squirt, push the button on the end of the lever.**

If the wiper lever is in the "OFF" position, the wipers will automatically make 3 wipes and then a single wipe later to sweep the windshield completely.\* The interval between the 3 wipes and the last wipe will depend on the vehicle speed. The last sweep does not happen if the vehicle speed exceeds about 170 km/h (106 mph).

*NOTE: \*The last single wipe can be deactivated. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

The warning message "LOW WASHER FLUID" is displayed in the multi-information display when the fluid level in the tank becomes very low. For information on adding washer fluid, see "Adding washer fluid" on page 397.

In cold weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before using the washer. This will help prevent icing, which could block your vision.

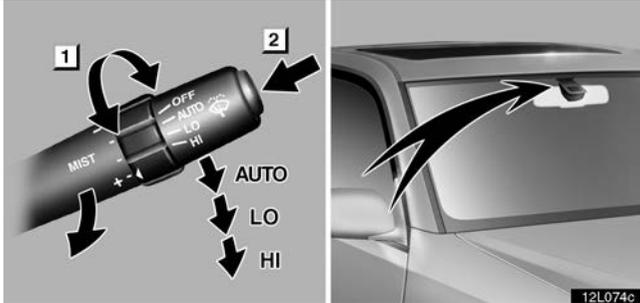
The rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger automatically turns on when you operate the wipers.

**NOTICE**

***Do not operate the wipers if the windshield is dry. It may scratch the glass.***

## SWITCHES

### Raindrop detection type



✕ **1** Automatic control adjuster **2** Washer on

To turn the wipers on, move the lever down until you reach the desired speed setting.

The ignition switch must be in the “ON” position.

There are 3 settings:

“AUTO” position: Automatic operation

The wiper speed is determined by the amount of raindrops and sunlight detected by the windshield sensor (shown in the illustration), and the vehicle speed.

“LO” position: Low speed operation

“HI” position: High speed operation

Twist the automatic control adjuster in the “-” direction to lower the sensitivity, and the “+” direction to boost the sensitivity.

With the ignition switch turned off, if the windshield sensor is touched by reason of cleaning the windshield or for any other reason, either of the following operations may cause automatic wiper activation.

- Turning the ignition switch on with the wiper lever in the “AUTO” position.
- Turning the ignition switch on and move the wiper lever down in the “AUTO” position.

Even with the wiper lever in the “AUTO” position, the system will switch to intermittent operations if the system malfunctions. The system will turn off if the windshield gets extremely hot (at more than 80°C or 176°F) or cold (at less than -10°C or 14°F).

### CAUTION

Be careful not to get your fingers caught between the wipers and windshield.

When the wiper lever is in the “AUTO” position with the ignition switch on, the wipers could operate automatically in the following cases:

- If you touch the upper center of the windshield adjacent to the sensor.
- If you wipe the upper center of the windshield (adjacent to which the sensor is located) with a towel.
- If the windshield vibrates.
- If you touch the sensor.

For mist wiper operations (a single wipe), pull the lever toward you and release it.

To make the washer squirt, push the button on the end of the lever.

If the wiper lever is in the "OFF" position, the wipers will automatically make 3 wipes and then a single wipe later to sweep the windshield completely.\* The interval between the 3 wipes and the last wipe will depend on the vehicle speed. The last sweep does not happen if the vehicle speed exceeds about 170 km/h (106 mph).

*NOTE: \*The last single wipe can be deactivated. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

The warning message "LOW WASHER FLUID" is displayed in the multi-information display when the fluid level in the tank becomes very low. For information on adding washer fluid, see "Adding washer fluid" on page 397.

In cold weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before using the washer. This will help prevent icing, which could block your vision.

The rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger automatically turns on when you operate the wipers.

### NOTICE

**Do not operate the wipers if the windshield is dry. It may scratch the glass.**

## HEADLIGHT CLEANER SWITCH



To spray fluid on the headlights, push the switch while the headlights are on.

The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

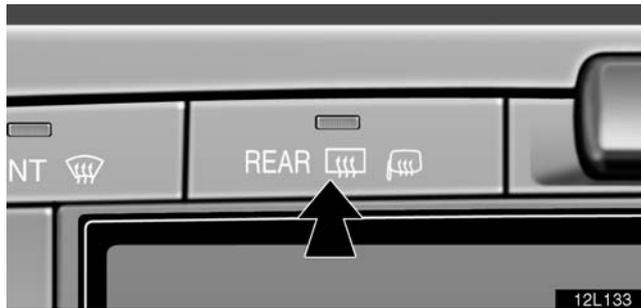
The warning message "LOW WASHER FLUID" is displayed in the multi-information display when the fluid level in the tank becomes very low. For information on adding washer fluid, see "Adding washer fluid" on page 397.

### NOTICE

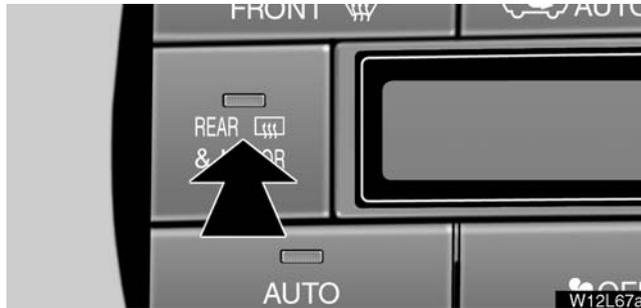
**Do not turn the headlight cleaner on with the washer fluid tank empty. It may cause the cleaner motor to overheat.**

## SWITCHES

### REAR WINDOW AND OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR DEFOGGER SWITCH



✘ *Without rear air conditioning and air purifier*



✘ *With rear air conditioning and air purifier*

To turn the electric rear window defogger on, push the switch.

The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

The thin heater wires on the inside of the rear window and the heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will quickly clear the surface. Keep your hands off the mirror faces when the switch is on. An indicator light is on when the defogger is operating.

The system will automatically shut off when the defogger has operated about 15 minutes.

#### CAUTION

**Since the mirror surfaces can get hot, do not touch them when the switch is on.**

If further defrosting or defogging is desired, simply actuate the switch again. When the surface has cleared, push the switch once again to turn the defogger off. Continuous use may cause the battery to discharge, especially during stop-and-go driving. The defogger is not designed to dry rain water or to melt snow.

If the outside rear view mirrors are heavily coated with ice, use a spray de-icer before operating the switch.

**NOTICE**

- ⚠ *When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or connectors.*
- ⚠ *To prevent the battery from being discharged, turn the switch off when the engine is not running.*

**POWER WINDOW SWITCHES**

- ✂ **1** *For driver's window*
- 2** *For front passenger's window*
- 3** *For left rear window*
- 4** *For right rear window*

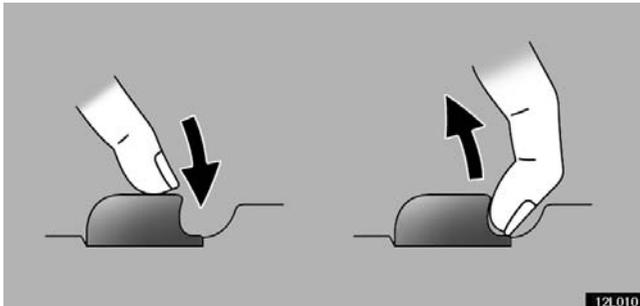
To raise or lower the windows, use the switch on each door. The passengers' windows can also be controlled by the switches on the driver's door.

The power windows work when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

**Key off operation:** Even if the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, the window can be operated until any of the doors is opened (or for about 45 seconds).

## SWITCHES

---



### Operating the switches

To raise or lower the window, pull the switch halfway up or push it halfway down.

**Automatic operation:** To fully raise or lower the window automatically, pull the switch fully up or push it fully down.

To stop the window partway, lightly push or pull the switch in the opposite direction and then release it.

### Operating the window lock switch



### ✂ Indicator light

**With the window lock switch pressed in, only the driver's window can be raised or lowered.**

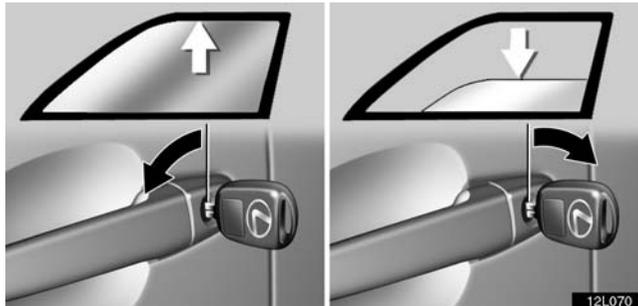
The indicator lights on the switch tell you which of the switches can be operated.

Even with the window lock switch pressed in, the windows will be opened from outside the vehicle using an ignition key or wireless remote control.

### Operating the windows from outside the vehicle

The windows can be operated using an ignition key.\*

*NOTE: \*This feature can be deactivated. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*



**Insert the ignition key into the keyhole on the driver's side.**

**To close the windows:** Turn the key in the locking direction and hold it.

After the door is locked, the windows begin to close. To stop in the middle, return the key.

**To open the windows:** Turn the key in the unlocking direction and hold it.

After the door is unlocked, the windows begin to open. To stop in the middle, return the key.

This function will work even with the window lock switch pressed in.

### Jam protection function

During automatic raising operation, key off raising operation or raising operation using the ignition key from the outside, the window stops and is lowered if something gets caught between the window and window frame.

If the window receives a strong impact, this function may work even if nothing is caught.

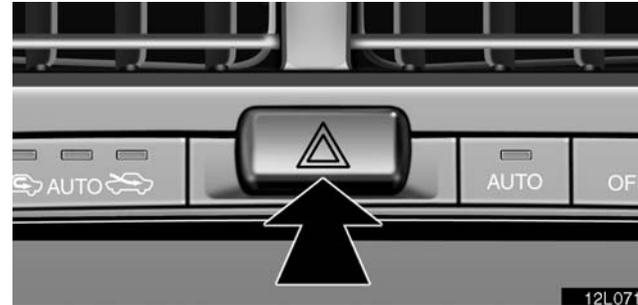
## SWITCHES

### CAUTION

To avoid serious personal injury, you must do the following.

- ⚠ Before you close the power windows, always make sure there is nobody around the power windows. You must also make sure the heads, hands and other parts of the bodies of all occupants are kept completely inside the vehicle. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in a closing window, it could result in a serious injury. When anyone closes the power windows, make sure he or she operates the windows safely.
- ⚠ When small children are in the vehicle, never let them use the power window switches without supervision. Use the window lock switch to prevent them from making unexpected use of the switches.
- ⚠ Never leave small children alone in the vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. They could use the power window switches and get trapped in a window. Unattended children can be involved in serious accidents.
- ⚠ Never try jamming any part of your body to make the jam protection function work intentionally.
- ⚠ The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closed.

## EMERGENCY FLASHER SWITCH



**To turn on the emergency flashers, push the switch.**

All the turn signal lights will flash. The emergency flashers will work with the engine running or off and with or without the ignition key.

Turn on the emergency flashers to warn other drivers if you must stop your vehicle where it might be a traffic hazard.

Always pull your vehicle as far off the road as possible.

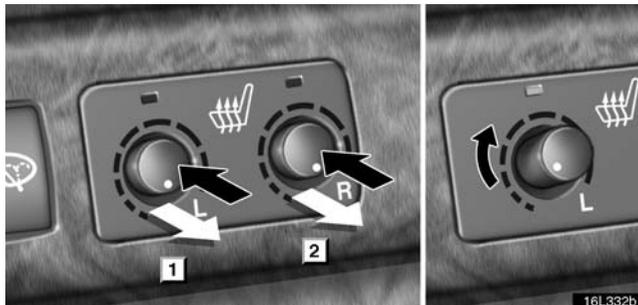
The turn signal light switch will not work when the emergency flashers are in operation.

### **NOTICE**

***To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the switch on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.***

## SEAT HEATER SWITCHES

## Front seat heater



✕ **1** For driver's seat **2** For front passenger's seat

The seat heater has two switches: one marked "L" (for the left seat) and the other marked "R" (for the right seat).

The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

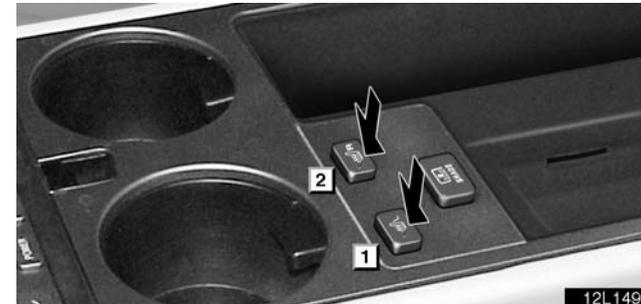
To use the seat heater:

1. Push the knob to pop it out.
2. Turn the knob clockwise. The indicator light turns on.
3. Adjust the knob to the desired temperature.

To turn off the seat heater, turn the knob counterclockwise until it stops.

Push the knob into the recessed position when not in use.

## Rear seat heater



✕ **1** For left seat **2** For right seat

The seat heater has two switches: one marked "L" (for the left seat) and the other marked "R" (for the right seat). Push these switches to turn the respective seat heaters on, and push the switches again to turn them off.

The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

The indicator light turns on when the seat heater is operating.

## SWITCHES

### CAUTION

Occupants must use caution when operating the seat heater because they may experience minor burns even at low temperatures. Use extra caution for;

- ⚠ Babies, small children, elderly persons, sick persons or handicapped persons
- ⚠ Persons who have delicate skin
- ⚠ Persons who are exhausted
- ⚠ Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs which induce sleep (sleeping drug, cold remedy, etc.).

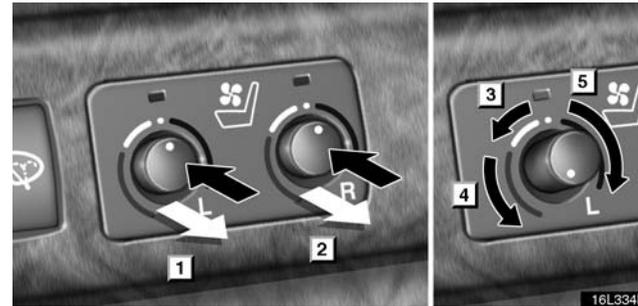
To prevent the seat from overheating, do not use the seat heater with a blanket, cushion, or other insulating objects which cover the seat.

### NOTICE

- ⚠ *Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.*
- ⚠ *When cleaning the seats, do not use organic substances (paint thinner, benzine, alcohol, gasoline, etc.). They may damage the heater and seat surface.*
- ⚠ *To prevent the battery from being discharged, turn the switches off when the engine is not running.*

## CLIMATE CONTROL SEAT SWITCHES

The climate control seat feeds air at the temperature you desire from the seat surface, for the comfort of the occupants.



- ✂ **1** For driver's seat **2** For front passenger's seat  
**3** Air at room temperature **4** Cool air **5** Warm air

The climate control seat has two switches: one marked "L" (for the left seat) and the other marked "R" (for the right seat).

The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

The climate control seat has three modes: air at room temperature, cool air and warm air.

To use the seat climate control, push the knob into pop it out and then turn the knob. The indicator light comes on.

**To feed air at room temperature**, turn the knob to the gray zone.

**To feed cool air**, turn the knob counterclockwise and set the knob in the blue zone. Three setting levels are available.

**To feed warm air**, turn the knob clockwise and set the knob in the red zone. Three setting levels are available.

After the switch is turned on, it takes several minutes until you feel warm or cool.

To disable this function, turn the knob to the center position (the gray dot). The indicator light goes off.

Push the knob into the recessed position when not in use.

 **CAUTION**

**Use caution when operating the climate control seat. The occupants listed below may experience minor burns even at low temperatures from warm air.**

-  **Babies, small children, elderly persons, sick persons or handicapped persons**
-  **Persons who have delicate skin**
-  **Persons who are exhausted**
-  **Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs which induce sleep (such as sleeping drugs or cold remedies).**

**To prevent the seat from overheating, do not use the climate control seat if a blanket, cushion, or other insulating object covers the seat. Use also caution not to overuse this feature, which may cool down the occupants excessively.**

**NOTICE**

-  ***Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat . Do not stick sharp objects (such as needles or nails) into the seat.***
-  ***When cleaning the seats, do not use harsh cleaning substances (such as paint thinner, benzine, alcohol or gasoline). They may damage the climate control seat and seat surface.***
-  ***Clean the seats using a towel wrung out of water. Entering water in the seats may cause the malfunction of the climate control seats.***
-  ***To prevent the battery from being discharged, turn the switches off when the engine is not running.***

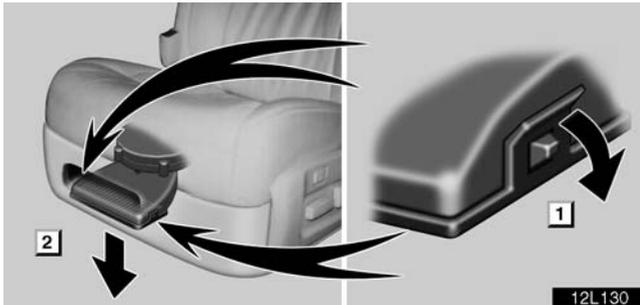
## SWITCHES

---

### Replacing the air filters

The air filters may clog after the long use of the climate control seats which will reduce the air flow. However, you can inspect the filters easily.

When you replace the air filters, be sure to turn off the fans.



**1** Remove the air filter locks.

**2** Remove the air filter.

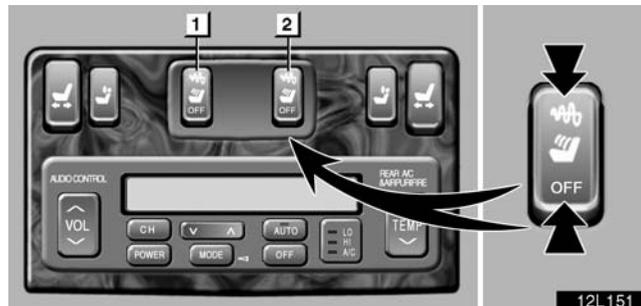
The climate control seat filters are located under the driver and front passenger seats.

Replace the air filter when the performance of air flow becomes low by the deterioration of filter.

### **NOTICE**

***The air filter should be installed properly in position. The use of climate control seat with the air filter removed may cause the malfunction of the climate control seat.***

## REFRESHING REAR SEAT SWITCHES



✕ **1** For left rear seat **2** For right rear seat

**The refreshing rear seat is designed to reduce lumbar fatigue by means of a lumbar vibrator.**

The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

To operate the lumbar vibrator, push the switch on the front side. Keep pushing the switch down to change the vibration speed.

To stop the vibrator, push the switch on the rear side.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ⚠ Those who are pregnant, have just given birth, or suffer from heart disease and other ailments requiring rest, should consult a doctor before using the refreshing seat.
- ⚠ Do not allow children to use the refreshing seat.
- ⚠ Do not use the refreshing seat immediately after meals or for extended periods.
- ⚠ If you feel sick while using the refreshing seat, immediately stop using it.



# SECTION 1-3

---

## INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Gauges, meters and service reminder indicators

Fuel gauge .....	44
Engine coolant temperature gauge .....	44
Tachometer .....	45
Odometer and trip meter .....	46
Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers .....	46
Multi-information display .....	54
Compass .....	63
Instrument panel light control .....	67

**1**

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

### FUEL GAUGE



#### ✕ **Low fuel level warning light**

The gauge indicates the approximate quantity of fuel remaining in the tank when the ignition switch is on.

It is a good idea to keep the tank over 1/4 full.

If the fuel level approaches "E" or the low fuel level warning light comes on, fill the fuel tank as soon as possible.

On inclines or curves, due to the movement of fuel in the tank, the fuel gauge needle may fluctuate or the low fuel level warning light may come on earlier than usual.

If the fuel tank is completely empty, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. Fill the fuel tank immediately.

The indicator lamp goes off after driving several times. If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

See the inner back cover for fuel capacity and recommended fuel selection.

### ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE



#### ✕ **Normal range**

The gauge indicates the engine coolant temperature when the ignition switch is on. The engine operating temperature will vary with changes in weather and engine load.

If the needle points to the red zone or higher, stop your vehicle and allow the engine to cool.

Your vehicle may overheat during severe operating conditions, such as:

- ✎ Driving up a long hill on a hot day.
- ✎ Reducing speed or stopping after high speed driving.

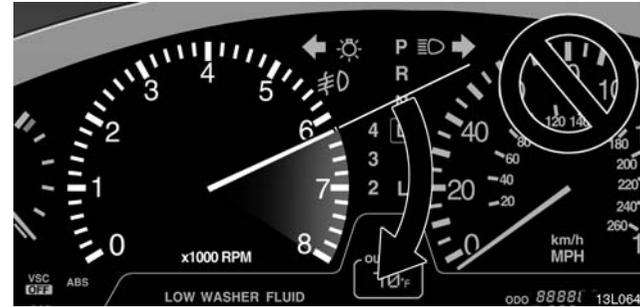
## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

- ⓘ Idling for a long period with the air conditioning on in stop-and-go traffic.
- ⓘ Towing a trailer.

### NOTICE

- ⓘ **Do not remove the thermostat in the engine cooling system as this may cause the engine to overheat. The thermostat is designed to control the flow of coolant to keep the temperature of the engine within the specified operating range.**
- ⓘ **Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. See "If your vehicle overheats" on page 302.**

## TACHOMETER



The tachometer indicates engine speed in thousands of rpm (revolutions per minute). Use it while driving to prevent engine over-revving.

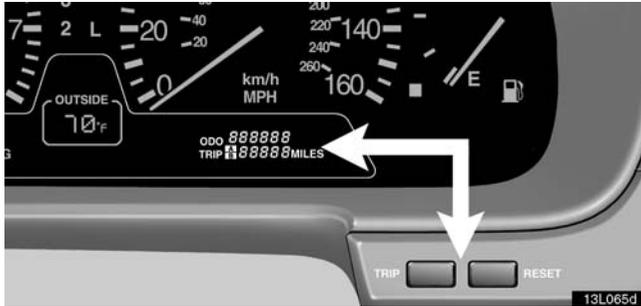
Driving with the engine running too fast causes excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy. Remember, in most cases the slower the engine speed, the greater the fuel economy.

### NOTICE

- ⓘ **Do not let the indicator needle get into the red zone. This may cause severe engine damage.**

**GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS**

**ODOMETER AND TRIP METER**



This meter displays the odometer and two trip meters. To change the mode indication, push the "ODO/TRIP" button.

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven. The twin trip meter records two different distances independently.

For example, you can use one meter to calculate the fuel economy and the other to measure the distance on each trip.

To change the trip meter indication from one trip to the other, push the "ODO/TRIP" button. To set the A trip meter to zero, display the A meter reading, then push the "RESET" button. The same applies for the B trip meter.

The data of trip meters will be cancelled if the electrical power source is disconnected.

**SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS AND WARNING BUZZERS**

	IF THIS INDICATOR OR BUZZER COMES ON ...	DO THIS.
(a)	<b>BRAKE</b> or 	If parking brake is off, stop immediately and contact Lexus dealer.
(b)	 (Indicator and buzzer)	Fasten driver's seat belt.
(c)	 <b>PASSENGER</b>	Fasten front passenger's seat belt.
(d)		Take vehicle to Lexus dealer immediately.
(e)		Stop and check.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

IF THIS INDICATOR OR BUZZER COMES ON ...		DO THIS.
(f)	 or 	Take vehicle to Lexus dealer.
(g)		See multi-information display.
(h)	<b>ABS</b> or 	Take vehicle to Lexus dealer. If brake system warning light is also on, stop immediately and contact Lexus dealer
(i)		Close all doors.
(j)	Low fuel level warning light	Fill up tank.

IF THIS INDICATOR OR BUZZER COMES ON ...		DO THIS.
(k)	Key reminder buzzer	Remove key.

**1**

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

### (a) Brake System Warning Light

This light comes on in the following cases when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

🔔 **When the parking brake is applied ...**

This light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position even after the parking brake is released.

🔔 **When the brake fluid level is low ...**

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<b>It is dangerous to continue driving normally when the brake fluid level is low.</b>

Have your vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer in the following case:

- 🔔 The light does not come on even if the parking brake is applied when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.
- 🔔 The light does not come on even if the ignition key is turned on with the parking brake released.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<b>If either of the following conditions occurs, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.</b>
🔔 <b>The light does not turn off even after the parking brake is released while the engine is running.</b>
<b>In this case, the brakes may not work properly and your stopping distance will become longer. Depress the brake pedal firmly and bring the vehicle to an immediate stop.</b>
🔔 <b>The brake system warning light remains on together with the "ABS" warning light.</b>
<b>In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.</b>

**(b) Driver's Seat Belt Reminder Light and Buzzer**

This light and buzzer remind you to buckle up the driver's seat belt.

Once the ignition switch is turned to "ON" or "START", the reminder light flashes and buzzer sounds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened. Unless the driver fastens the belt, the light stays flashing and the buzzer stops after about 4 to 8 seconds.

**(c) Front Passenger's Seat Belt Reminder Light**

This light reminds you to buckle up the front passenger's seat belt.

Once the ignition switch is turned to "ON" or "START", the reminder light flashes if a passenger sits in the front passenger seat and does not fasten the seat belt. Unless the front passenger fastens the belt, the light stays flashing. However, if a front passenger uses a seat cushion or the like, the indicator may not flash even when the seat belt is not buckled up.

If luggage load is placed on the front passenger seat, depending on its weight and how it is placed on the seat, the built-in sensor in the seat cushion may detect the pressure, causing the reminder light to flash.

**(d) SRS Warning Light**

The indicators come on when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the SRS airbags and seat belt pretensioners are operating properly.

The SRS warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensors, occupant detection sensor, seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources.

If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the parts monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- ⚠ When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on, remains on or flashes.
- ⚠ The light comes on or starts flashing while driving.

If the light stays on, it indicates that the front airbags have a problem. If the light flashes, the side and curtain shield airbags and/or seat belt pretensioners have a problem.



## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

---

### (e) Discharge Warning Light

This light warns that the battery is being discharged.

If it comes on while you are driving, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine, and check for the cause. Look first at the engine drive belt.

- 🔍 If it is loose or broken, the generator will not charge the battery properly.
- 🔍 If the belt is O.K., there is a problem somewhere in the charging system.

The engine ignition will continue to operate, however, until the battery is discharged. Turn off the air conditioning, blower, radio, etc., and drive directly to the nearest Lexus dealer or repair shop.

<b>NOTICE</b>
<b><i>Do not continue driving if the engine drive belt is broken or loose.</i></b>

### (f) Malfunction Indicator Lamp

**This lamp comes on when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position and goes off after the engine starts. This means that the warning light system is operating properly.**

**If the lamp remains on, or the lamp comes on while driving, first check the following:**

- 🔍 Empty fuel tank  
If the fuel tank is empty, refuel immediately.
- 🔍 Loose fuel tank cap  
If the fuel tank cap is loose, securely tighten it.

These cases are temporary malfunctions. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after taking several driving trips.

If the lamp will not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

**If the fuel tank is not empty or the fuel tank cap is not loose...**

- 🔍 There is a problem somewhere in the engine, emission control system, electronic throttle control system, automatic transmission electrical system or warning light system itself.

Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

If this lamp comes on and the engine speed does not increase with the accelerator pedal depressed, there may be a problem somewhere in your electronic throttle control system.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

---

At this time, vibration may occur. However, if you depress the accelerator pedal more firmly and slowly, you can drive your vehicle at low speeds. Have your Lexus checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Even if the abnormality of the electronic throttle control system is corrected during low speed driving, the system may not be recovered until the engine is stopped and the ignition switch is turned to "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

### **Emissions inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs**

Your vehicle may not pass a state emission inspection if the malfunction indicator lamp remains on. Contact your Lexus dealer to check your vehicle's emission control system and OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) system before taking your vehicle for the inspection.

For details, see "Emissions inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs" on page 339.

### **(g) Master Warning Light**

If any system malfunctions, this warning light comes or flashes together with a warning tone, and a warning message appears in the multi-information display. When the cause of the problem is eliminated, the warning tone and message on the display will turn off.

### **(h) "ABS" Warning Light**

The light comes on when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system and the brake assist system work properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if either of the systems malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system, the brake assist system, the traction control system and/or the vehicle skid control system do/does not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

---

If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the parts monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- ⚡ The light does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, or remains on.
- ⚡ The light comes on while you are driving.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.



### CAUTION

If the "ABS" warning light remains on together with the brake system warning light, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.

### (i) Open Door Warning Light

This light remains on until all the doors are completely closed.

### (j) Low Fuel Level Warning Light

This light comes on when the fuel level in the tank becomes very low. Fill the tank as soon as possible.

On inclines or curves, due to the movement of fuel in the tank, the low fuel level warning light may come on earlier than usual.

### (k) Key Reminder Buzzer

This buzzer reminds you to remove the key when you open the driver's door with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

### How to check all the service reminder indicators

(except the low fuel level warning light):

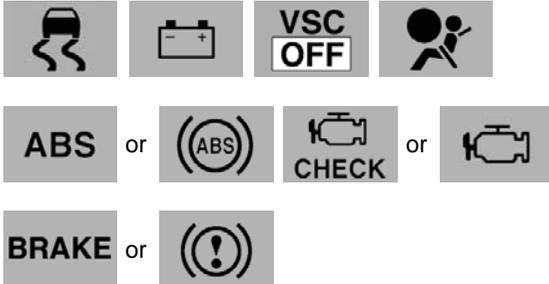
1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Open the door.

The following service reminder indicator should come on. It goes off when you close the door completely.



3. Turn the ignition switch to "ON".

The following service reminder indicators should come on.



The following service reminder indicators go off after a few seconds.



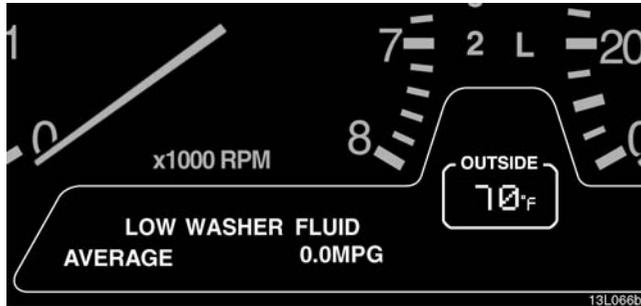
The following service reminder indicators go off after 6 seconds.



If any service reminder indicator or warning buzzer does not function as described above, have it checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

### MULTI-INFORMATION DISPLAY



The multi-information display provides various information, including your vehicle's driving condition, outside temperature, and warning messages if your vehicle is in trouble.

During ordinary driving, cruise information and graphic information are displayed. However, if any problem occurs in your vehicle, a warning message appears above the cruise information.

### (a) Cruise information



✂ 1 "DISP1" button 2 "DISP2" button  
3 "RESET" button

The following information is shown with the ignition switch turned on. Each time you push the "DISP1" button, the displayed information is changed.

- 🔊 Available driving distance
- 🔊 Average fuel consumption
- 🔊 Current fuel consumption
- 🔊 Average fuel consumption after being refueled
- 🔊 Driving distance after being refueled
- 🔊 Elapsed time
- 🔊 Average vehicle speed
- 🔊 Blank

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

The displayed cruise information values indicate the general driving condition and may not always reflect precise and actual conditions.

### Available driving distance

RANGE OVER 170 Mi

✂ *When the fuel gauge is close to "F"*

RANGE APPROX 90.0 Mi

✂ *When the fuel gauge is close to middle*

LOW FUEL

✂ *When the fuel gauge is close to "E"*

The available driving distance is calculated and displayed depending on the amount of remaining fuel.

### Average fuel consumption

AVERAGE 18.0 MPG

The average fuel consumption is calculated and displayed based on the total driving distance and the total fuel consumption with the engine running.

The value is updated every 10 seconds.

To begin recalculating, push the "RESET" button for about 1 to 2 seconds.

### Current fuel consumption

CURRENT 18.0 MPG

The current fuel consumption is calculated and displayed based on the driving distance and the fuel consumption per 2 second interval with the engine running.

The value is updated every 2 seconds.

If you are driving at low speeds just before stopping, the accurate figure may not be shown.

### Average fuel consumption after refueling

TANK AVG 18.0 MPG

The average fuel consumption after refueling is calculated and displayed based on the total driving distance and the total fuel consumption after refueling.

The value is updated every 10 seconds.

When refueling, be sure to stop your vehicle and turn the ignition switch off.

The average fuel consumption could not be calculated in either of the following cases:

- ✂ Refueled by opening the fuel filler door using the manual lever in the trunk
- ✂ Refueled with a small quantity of gasoline

To begin recalculating, push the "RESET" button for about 1 to 2 seconds.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

---

The multi-information display shows “-. MPG” for a while after refueling or pushing the “RESET” switch, and then shows the previous average fuel consumption until you start the vehicle.

### **Driving distance after refueling**



**The driving distance after refueling is displayed.**

When refueling, be sure to stop your vehicle and turn the ignition switch off.

The driving distance after refueling could not be calculated in either of the following cases:

-  Refueled by opening the fuel filler door using the manual lever in the trunk
-  Refueled with a small quantity of gasoline

To begin recalculating, push the “RESET” button for about 1 to 2 seconds.

### **Elapsed time**



**The total time that the engine has been running is displayed.**

When the engine is started again after the ignition is off, the driving time is added to the previous value. Up to 99 hours 59 minutes can be displayed. When the driving time exceeds 99 hours 59 minutes, the display returns to 0 and recounting starts.

To begin recalculating, push the “RESET” button for about 1 to 2 seconds.

### **Average vehicle speed**



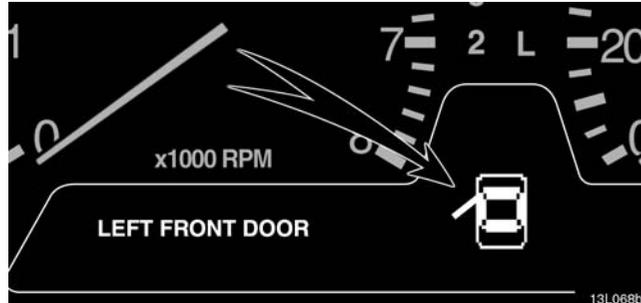
**The average vehicle speed is calculated and displayed based on the total driving distance and the total driving time with the engine running.**

The displayed value is updated every 10 seconds.

To begin recalculating, push the “RESET” button for about 1 to 2 seconds.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

### (b) Graphic information



The following graphic information is shown on the display.

- 🔔 Any door open
- 🔔 Compass display (if equipped)
- 🔔 Outside temperature display
- 🔔 Lexus park assist system display (if equipped)
- 🔔 Dynamic laser cruise control display (if equipped)
- 🔔 Blank

If any door is opened, the warning message also reminds you to close the door.

When the ignition is turned on, the previously selected display appears. Each time you push the “DISP2” button for about 1 to 2 seconds, the display changes from compass (if the compass is initially displayed) to outside temperature to blank screen, then back to compass.

For the compass, see “Compass” on page 63. For the outside temperature display, see “Outside temperature display” on page 73.

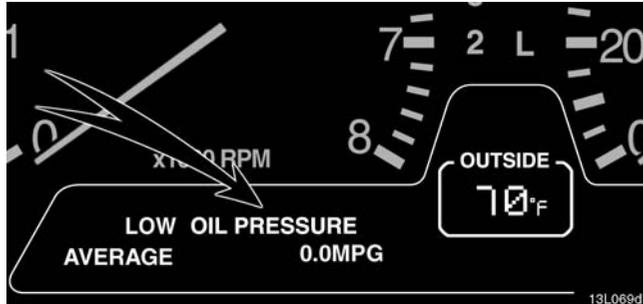
If you push the main switch of the Lexus park assist system or turn the ignition on with the main switch of the Lexus park assist system on, the Lexus park assist system screen appears for 2 seconds and then the multi-information display returns to the previous screen.

When you push the main switch of the dynamic laser cruise control, the dynamic laser cruise control screen appears. Each time you push the “DISP2” switch for 1 to 2 seconds, the screen changes to compass, outside temperature display, blank screen, and then back to the dynamic laser cruise control screen. When the display shows a screen other than dynamic laser cruise control, the multi-information display returns to the dynamic laser cruise control screen after 6 seconds. For details, see “Dynamic laser cruise control” on page 251.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

---

### (c) Warning messages



#### LOW OIL PRESSURE

When the engine oil pressure becomes too low, the master warning light comes on, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds.

If this message appears while you are driving, pull off the road to a safe place and stop the engine immediately. Call a Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop for assistance.

The message may appear when the oil level is extremely low. It is not designed to indicate low oil level, and the oil level must be checked using the oil level dipstick.

#### NOTICE

*Do not drive the vehicle while this warning message is displayed – even for one block. It may ruin the engine.*

#### BRAKE WEAR

When your brake pads have worn down enough to require replacement, the master warning light flashes and the above message appears and the warning tone sounds.

If this message appears while you are driving, have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

---

RIGHT FRONT DOOR

LEFT FRONT DOOR

RIGHT REAR DOOR

LEFT REAR DOOR

TRUNK OPEN

When any door or trunk is open with the ignition switch turned on at 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher vehicle speed, the master warning light flashes, a message indicating which door or trunk is open appears, and a warning tone sounds.

If you continue driving with any door or trunk open, the warning light starts flashing and a warning tone sounds to remind you to close the door or trunk.

MOONROOF OPEN

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switch turned off and the moon roof opened, the master warning light flashes, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds for 8 seconds.

PARK BRAKE

If you start driving with the parking brake applied, the master warning light flashes, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds.

CHECK VSC

If the vehicle skid control system or the traction control system malfunctions, the master warning light and "VSC OFF" indicator light come on. At this time the warning message appears in the multi-information display. And the warning tone sounds.

If the message appears, the vehicle skid control system and traction control system do not work. Although it is no problem to continue driving, have your vehicle checked by Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

1

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

---

### CHANGE A/C FILTER

If the “CHANGE A/C FILTER” appears on the multi-information display, change the air conditioning filter as soon as possible because the air filter might have clogged.

Replace the air conditioning filter in the glove box. After replacing, push and hold the “OFF” button for the front air conditioning for about more than 4 seconds to reset the corresponding data. See “Air conditioning filter” on page 191 for details.

### A/C FILTER RESET

If you push the “OFF” button for the front air conditioning for about more than 4 seconds after the replacement of the air conditioning filters, the above message appears and the attention tone sounds to inform you that the data has been reset.

When you push the “OFF” button for the front air conditioning for more than 4 seconds before “CHANGE A/C FILTER” appears, the data will be cleared. Do not reset the data before this message appears.

### TAILLAMP FAILURE

In the following cases, the master warning light comes on, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds.

- When the headlight switch is turned to the first or second clickstop with one or more tail light bulbs burned out.
- When the brake pedal is held down with one or more stop light bulbs burned out.

Have defective bulbs replaced as soon as possible.

### LOW ENG OIL LEVEL

When the engine oil level is too low, the master warning light flashes, the above message appears, and a warning tone sounds.

Add oil as soon as possible. (For instructions, see “Checking the engine oil level” on page 358.)

While driving on steep inclines or rough roads which causes the vehicle to substantially sway or on curves, this message may appear due to the movement of engine oil in the engine.

In normal conditions, due to engine oil consumption, this message may appear earlier than the specified service interval of the scheduled maintenance. This is because the engine oil is consumed to the low level within the scheduled maintenance interval and does not indicate a problem. (For detailed information, see “Facts about engine oil consumption” on page 356.)

**NOTICE**

*Continued engine operation with low engine oil will damage the engine.*

**LOW WASHER FLUID**

When the fluid level in the tank becomes very low, the above message appears, the master warning light comes on, and a warning tone sounds.

Fill the tank as soon as possible.

**HEADLIGHT LEVELING**

When there is a problem somewhere in the automatic headlight leveling system, the master warning light comes on, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds.

If this message appears, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

**S/T LOCK CBL FAILURE**

If the interlock cable for steering lock is faulty, the above message appears, the master warning light flashes, and a warning tone sounds.

If the above message appears, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

**CLEAN RADAR SENSOR**

If the system cannot easily measure the vehicle-to-vehicle distance because of a dirty laser radar sensor glass while the dynamic laser cruise control is on, the master warning light comes on and the "CRUISE" indicator light flashes, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds.

If this message appears on the screen, clean the sensor glass with a soft cloth and try setting the preset speed again. If the dirt is removed without cleaning, the system will automatically enter the "RADAR READY" mode. If the system does not enter the "RADAR READY" mode even after cleaning or the message remains on the display, the system might be malfunctioning. Although it is no problem to continue driving, contact your Lexus dealer.

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

---

The system will illuminate the following display:

**CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE**

**If the system cannot easily measure the vehicle-to-vehicle distance because of the following conditions while the dynamic laser cruise control is on, the master warning light comes on and the “CRUISE” indicator light flashes, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds.**

- ❖ The wipers are operated at high or low speeds
- ❖ Direct sunlight from the front
- ❖ The driving pattern selector switch is set to the “SNOW” mode.
- ❖ It is determined that it is difficult to make a measurement because of bad weather (such as rainy, foggy, or snowy weather)

**In the following cases, the dynamic laser cruise control switches to the “RADAR READY” mode:**

- ❖ The wipers are stopped or are switched to intermittent operation. (Including intermittent and stopped wipers in the “AUTO” position)
- ❖ No direct sunlight from the front
- ❖ The driving pattern selector switch is changed to the “Normal” or “Power” position.

In the above conditions, press the control lever upward in the “RES/ACC” direction and release it. The dynamic laser cruise control will be restored, however, even after the weather clears, if the setting operation cannot be performed or if the warning message still appears, the system might have malfunctioned.

Although it is no problem to continue driving, contact your Lexus dealer.

**CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM**

**If a system malfunction is detected when dynamic laser cruise control is in the “RADAR READY” mode or operating, the master warning light comes on, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds.**

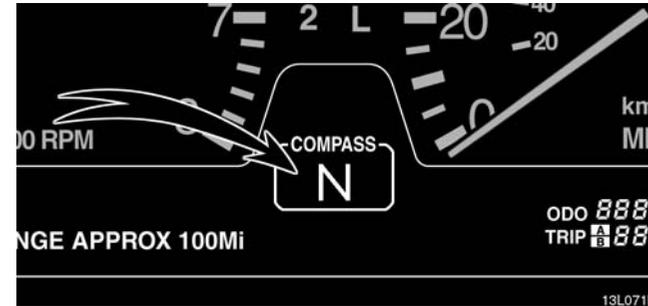
If this message appears, stop your vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition off, and then restart it to reset the system. If the setting still cannot be made or the same message appears again, the system might have malfunctioned. Although it is no problem to continue driving, contact your Lexus dealer.

**NOTICE**

*While you are cruising with the dynamic laser cruise control on, if the master warning light comes on, the cruise indicator light flashes, "CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM" appears on the multi-information display and the warning tone sounds, turn the ignition switch off and then on again. If the function is cancelled again after setting or if settings cannot be made, the dynamic laser cruise control system may be malfunctioning. Although it is no problem to continue driving, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.*

**COMPASS**

(Vehicles without Navigation System)



**1**

When the ignition is turned on, the previously selected display appears. If the compass is not displayed, push the "DISP2" button several times for 1 to 2 seconds to display the compass. However if you push the main switch of dynamic laser cruise control to use dynamic laser cruise control, the dynamic laser cruise control display appears. To change to the compass display, push the "DISP2" button for longer than about 1 second.

**The compass indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading. The illustration shown above indicates that the vehicle is heading north.**

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

Displays	Directions
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- ⚡ The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.  
The compass does not adjust while the vehicle is stopped.
- ⚡ The ignition switch is turned off immediately after turning.  
The compass does not adjust while the vehicle is stopped.
- ⚡ The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- ⚡ The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground parking, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof parking, near a crossing, near a large vehicle, etc.).

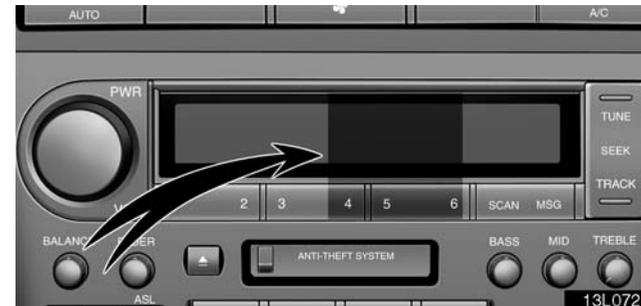
⚡ The vehicle is magnetized. (There is a magnet or a metal object near the audio system.)

⚡ The battery has been disconnected.

The compass works to calibrate the direction automatically while the vehicle is in motion, if deviation is small.

For obtaining additional precision or for complete calibrating, see the following "CALIBRATING THE COMPASS" on page 65.

### COMPASS SENSOR



✂ **Compass sensor**

**The compass sensor is located behind the audio system.**

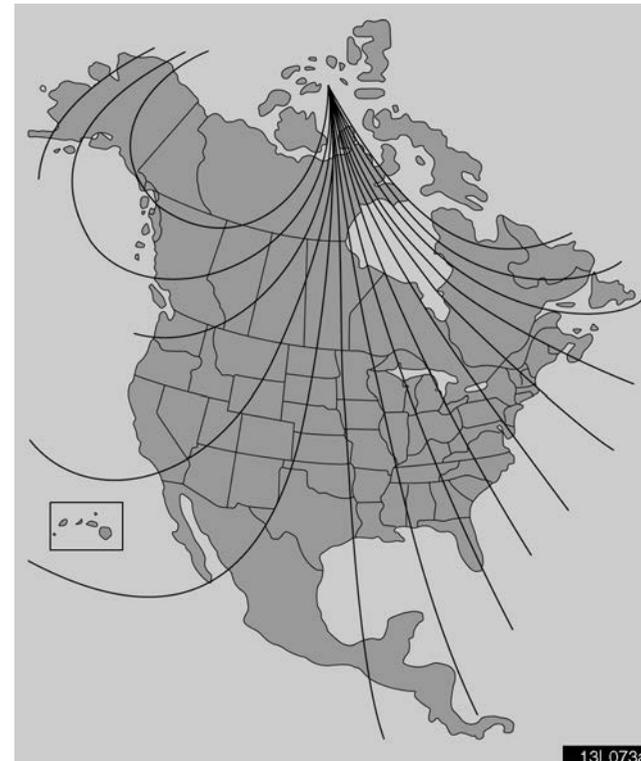
**NOTICE**

*Do not put magnets or a metal object near the audio system. Doing this may cause malfunction of the compass sensor.*

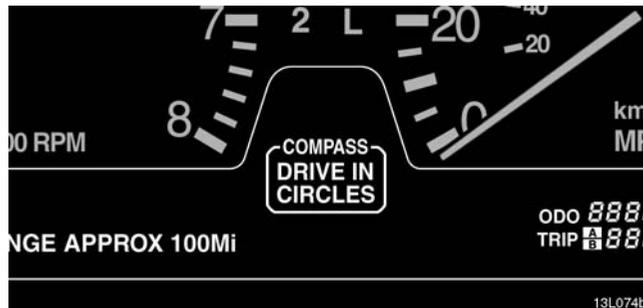
**CALIBRATING THE COMPASS**

The direction display on the compass deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over the area divided as shown in the illustration, the compass will deviate. If it is necessary to calibrate the compass (deviation calibration), take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer. Even if you do not cross over, the compass may sometimes deviate. If this happens, perform "DRIVE IN CIRCLES" calibration as shown on the next page.



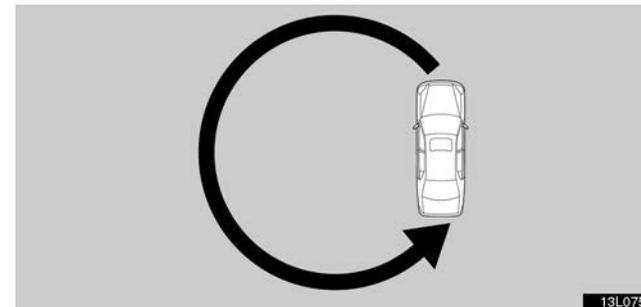
## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS



To rectify the deviation, stop the vehicle, and push and hold the "RESET" button on the steering pad for more than 6 seconds. "DRIVE IN CIRCLES" appears on the display. Perform the following calibration.

### CAUTION

**Do not adjust the display while the vehicle is moving. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.**



Drive the vehicle slowly (at 8 km/h (5 mph) or lower) in a circle until the direction is displayed. If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

After driving in 1 to 3 circles in the above method, calibration is complete with the direction shown on the display.

If calibration cannot be performed because the vehicle is magnetized., take your vehicle to a Lexus dealer.

If you want to cancel the calibration before it is complete, push and hold the "RESET" button on the steering pad more than 6 seconds. To calibrate the compass again, push and hold the same button more than 6 seconds. After "DRIVE IN CIRCLES" appears on the display, follow the calibration procedure above.

 Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground parking, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof parking, near a crossing, near a large vehicle, etc.).

## GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

- ⚠ During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

### CAUTION

- ⚠ **When doing the circling calibration, be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.**
- ⚠ **Do not adjust the display while the vehicle is moving. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.**

## INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHT CONTROL



To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel lights, turn the knob.

1



# SECTION 1 - 4

## INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Interior equipment

Vanity mirrors .....	70
Interior lights .....	71
Personal lights .....	72
Ignition switch light .....	72
Clock .....	73
Outside temperature display .....	73
Cigarette lighter and ashtray .....	74
Power outlets .....	75
Rear console box .....	76
Glove box .....	77
Garage door opener .....	78
Cup holder .....	81
Coin box .....	83
Overhead console box .....	83
Auxiliary boxes .....	84
Trunk storage extension .....	86
Card holder .....	87
Penlight .....	87
Cool box .....	88
Floor mat .....	89
Coat hook .....	90
Sunshades .....	91
Luggage net .....	93
First-aid kit net .....	94
Luggage stowage precautions .....	94



## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

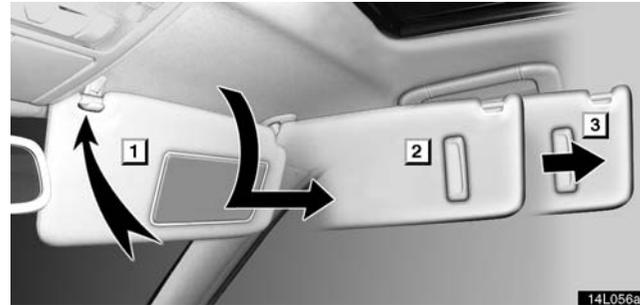
### VANITY MIRRORS



**To use the vanity mirrors, swing the sun visor down and open the cover.**

The vanity light comes on when you open the cover. However if the sun visor is not hooked securely, the light may not come on.

### Sun visors

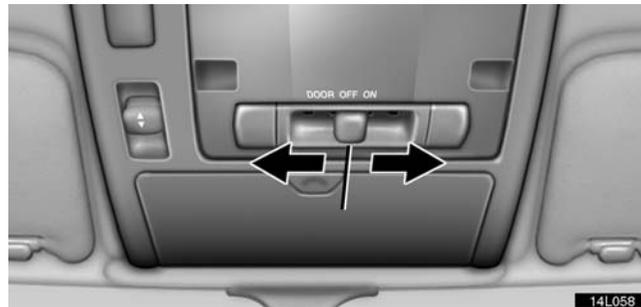


- 1 To block out glare from the front, swing the sun visor down.**
- 2 To block out glare from the side, remove the sun visor from the hook and swing it to the side.**
- 3 To block out glare coming obliquely from behind you, slide the visor backwards.**

At this position, the vanity light does not come on.

## INTERIOR LIGHTS

### Front



**To turn on the interior light, slide the switch.**

With the switch in the "DOOR" position, the light comes on when any of the doors are opened or when the ignition switch is turned to "LOCK". After all the doors are closed, the light remains on for about 15 seconds and then goes out.\*

However, in the following cases, the light goes out immediately:

1. All the doors are closed when the ignition switch is in "ACC" or "ON" position.
2. The ignition switch is turned to "ACC" or "ON" when the light is still on.
3. All the doors are locked when the light is still on.

4. One door is closed with the lock button pushed in while the other doors are locked.

*NOTE: \* The interior lights can be set not to come on or the duration of lighting can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

### Rear



**When you open the rear door, the light turns on. Closing it turns off the light.**

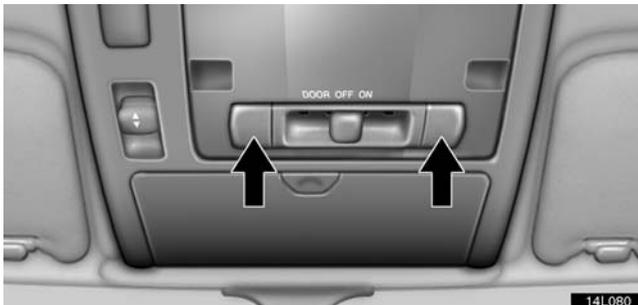
1

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

---

### PERSONAL LIGHTS

Front



Rear



To turn on the personal light, push the switch. To turn it off, push the switch again.

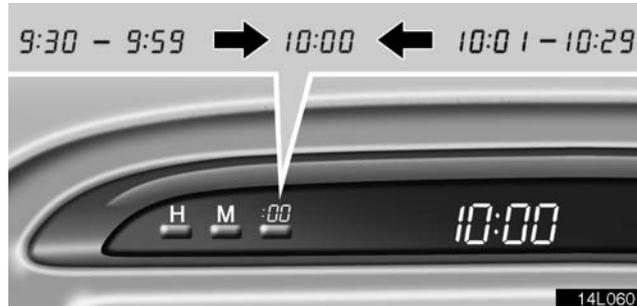
### IGNITION SWITCH LIGHT



For easy access to the ignition switch, the ignition switch light comes on when any of the doors are opened.

The light remains on for about 15 seconds and goes out after all the doors are closed. However, the light goes out immediately when all the doors are locked or the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

### CLOCK



To reset the hour, press the "H" button. To reset the minutes, press the "M" button. To adjust the time to the nearest hour, press the ":00" button.

For example, if the ":00" button is pressed when the time is between 9:30 – 9:59 or between 10:01 – 10:29, the time will change to 10:00.

If the electrical power source has been disconnected from the clock, the time display will automatically be set to 1:00 (one o'clock).

**For vehicles equipped with Navigation System, refer to the separate "Navigation System Owner's Manual".**

### OUTSIDE TEMPERATURE DISPLAY



✂ *On the instrument panel*

**This display shows the outside temperature when the ignition switch is on.**

The displayed temperature ranges from  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-22^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) up to  $50^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $122^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). If the temperature does not appear on the display or it shows "--", take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT



### ✂ Multi-information display

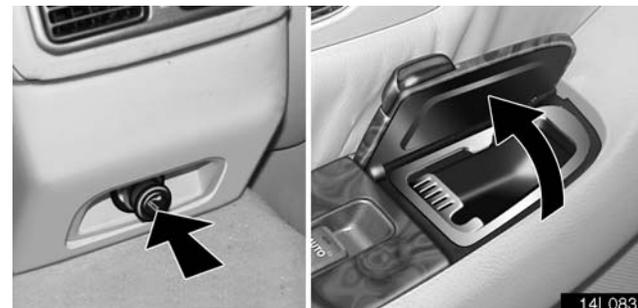
When you push the "DISP2" switch with the ignition switch on, another outside temperature display appears on the multi-information display. (For details, see "Multi-information display" on page 54.)

The displayed temperature ranges from  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-22^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) up to  $50^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $122^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). If the temperature does not appear on the display or it shows "--", take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

## CIGARETTE LIGHTER AND ASHTRAY



### ✂ Front cigarette lighter and ashtray (for some models)



### ✂ Rear cigarette lighter and ashtray

Open the ashtray cover. To use the cigarette lighter, press in the cigarette lighter. After it finishes heating up, it automatically pops out ready for use.

Do not hold the cigarette lighter pressed in.

If the engine is not running, the ignition switch must be in the "ACC" position to use the lighter.

When finished with your cigarette, thoroughly extinguish it in the ashtray to prevent other cigarette butts from catching fire. After using the ashtray, push it back in or close the lid completely.

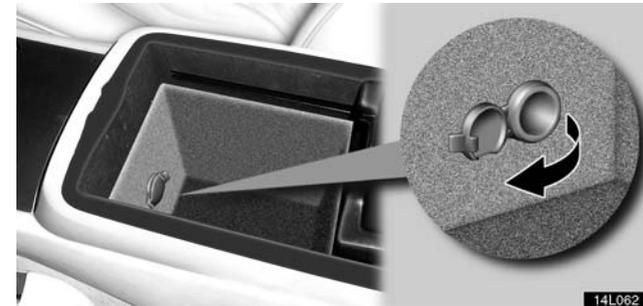
To remove the ashtray, just pull it up.

Use a Lexus genuine cigarette lighter or equivalent for replacement.

**⚠ CAUTION**

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, always close the ashtray completely after use.

**POWER OUTLETS**



✂ *In the rear console box*



✂ *On the right side of the selector lever (for some models)*

**1**

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

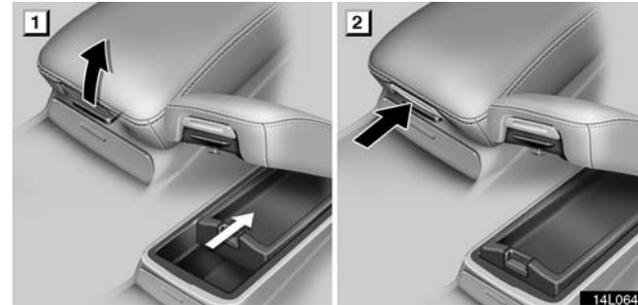
The power outlets are designed for power supply for car accessories.

The ignition switch must be in the "ACC" or "ON" position for the power outlets to be used.

### NOTICE

- ⚠ *To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the electricity over the total vehicle capacity of 10A/12V.*
- ⚠ *To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the engine is not running.*
- ⚠ *Close the power outlet lids when the power outlets are not in use. Inserting a foreign object other than the appropriate plug that fits the outlet, or allowing any liquid into the outlet may cause electrical failure or short circuits.*

## REAR CONSOLE BOX



✂ 1 For the lower box 2 For the upper tray

To use the rear console box, open as shown in the illustration.

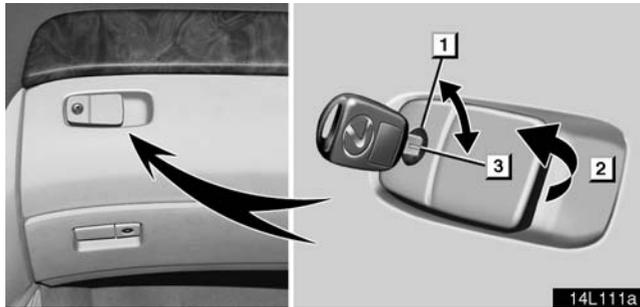


Sliding a tray will make an accommodating space larger.

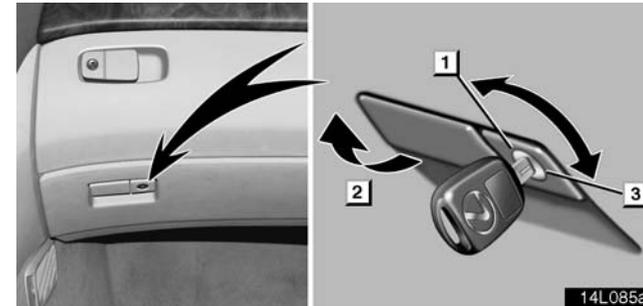
The rear console box light for the lower box will come on with the headlights on.

**CAUTION**  
 To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the console box lid closed while driving.

**GLOVE BOX**



✕ *Upper box* 1 Unlock 2 Open 3 Lock



✕ *Lower box* 1 Unlock 2 Open 3 Lock

To open the glove box door, pull the lever. To lock the glove box door, insert the master key and turn it clockwise.

With the tail lights on, the glove box light will come on when the glove box door is open.

**CAUTION**  
 To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glove box doors closed while driving.

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

### GARAGE DOOR OPENER

The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink® and can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, and security systems, etc.

#### (a) Programming the HomeLink®



✕ **1 Buttons** **2 Indicator light**

The HomeLink® in your vehicle has 3 buttons and you can store one program for each button.

To ensure correct programming into the HomeLink®, install a new battery in the hand-held transmitter prior to programming.

The battery side of the hand-held transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® during the programming process.

For Canadian users, follow the procedure in “Programming an entrance gate/Programming all devices in the Canadian market”.

1. Decide which of 3 HomeLink® buttons you want to program.
2. Place your hand-held garage transmitter 25 to 75 mm (1 to 3 in.) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink® in view while programming.

3. Simultaneously press and hold the hand-held garage transmitter button along with the selected HomeLink® button.

4. When the indicator light on the HomeLink® changes from a slow to a rapid flash after 20 seconds, you can release both buttons.

5. Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button. If programming a garage door opener, check to see if the garage door opens and closes.

If the garage door does not operate, identify if your garage transmitter is of the “Rolling Code” type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup> button. The garage door has the rolling code feature if the indicator light (on the HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup>) flashes rapidly and then remains lit after 2 seconds. If your garage transmitter is the “Rolling Code” type, proceed to the heading “Programming a rolling code system”.

6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for each remaining HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup> button to program another device.

### Programming a rolling code system

**If your device is “Rolling Code” equipped, it is necessary to follow steps 1 through 4 under the heading “Programming the HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup>” before proceeding with the steps listed below.**

1. Locate the “training” button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener. Refer to the owner’s guide supplied by the garage door opener manufacturer for the location of this “training” button.

2. Press the “training” button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

3. Press and release the vehicle’s programmed HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup> button twice. The garage door may open. If the door does not open, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup> unit and be able to activate the garage door up/down.

4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 for each remaining HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup> button to program another rolling code system.

### Programming an entrance gate / Programming all devices in the Canadian market

1. Decide which of the 3 HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup> buttons you want to program.

2. Place your hand-held gate/device transmitter 25 to 75 mm (1 to 3 in.) away from the surface of the HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup>.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup> in view while programming.

3. Press and hold the selected HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup> button.

4. Continuously press and release (cycle) the hand-held gate/device transmitter button every two seconds until step 5 is complete.

5. When the indicator light on the HomeLink<sup>Ⓞ</sup> changes from a slow to a rapid flash after 20 seconds, you can release both buttons.

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

---

6. Test the operation of the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

7. Repeat steps 1 through 6 for each remaining HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button to program another device.

### Programming other devices

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

### Reprogramming a button

Individual HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons cannot be erased, however, to reprogram a single button, follow the procedure "Programming the HomeLink<sup>®</sup>".

### (b) Operating the HomeLink<sup>®</sup>

To operate the HomeLink<sup>®</sup>, press the appropriate HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button to activate the programmed device. The HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light should come on. The HomeLink<sup>®</sup> continues to send the signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

### (c) Erasing the entire HomeLink<sup>®</sup> memory (all three programs)

To erase all previously programmed codes at one time, press and hold down the 2 outside buttons for 20 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> memory.

#### CAUTION

-  **When programming the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> Universal Transceiver, you may be operating a garage door or other device. Make sure people and objects are out of the way of the garage door or other device to prevent potential harm or damage.**
-  **Do not use this HomeLink<sup>®</sup> Universal Transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by federal safety standards. (This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.) A garage door opener which cannot detect an object (signaling the door to stop and reverse), does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**WARNING: This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and Industry Canada DOC/MPAC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.**

## CUP HOLDER

### Front



To use the cup holder, push the top of the cup holder portion of the rear console box.

The cup holder is designed for holding cups or drink-cans securely. When the cup holder is in use, keep the rear console box closed.

1

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

### CAUTION

- Do not place anything else other than cups or drink-cans in the cup holder, as such items may be thrown about in the compartment and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, keep the cup holder closed when not in use.

### Rear



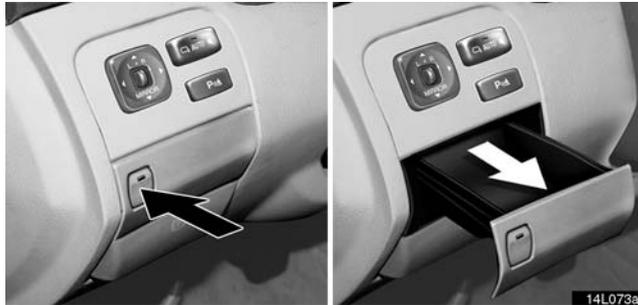
To use the cup holder, open the cup holder portion of the center armrest in the rear seat.

The cup holder is designed for holding cups or drink-cans securely.

### CAUTION

- Do not place anything else other than cups or drink-cans in the cup holder, as such items may be thrown about in the compartment and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, keep the cup holder closed when not in use.

### COIN BOX



To use the coin box, push the coin box button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Keep the coin box closed when not in use.

### OVERHEAD CONSOLE BOX



To use the overhead console box, push the button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ⚡ To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the overhead console box closed while driving.
- ⚡ Do not place any object heavier than 100 g (0.22 lb.) in it. Heavier objects may cause the box to open and the contents to fly out resulting in injuries.

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

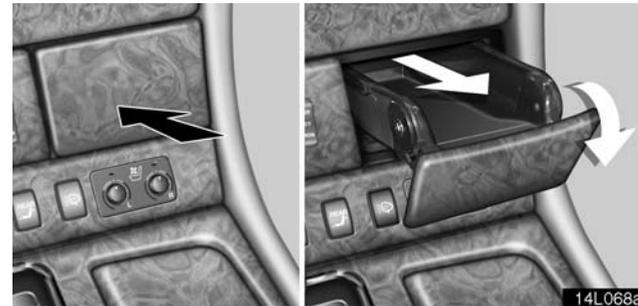
---

### NOTICE

*During hot weather, the interior of the vehicle becomes very hot. Do not leave anything flammable or deformable such as a lighter, glasses, etc. inside.*

### AUXILIARY BOXES

Your vehicle has several types of auxiliary box. To use them, open as shown in the following illustrations.



✂ *On the instrument panel*

### ⚠ CAUTION

As this box is designed for holding eyeglasses or cellular phones, do not place any objects heavier than 300 g (0.44 lb.) in it.

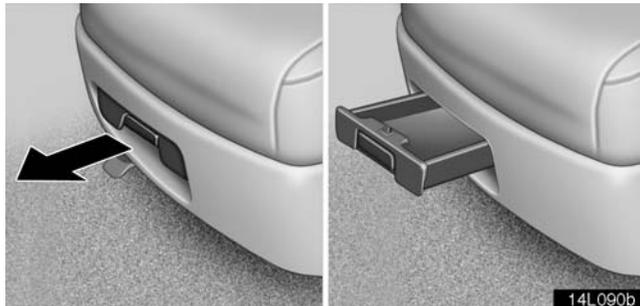
INTERIOR EQUIPMENT



✕ *On the right side of the selector lever (for some models)*



✕ *Under the front passenger's seat*

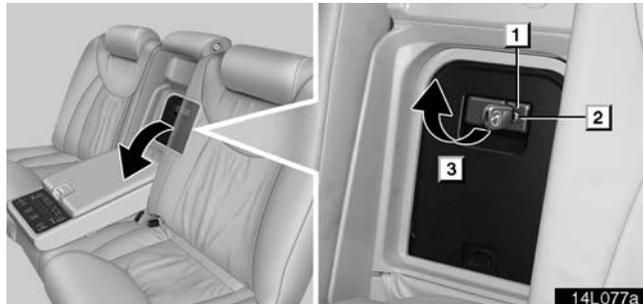


✕ *Under the driver's seat*

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<b>To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the auxiliary box closed while driving.</b>

**1**

## TRUNK STORAGE EXTENSION



✕ **1 Unlock 2 Lock 3 Open**

**Pull down the center armrest in the rear seat. Pull the lever and open the door.**

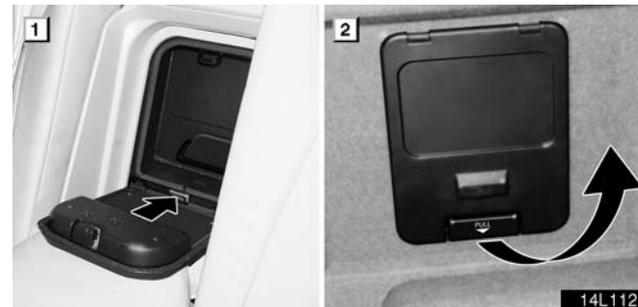
Be sure to use “LEXUS Genuine Sports Gear, Bag” or carry long objects (ski boards, poles, etc.) properly.

For installation and handling of the “LEXUS Genuine Sports Gear”, follow the instructions provided with goods.

You can use a container as an accessory box. To lock the box, insert the master key and turn it clockwise.

**! CAUTION**

**To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the auxiliary box closed while driving.**



✕ **1 From passenger compartment side**  
**2 From trunk side**

To extend a storage space, push the button on the door to unlock and then push the door from the passenger side or pull it from the trunk side.

See “Luggage stowage precautions” on page 94 for precautions to observe in loading luggage.

**! CAUTION**

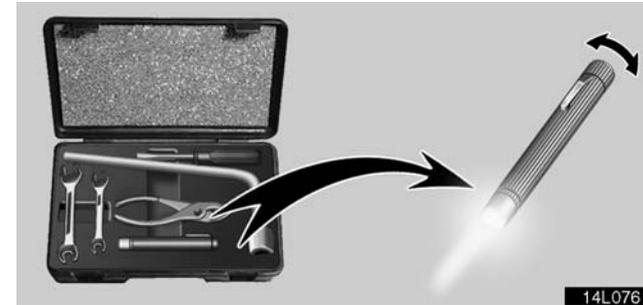
**Be sure to close the door when the trunk storage extension is not in use. Luggage or cargo in the trunk may be thrown into the passenger compartment in a sudden stop or crash resulting in injury.**

### CARD HOLDER



You can store a card in the slot as shown in the illustration.

### PENLIGHT



The penlight is in the tool box on the left side of the trunk.

- ⚠ Battery insertion: Insert the batteries into the penlight. (The penlight terminals have no + or – end, but be sure to insert both batteries facing the same direction.)
- ⚠ To turn the penlight on, turn the penlight head.
- ⚠ To turn it off, turn the penlight head further in the same direction or turn it in the reverse direction.

1

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

### COOL BOX



The cool box is designed for holding canned drinks. Do not use this box to store drinks in plastic or disposable containers, or bottles—they might spill or break. Do not store any food that might go bad or smell in this box. Do not place any food on the box.

The cool box system will activate whenever the rear air conditioning is on.

To use the cool box:

1. Pull the band of the center armrest forward and down.



2. Pull the lever on top of the lid and push down.



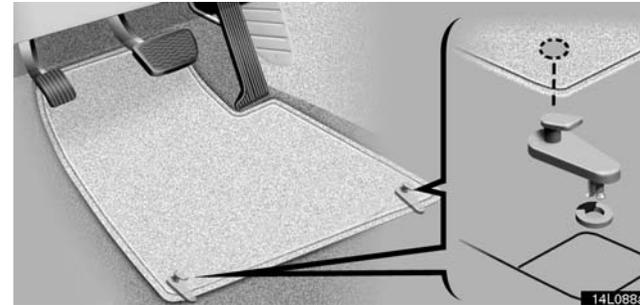
The cool box system can be turned off by closing the cool air intake lid shown in the illustration. At this time, although you can use the box as an auxiliary box, note that cool air might flow inside.

Open the cool air intake lid when using it as a cool box.

 CAUTION

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, always keep the cool box closed when it is not in use.

**FLOOR MAT**

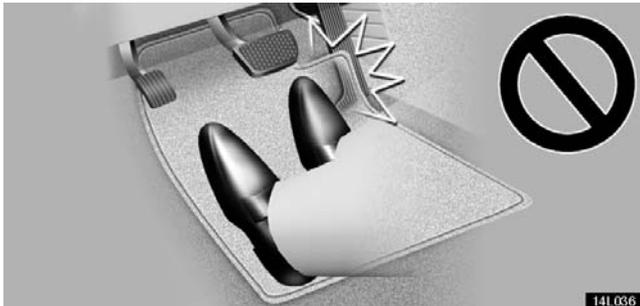


**Use a floor mat of the correct size.**

If the floor carpet and floor mat have 2 holes, then they are designed for use with locking clips. Fix the floor mat with locking clips into the holes in the floor carpet.

1

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT



### CAUTION

Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the floor carpet. If the floor mat slips and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it may cause an accident.

## COAT HOOKS



To use the coat hook, push the hook.

### CAUTION

Do not hook a hanger, heavy or sharp pointed object on the coat hook. If the curtain shield airbag inflates, those items will be hurled away with great force or the curtain shield airbag may not activate correctly. When you hang clothes, hang them on the coat hook directly.

SUNSHADES

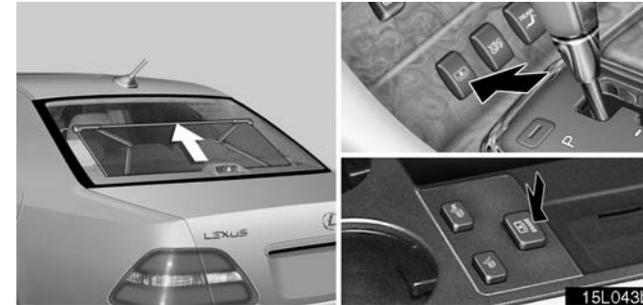


✕ **Type A (Rear electric sunshade only)**



✕ **Type B (Rear electric sunshade and manual sunshades)**

Rear electric sunshade



To raise the rear electric sunshade, push the switch. To lower the shade, push the same switch again.

The sunshade works when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

**When the selector lever is shifted into the "R" position while the sunshade is raised, the sunshade will be automatically lowered.**

To raise the sunshade again, perform any of the following operations:

- ✦ Shift the selector lever into the "P" position.
- ✦ Shift the selector lever into a position other than "P" or "R" and then push the switch again.
- ✦ Move the selector lever out of "R" position and drive your vehicle over 15 km/h (9 mph).

## INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

**Key off operation:** Even after the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, the sunshade can be operated for about 60 seconds.

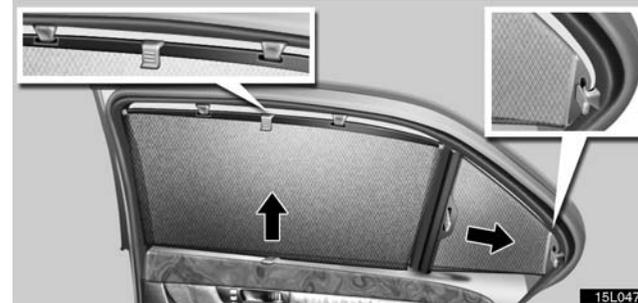
### CAUTION

- ⚠ Do not touch the brackets fastening the shade to avoid injuring your fingers or hands.
- ⚠ Do not put your fingers in the shade groove while the shade is operating to avoid getting them caught or injured by the runner.

### NOTICE

- ⚠ *To prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged, always operate the shade while the engine is running.*
- ⚠ *Observe the following to avoid damage and/or malfunction:*
  - Do not overload the shade motor and other parts (for instance by pushing down on the sunshade bracket while it is opening).*
  - Do not place anything where it may hinder the opening/closing of the shade.*
  - Do not affix anything to the shade.*
  - Clean the shade groove if there is any foreign matter or dust on it.*
  - Do not operate the rear electric sunshade repeatedly for a long time as its motor may overheat.*

## Manual sunshades



To use the sunshade, pull the tab of the sunshade upward or sideways and hook it as shown.

### NOTICE

*Do not place anything in the sunshade groove so as not to be damaged.*

## LUGGAGE NET

The luggage net is located in the trunk to secure the luggage.

The net is installed as follows:

### Securing the luggage on the floor



1. Raise the front hooks on the vehicle front side.
2. Raise the rear hooks on the vehicle rear side. If the hooks are under the mat, slide the mat a little and raise the hooks.
3. Hook the net on the front hooks and then on the rear hooks.

### Securing the luggage in the trunk

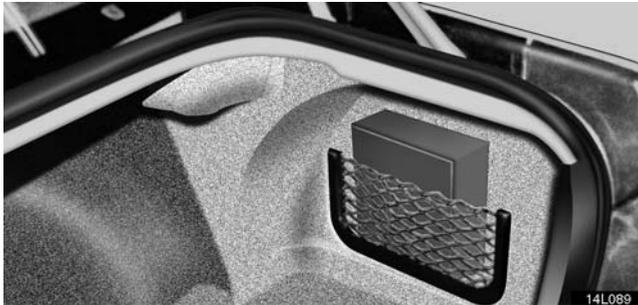


1. Raise the lower hooks on the vehicle front side.
2. Hook the luggage net on the lower hooks and then on the upper hooks.

### NOTICE

- ⚠ **Do not use the net to secure sharp or heavy objects. The net will tear off.**
- ⚠ **Be sure not to twist the strap or net when hooking.**

## FIRST-AID KIT NET



**This net is designed to accommodate the first-aid kit.**

Make sure the first-aid kit rests securely in the net.

## LUGGAGE STORAGE PRECAUTIONS

**When stowing luggage or cargo in the vehicle, observe the following:**

- ⚠ Put luggage or cargo in the trunk when at all possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- ⚠ Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- ⚠ For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

### CAUTION

- ⚠ **Do not place anything on the package tray behind the rear seatback. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.**
- ⚠ **Do not drive with objects left on top of the instrument panel. They may interfere with the driver's field of view. Or they may move during sharp vehicle acceleration or turning, and impair the driver's control of the vehicle. In an accident they may injure the vehicle occupants.**

**NOTICE**

*Do not load the vehicle beyond the vehicle capacity weight specified on the tire pressure label inside the glove box lid.*



# SECTION 1-5

---

## INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Exterior equipment

Hood .....	98
Trunk lid .....	99
Fuel tank cap .....	102
Moon roof .....	104

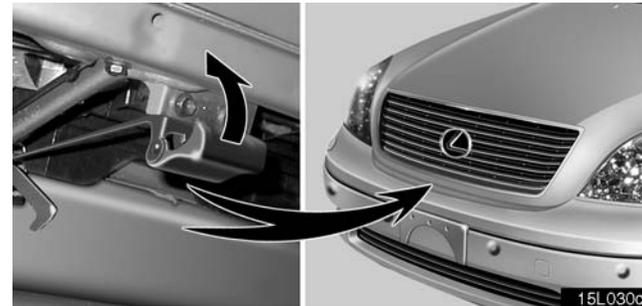


## EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT

### HOOD



**1. To open the hood, pull the hood lock release lever under the instrument panel. The hood will spring up slightly.**



**2. Insert your fingers under the hood, push up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.**

Before closing the hood, check to see that you have not forgotten any tools, rags, etc. Then lower the hood and make sure it locks.

#### CAUTION

**Before driving, be sure that the hood is securely locked. Otherwise, the hood may open unexpectedly while driving and an accident may occur.**

## TRUNK LID



**To unlock the trunk lid, insert the master key and turn it clockwise.**

To close the trunk lid, lower it and press down on it. After closing the trunk lid, try pulling it up to make sure it is securely closed.

The trunk lid can be unlocked using the wireless remote control key. For details, see page 15.

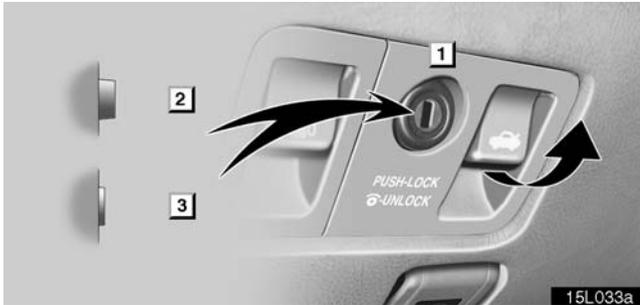
When you open the trunk, the lights illuminate the inside of the trunk and around your feet.

### CAUTION

-  **Keep the trunk lid closed while driving. This not only prevents luggage from being thrown out, but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.**
-  **Always lock the trunk lid and all doors, and keep the vehicle keys out the reach of children.**
-  **Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised children may lock themselves in the vehicle or trunk and suffer serious injuries or death.**

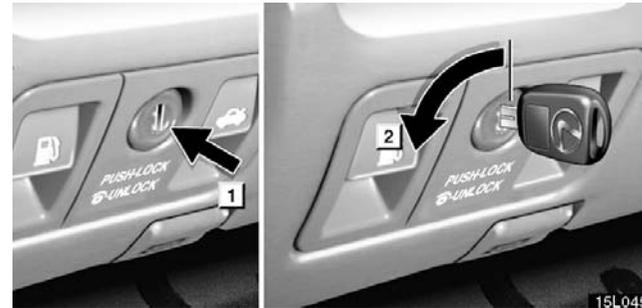
## EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT

### Trunk lid opener



✕ **1** Main switch **2** Operative **3** Inoperative

To open the trunk lid while sitting in the driver's seat, pull the lever with the main switch not pushed in.



**1** If you do not want to activate the trunk lid opener system, push in the main switch.

**2** To activate the system, insert the master key and turn it counterclockwise.

To protect things put in the trunk, when you have your vehicle parked, push in the main switch.

### Trunk lid closer

If the trunk lid is closed but does not latch shut, it automatically closes completely.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ⚡ Pay careful attention not to get your fingers trapped as the trunk lid automatically closes when the trunk has not been fully closed.
- ⚡ Never allow a child to operate the trunk lid.

**NOTICE**

***Do not apply excessive force when the trunk lid closer is operating. Doing so may damage the trunk lid closer.***

Also, be careful not to leave the key inside the trunk.

### Internal trunk release handle



If a person is locked in the trunk, he/she can pull down the phosphorescent handle on the inside of trunk lid to open the trunk lid.

The phosphorescent (glow-in-the-dark) handle will continue to glow for a time after the trunk lid is closed. Exposing the handle to stronger light will cause it to glow longer.

**1**

## EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT

### FUEL TANK CAP



1. To open the fuel filler door, pull the lever under the instrument panel.

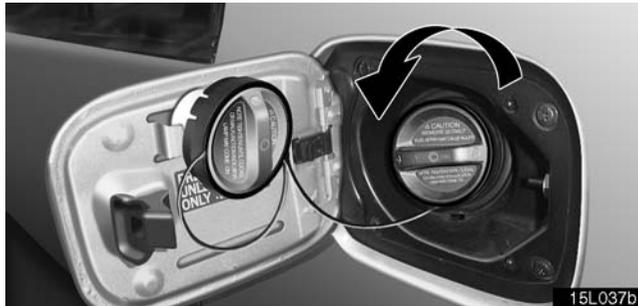
When refueling, turn off the engine.

#### CAUTION

- Do not smoke, cause sparks or allow open flames when refuelling. The fumes are flammable.
- When opening the cap, do not remove the cap quickly. In hot weather, fuel under pressure could cause injury by spraying out of the filler neck if the cap is suddenly removed.



The arrow head next to FUEL DOOR as shown indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.



**2. To remove the fuel tank cap, turn the cap slowly counterclockwise, then pause slightly before removing it. The removed cap can be stored on the back side of the fuel filler door.**

It is not unusual to hear a slight swoosh when the cap is opened. When installing the cap, turn the cap clockwise until you hear a click.

If the cap is not tightened securely, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. Make sure the cap is tightened securely.

The indicator lamp goes off after driving several times. If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

 **CAUTION**

-  **Make sure the cap is tightened securely to prevent fuel spillage in case of an accident.**
-  **Use only a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap for replacement. It is designed to regulate fuel tank pressure.**

## EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT

---

### In case the opener is not actuated



**Pull the manual lever toward the back.**

This is used in case the fuel filler door cannot be opened due to a discharged battery or other trouble.

### Refueling the vehicle

As soon as the correctly operated nozzle switches off automatically for the first time, the tank is full. Do not try to add more fuel, because fuel may spill out.

## MOON ROOF



✂ **1 Open 2 Close**

**To slide open the moon roof, push the switch toward the back for about 1 second. The moon roof will open and stop partway 30 mm (1.2 in.) from the fully opened position. When you push the switch again, the moon roof will open fully. To stop partway, push the same side or the "TILT" switch.**

As driving with the moon roof opened fully will cause wind throbs, we recommend you to drive with the moon roof partway 30 mm (1.2 in.) from the fully opened position.

To operate the moon roof, the ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

The sunshade can be opened or closed manually. However, if you open the moon roof, the sunshade will be opened with the moon roof.

To close the moon roof, push the switch toward the front for about 1 second. The moon roof will fully close. To stop partway, push the same switch or push the "TILT" switch.



✕ **1 Tilt up** **2 Lower**

To tilt up the rear end of the moon roof fully, push the switch on the rear side or on the front side to lower it.

To operate the moon roof, the ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

**Key off operation:** Even if the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, the moon roof can be operated until any of the doors is opened (or for about 45 seconds).

### Operating the moon roof from outside the vehicle

The moon roof can be closed or opened using a key.\*

**Insert the ignition key into the key hole on the driver's door.**

**To close the moon roof:** Turn the key in the locking direction and hold it.

After the door is locked, the moon roof begins to close. To stop in the middle, return the key.

**To open the moon roof:** Turn the key in the unlocking direction and hold it.

After the door is unlocked, the moon roof begins to open. To stop in the middle, return the key.

*NOTE: \*This feature can be deactivated, or sliding open or tilting up can be selected. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

### Jam protection function

During closing operation, the moon roof stops and is open if something gets caught into the roof opening.

If the moon roof receives a strong impact, this function may work even if nothing is caught.



## EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT

---

### CAUTION

To avoid serious personal injury, you must do the following.

- ⓘ While the vehicle is moving, always keep the heads, hands and other parts of the bodies of all occupants away from the roof opening. Otherwise, they could be seriously injured if the vehicle stops suddenly or if the vehicle is involved in an accident.
- ⓘ Before you close the moon roof, always make sure there is nobody around the moon roof. You must also make sure nobody places his or her head, hands and other parts of the body in the roof opening. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in the closing roof, it could result in a serious injury. When anyone closes the moon roof, first make sure it is safe to do so.
- ⓘ Never leave small children alone in the vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. They could use the moon roof switches and get trapped in the roof opening. Unattended children can be involved in serious accidents.
- ⓘ Never sit on top of the vehicle around the roof opening.
- ⓘ Never try jamming any part of your body to make the jam protection function work intentionally.
- ⓘ The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closed.

# SECTION 1 – 6

---

## INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Comfort adjustment

Front seats .....	108
Rear seats .....	115
Head restraints .....	116
Tilt and telescopic steering wheel .....	119
Outside rear view mirrors .....	121
Inside rear view mirror .....	125
Seat belts .....	126
SRS airbags .....	136
Child restraint .....	151
Driving position memory system .....	170
Rear seat position memory system .....	172



## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---

### FRONT SEATS

#### Front seat precautions

 **CAUTION**

The side airbags are installed in the driver and front passenger seats. Observe the following precautions.

-  Do not lean against the front door when the vehicle is in use, since the side airbag inflates with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, you may be killed or severely injured.
-  Do not use accessories for the seats which cover the parts where the side airbags inflate. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, causing death or serious injury.
-  Do not modify or replace the seats or the upholstery of the seats with side airbags. Such changes may disable the system, or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury. Consult your Lexus dealer if you insist on modifications of this kind.

#### Seat adjustment precautions

Adjust the driver's seat so that the foot pedals, steering wheel and instrument panel controls are within easy reach of the driver.

 **CAUTION**

-  Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
-  Be careful that the seat does not hit a passenger, luggage or the rear seat.

**NOTICE**

*Do not operate the control switch in more than one dimension at a time. It may cause electrical overload.*

## Adjusting front seats



- ✕ **1** *Seat cushion length control switch*
- 2** *Seat position control switch, seat cushion angle and height control switch*
- 3** *Seatback angle and head restraint control switch*
- 4** *Upper lumbar support control switch*
- 5** *Lower lumbar support control switch*

## Adjusting seat cushion length



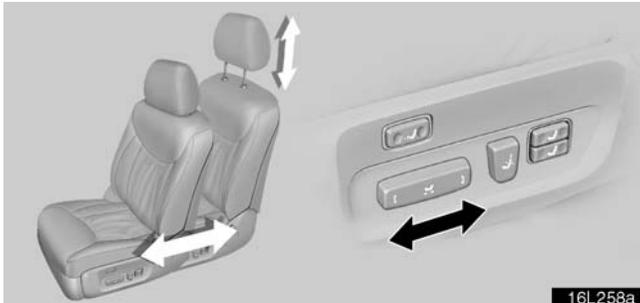
✕ *For driver's seat only*

**Move the control switch in the desired direction.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seat cushion in that position. Do not place anything under the seat, as this might interfere with the seat movement.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### Adjusting seat position

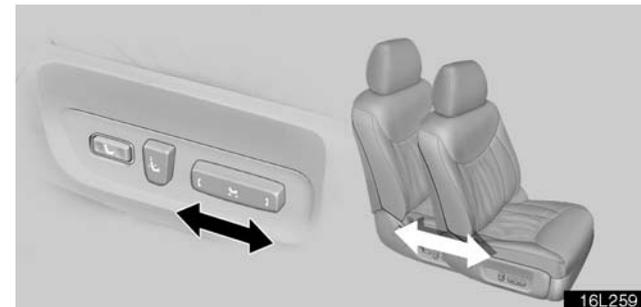


✂ *For driver's seat*

**Move the control switch in the desired direction.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seat and head restraint in that position. Do not place anything under the seat, as this might interfere with the seat movement.

You can adjust the head restraint in the desired position by using the head restraint control switch. However, if you move the seat more than 15 mm (0.6 in.) by using the seat position control switch after adjusting the head restraint, the head restraint will return to the designated position as determined by the seat position switch. To adjust the head restraint, see "Head restraints" on page 116.

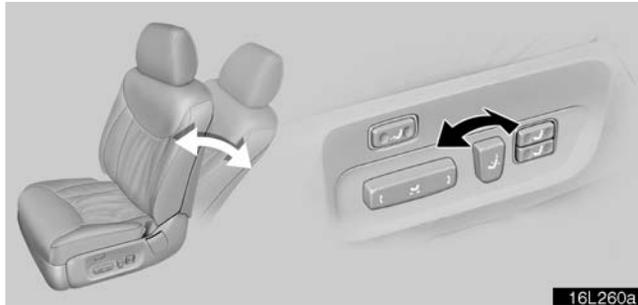


✂ *For passenger's seat*

**Move the control switch in the desired direction.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seat in that position. Do not place anything under the seat as this might interfere with the seat movement.

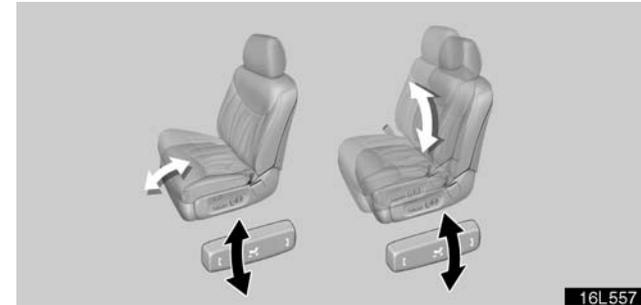
**Adjusting seatback angle**



**Move the control switch in the desired direction.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seatback in that position.

**Adjusting seat cushion angle and height**



**Move the control switch in the desired direction.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seat cushion in that position.

**1**

**⚠ CAUTION**

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, avoid reclining the seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the passenger are sitting up straight and well back in the seats. If you are reclined, the lap belt may slide past your hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen. In the event of a frontal collision, the more the seat is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### Adjusting lumbar support

#### Driver's seat (Upper and lower lumbar supports)

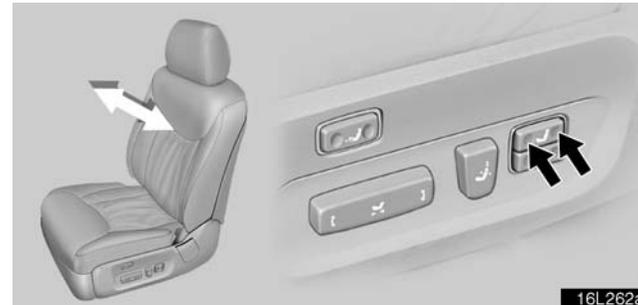
To use both lumbar supports effectively, adjust the lower lumbar support first and then the upper lumbar support.



#### Lower lumbar support

**Push the lower lumbar support control switch on either side.**

The amount of lower lumbar support will change while the switch is pushed.

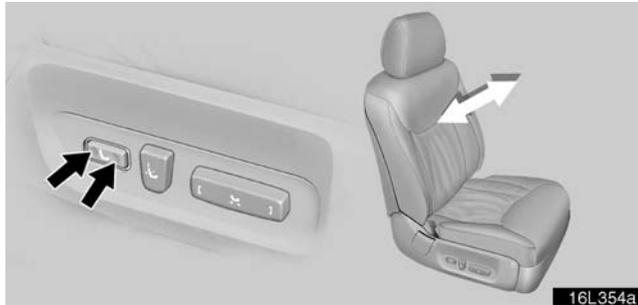


#### Upper lumbar support

**Push the upper lumbar support control switch on either side.**

The amount of upper lumbar support will change while the switch is pushed.

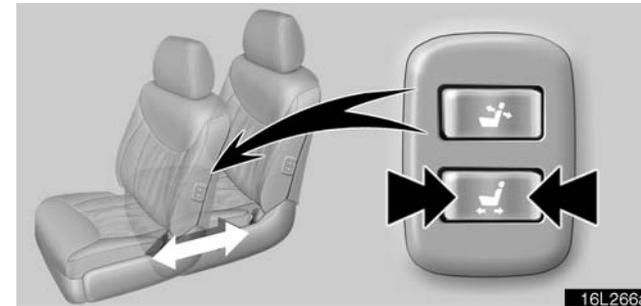
### Front passenger's seat



**Push the control switch on either side.**

The amount of lumbar support will change while the switch is pushed.

### Adjusting front passenger's seat from the driver's seat



✂ **Seat position**

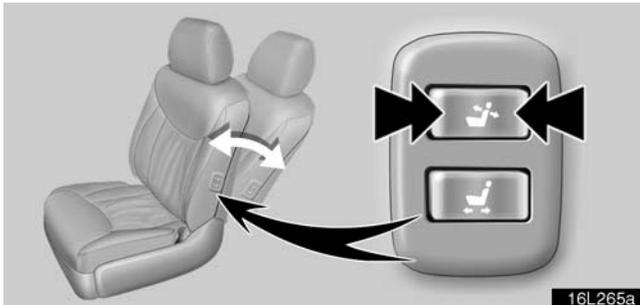
**Move the control switch in the desired direction.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seat in that position. Do not place anything under the seat as this might interfere with the seat movement.

### CAUTION

**If you operate the switch when a front passenger is seated or he or she is getting on or off the front passenger seat, take full safety precautions beforehand by telling the occupant that the seat is about to move.**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



### ✂ *Seatback angle*

**Move the control switch in the desired direction.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seatback in that position.

### CAUTION

- ✂ If you operate the switch when an occupant is seated or when he or she is getting on or off the front passenger seat, take full safety precautions beforehand by telling the occupant that the seat is about to move.
- ✂ To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, avoid reclining the seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the front passenger is sitting up straight and well back in the seats. If he or she is reclined, the lap belt may slide past hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen. In the event of a frontal collision, the more the seat is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury.

## REAR SEATS

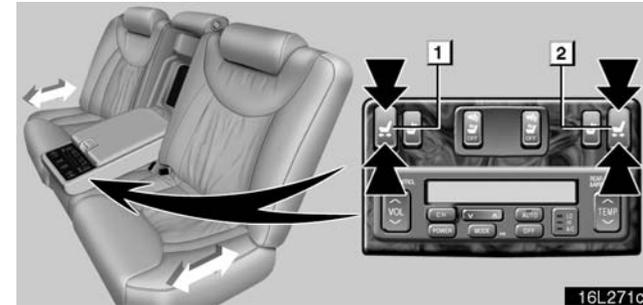
### Adjusting rear seats



- ✕ **1** *Seat position control switch*
- 2** *Head restraint height control switch*

For the operation of head restraints, see “Head restraints” on page 116.

### Adjusting seat position



- ✕ **1** *For left seat* **2** *For right seat*

**Push the control switch on the front side to move the seat forward and on the rear side to move the seat backward.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seat in that position. Do not place anything under the seat as this might interfere with the seat movement.

**1**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### Returning the rear seats and rear head restraints from the front seats



To return the rear seats and rear head restraints, push the switch on the instrument panel. The rear seats move backward and the rear head restraints move downward while the switch is being pushed.

#### CAUTION

- ⚠ Do not operate the switch when the rear seats and head restraints are in the rearmost and lowest positions. The system may malfunction.
- ⚠ If you operate the switch when an occupant is seated or when he or she is getting on or off the rear seat, take full safety precautions beforehand by telling the occupant that the seat is about to move.

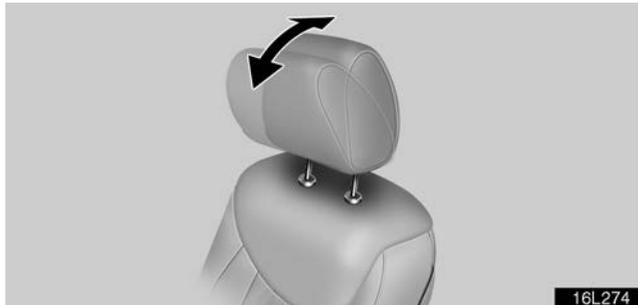
## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### Front seats



Move the control switch in the desired direction.

Releasing the switch will stop the head restraint in that position.



16L274

To move the head restraint forward or rearward, pull or push on the top.

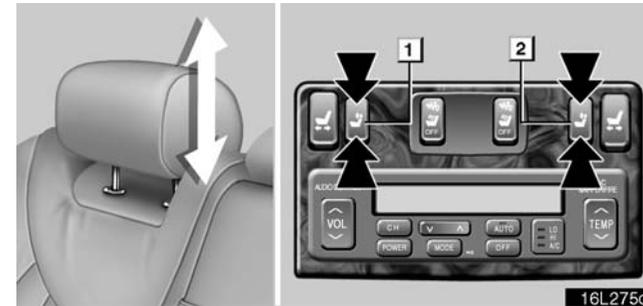
The head restraint is most effective when it is close to your head. Therefore, using a cushion on the seatback is not recommended.

**CAUTION**

Adjust the center of the head restraint so that it is closest to the top of your ears.

**Outside rear seats (power type)**

**Adjusting head restraint height**



16L275c

✕ **1 For left seat 2 For right seat**

Push the control switch on the front side to move the head restraint upward and on the rear side to move it downward.

Releasing the switch will stop the head restraint in that position.

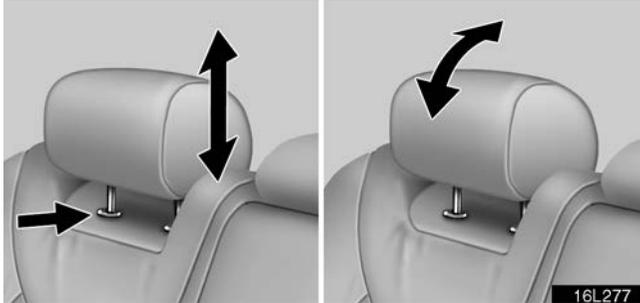
**CAUTION**

Adjust the center of the head restraint so that it is closed to the top of your ears.

**1**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### Outside rear seats (manual type)



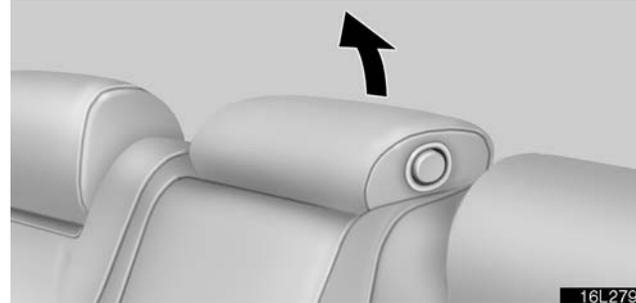
To raise the head restraint, pull it up. To lower it, press the lock release button and push the head restraint down. To move the head restraint forward or rearward, pull or push on the top.

The head restraint is most effective when it is close to your head. Therefore, using a cushion on the seatback is not recommended.

#### CAUTION

-  Adjust the center of the head restraint so that it is closest to the top of your ears.
-  After adjusting the head restraint, make sure it is locked in position.
-  Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

### Center rear seat



To move the head restraint forward, pull on the top. To move the head restraint forward or rearward, pull or push on the top.

The head restraint is most effective when it is close to your head. Therefore, using a cushion on the seatback is not recommended.

#### CAUTION

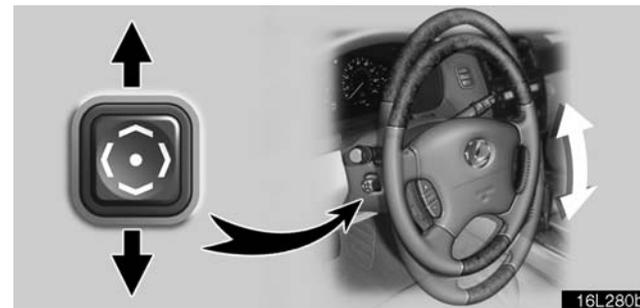
After adjusting the head restraint, make sure it is locked in position.



Push the button to return the head restraint to its original position.

## TILT AND TELESCOPIC STEERING WHEEL

Adjustment of steering wheel tilt



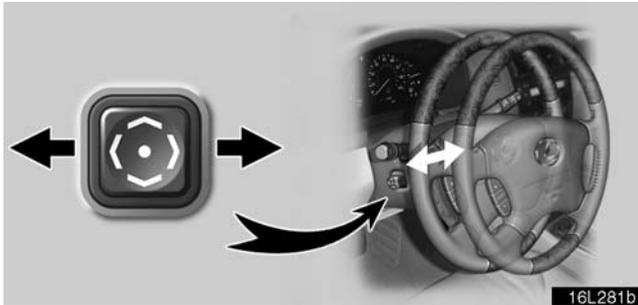
To adjust the tilt of the steering wheel, push the control switch upward or downward to set it to the desired position.

 **CAUTION**

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### Adjustment of telescopic steering column

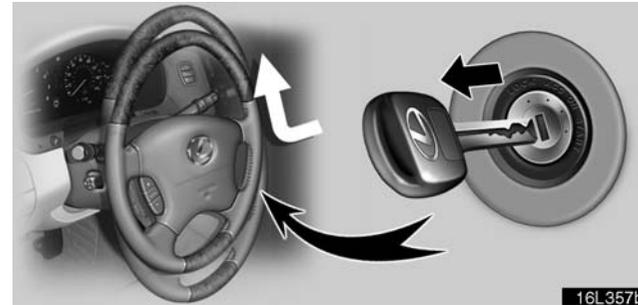


To adjust the steering column length, push the control switch forward or backward to set the steering wheel to the desired position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not adjust the steering column while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries

### Auto tilt away\*



When the ignition key is removed, the steering column moves forward away from the driver and also tilts up for easy exit and entry.

When the key is inserted in the ignition switch, the steering column returns to the previously set position.

*NOTE: \*This feature can be deactivated. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

## OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRRORS



**Adjust the mirror so that you can just see the side of your vehicle in the mirror.**

Be careful when judging the size or distance of any object seen in the outside rear view mirror on the passenger's side. It is a convex mirror with a curved surface. Any object seen in a convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than if seen in a normal flat mirror.

When the inside rear view mirror darkens in "AUTO" mode, the outside rear view mirrors also darken to reduce the reflection of the headlights of the following vehicle. For details, see "Inside rear view mirror" on page 125.

When you push the rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch or operate the wipers, the heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will quickly clear the mirror surface. (See "Windshield wiper and washer switch" on page 28 and "Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch" on page 32.)



### CAUTION

- ⚠ **Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**
- ⚠ **Since the mirror surfaces can get hot, do not touch them when the rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch is on.**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### Power rear view mirror control



✕ **1** Master switch **2** Control switch

To adjust the power rear view mirror, first place the master switch at "L" (left) or "R" (right), and push the control switch on the desired side.

The power rear view mirrors can be adjusted when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

When you are backing up, you can adjust the mirrors down quickly by the following operations with the ignition ON.

- ⚙ Put the selector lever in the "R" position.
- ⚙ Place the master switch at "L" (left) or "R" (right).

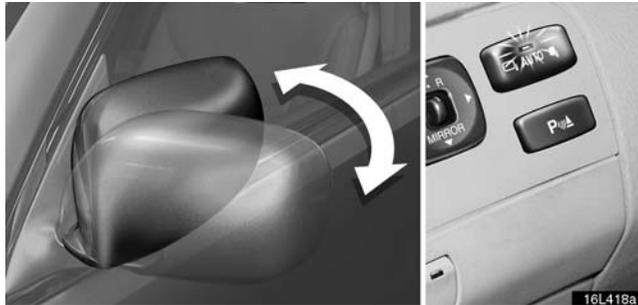
The mirrors return to the previous position by any of the following operations.

- ⚙ Put the selector lever in a position other than "R".
- ⚙ Place the master switch in the neutral position.
- ⚙ Turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" position.

### NOTICE

*If ice should jam the mirror, do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.*

**Folding and extending automatic rear view mirrors**



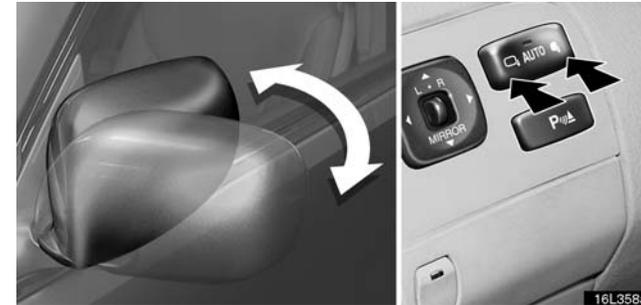
With the rear view mirror folding switch in the “AUTO” position:

- ⚡ When you turn the ignition switch to “ACC” or “ON” position, the folded rear view mirrors are automatically extended.
- ⚡ When you turn the ignition switch to “LOCK” position, the rear view mirrors are automatically folded.

The rear view mirrors can be folded or extended manually.

<b>CAUTION</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⚡ To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, do not touch the mirror while it is moving.</li> <li>⚡ Do not drive with the mirrors folded backward. Both the driver and passenger side rear view mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.</li> </ul>

**Folding rear view mirrors**



To fold the mirrors, push the switch on the right side. To extend the rear view mirrors, push the switch on the left side.

The rear view mirrors can be folded backward for parking in narrow areas.

<b>CAUTION</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⚡ To avoid personal injury and any mirror malfunction, do not touch the mirror while it is moving.</li> <li>⚡ Do not drive with the mirrors folded backward. Both the driver and passenger side rear view mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.</li> </ul>

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---

### Outer foot lights



**The outer foot lights illuminate the ground near the doors for about 15 seconds to ensure safe footing for the driver and passengers who are about to get in the vehicle.\***

The outer foot lights come on when:

- 🔑 the doors are unlocked with the wireless remote control key, or
- 🔑 the doors are unlocked with the power door lock switch on the driver's side.

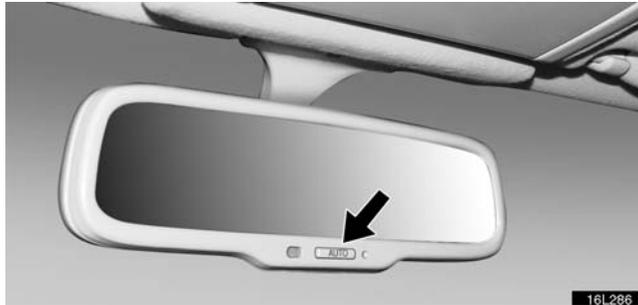
The outer foot lights go off 15 seconds after the lights come on or when:

- 🔑 the doors are locked with the wireless remote control key,
- 🔑 the doors are locked by inserting a key into the door keyhole,
- 🔑 the doors are locked with the power door lock switch on the driver's side, or

- 🔑 the selector lever is moved out of "P" position with the ignition on.

*NOTE: \*The outer foot lights illuminating time can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

## INSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR



**Adjust the mirror so that you can just see the rear of your vehicle in the mirror.**

**Pushing the switch changes the mode between "AUTO" and "DAY".**

The indicator comes on when the "AUTO" mode is selected.

**"DAY" mode: The mirror surface is normal.**

**"AUTO" mode: If the mirror detects light from the headlights of the vehicle behind you, the mirror surface darkens slightly to reduce the reflected light.**

When the inside rear view mirror surface changes, the outside rear view mirror surfaces will also become darker.

When the ignition switch is turned on, the inside rear view mirror always turns on in the "AUTO" mode.

When the outside air temperature is low, it may take a little longer for the mirror to darken in response to the detection of headlights.

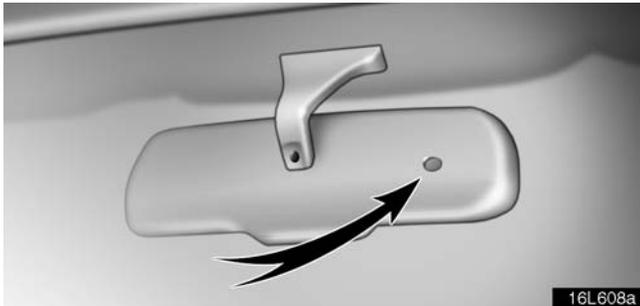


### CAUTION

**Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---



**To ensure correct functioning of an anti-glare mirror sensor located on the back side of the mirror, do not touch or cover the sensor with your finger or a piece of cloth, etc.**

## SEAT BELTS

### Seat belt precautions

Lexus strongly urges that the driver and passengers in the vehicle be properly restrained at all times with the seat belts provided. Failure to do so could increase the chance of injury and/or the severity of injury in accidents.

The seat belts provided for your vehicle are designed for people of adult size, large enough to properly wear them.

**Child.** Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belts. See "Child restraint" on page 151 for details.

If a child is too large for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle's seat belt. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

If a child must sit in the front seat, the seat belts should be worn properly. Do not let the child sit on your lap. It does not provide sufficient restraint. If an accident occurs and the seat belts are not worn properly, the force of the rapid inflation of the airbag may cause severe injury to the child.

Do not allow the child to stand up or kneel on either rear or front seats. An unrestrained child could suffer serious injury or death during emergency braking or a collision.

**Pregnant woman.** Lexus recommends the use of a seat belt. Ask your doctor for specific recommendations. The lap belt should be worn securely and as low as possible over the hips and not on the waist.

**Injured person.** Lexus recommends the use of a seat belt. Depending on the injury, first check with your doctor for specific recommendations.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Persons should ride in their seats properly wearing their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury or death in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

When using the seat belts, observe the following:

- 🔧 Use the belt for only one person at a time. Do not use a single belt for two or more people – even children.
- 🔧 Avoid reclining the seatbacks too much. The seat belts provide maximum protection when the seatbacks are in the upright position. (See "Adjusting seatback angle" on page 111.)
- 🔧 Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. Take care that they do not get caught or pinched in the seat or doors.
- 🔧 Inspect the belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Damaged parts should be replaced. Do not disassemble or modify the system.
- 🔧 Keep the belts clean and dry. If they need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Never use bleach, dye, or abrasive cleaners – they may severely weaken the belts. (See "Cleaning the interior" on page 408 for instructions.)

🔧 Replace the belt assembly (including bolts) if it has been used in a severe impact. The entire assembly should be replaced even if damage is not obvious.

**Front seat belt buckle illumination**

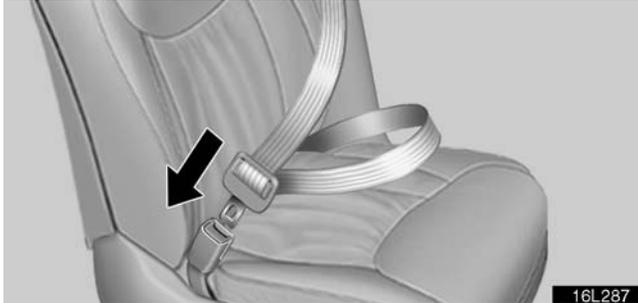


Opening the driver's door lights up the driver's seat belt buckle for easy use. The same applies for the front passenger's door and seat belt buckle.

The light remains on for 15 seconds after the door is closed, but goes off immediately when all doors are locked.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### Fastening front and rear seat belts



**Adjust the seat as needed and sit up straight and well back in the seat. To fasten your belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the tab into the buckle.**

You will hear a click when the tab locks into the buckle.

The seat belt length automatically adjusts to your size and the seat position.

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It also may lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend, and you can move around freely.

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and is then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system securely. (For details, see "Child restraint" on page 151.) To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more.

If the seat belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, firmly pull the belt and release it. You will then be able to smoothly pull the belt out of the retractor.

#### CAUTION

-  **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the belt is not twisted.**
-  **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.**
-  **If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect an adult occupant or your child from injury.**



**Adjust the position of the lap and shoulder belts.**

- 1 Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips – not on your waist.
- 2 Adjust it to a snug fit by pulling the shoulder portion upward through the latch plate.

**CAUTION**

- ⚠ Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended result. Keep the lap belt positioned as low on hips as possible.
- ⚠ For your safety, do not place the shoulder belt under your arm.



**✂ Front seat belts only**

**Adjust the shoulder anchor position to your size.**

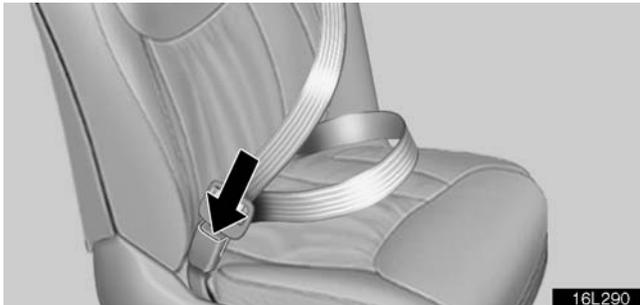
To adjust the shoulder anchor position, press the upper or lower part of the control switch located on the door. When the switch is released, the shoulder anchor will stop at that position.

**CAUTION**

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause severe injuries in a collision.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

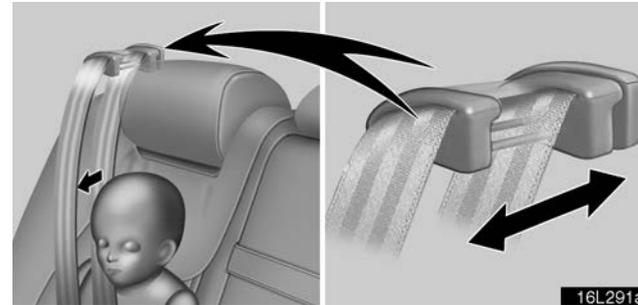
---



**To release the belt, press the buckle release button and allow the belt to retract.**

If the belt does not retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.

### Seat belt comfort guides



**The seat belt comfort guides are installed on the outside rear seats to relieve uncomfortableness from the shoulder belt when it is applied closer to a child's neck (at the age of 10 or so), by pulling the shoulder belt a little forward.**

**Slide the seat belt comfort guide forward to adjust the shoulder belt.**

The seat belt comfort guide should not be in the forward position for other purposes.

 CAUTION

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, and should not fall off the child's shoulder. Failure to observe these precautions could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

**Seat belt extender**

If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

Please contact your local Lexus dealer to order the proper required length for the extender. Bring the heaviest coat you expect to wear for proper measurement and selection of length. Additional ordering information is available at your Lexus dealer.

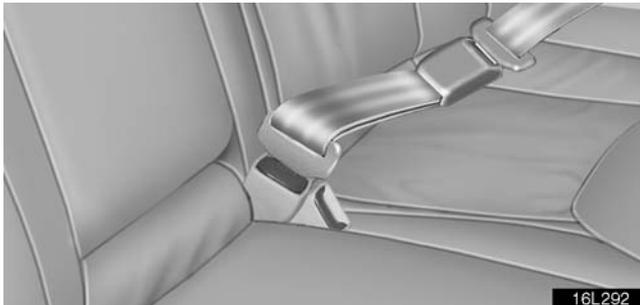
 CAUTION

When using the seat belt extender, observe the following. Failure to follow these instructions could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt restraint system in case of vehicle accident, increasing the chance of personal injury.

-  Never use the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without it.
-  Remember that the extender provided for you may not be safe when used on a different vehicle, for another person, or at a different seating position than the one originally intended.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---



To connect the extender to the seat belt, insert the tab into the seat belt buckle so that the "PRESS" signs on the buckle release buttons of the extender and the seat belt are both facing outward as shown.

You will hear a click when the tab locks into the buckle.

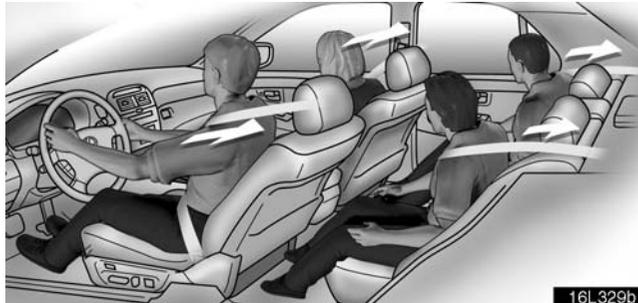
When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt. This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and extender itself.

When not in use, remove the extender and store in the vehicle for future use.

### CAUTION

-  After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the belt is not twisted.
-  Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.
-  If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect an adult occupant or your child from injury.

### Seat belt pretensioners



**The seat belt pretensioners other than that for the rear center belt are designed to be activated in response to a severe frontal impact.**

When the airbag sensor detects the shock of a severe frontal impact, the seat belts are quickly drawn back in by the retractor so that the belts snugly restrain the seat occupants.

The front passenger seat belt pretensioner will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger seat belt pretensioner may activate if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up regardless of the presence of the occupant in the seat.

The outside rear seat belt pretensioners are activated even with no passengers in the outside rear seat.

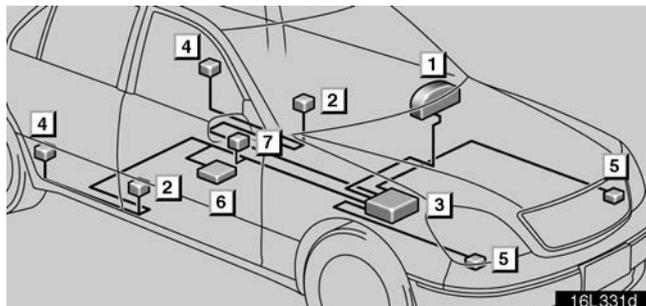
Collisions occurring at certain speeds and angles may cause the seat belt pretensioners and SRS airbags not to operate all together.



**This indicator comes on when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the seat belt pretensioners are operating properly.**

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensors, occupant detection sensor, seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see “Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers” on page 46.)

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



- ✂ 1 **SRS warning light**
- 2 **Front seat belt pretensioner assembly**
- 3 **Airbag sensor assembly**
- 4 **Rear seat belt pretensioner assembly**
- 5 **Front airbag sensors**
- 6 **Occupant detection sensor**
- 7 **Seat belt buckle switch**

The seat belt pretensioner system consists mainly of the above components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

The seat belt pretensioners are controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensor.

When the seat belt pretensioners are activated, an operating noise may be heard and a small amount of smoke-like gas may be released. This gas is harmless and does not indicate that a fire is occurring.

Once the seat belt pretensioners have been activated, the seat belt retractors remain locked.

### CAUTION

Do not modify, remove, strike or open the seat belt pretensioner assemblies, airbag sensor or surrounding area or wiring. Doing any of these may cause sudden operation of the seat belt pretensioners or disable the system, which could result in death or serious injury.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury. Consult your Lexus dealer about any repairs and modifications.

### NOTICE

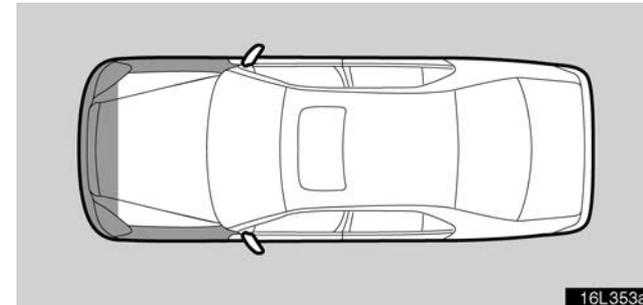
*Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Lexus dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the seat belt pretensioners in some cases.*

-  *Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player.*
-  *Repairs on or near the seat belt retractor assemblies.*
-  *Modification of the suspension system.*
-  *Modification of the front end structure.*
-  *Attachment of a grille guard (bull bar, kangaroo bar, etc.), snowplow, winches or any other equipment to the front end.*
-  *Repairs made on or near the front fenders, front end structure or console.*



This seat belt pretensioner system has a service reminder indicator to inform the driver of operating problems. If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the pretensioners. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- ❖ When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on or flashes.
- ❖ The light flashes while driving.
- ❖ If any seat belt does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the relevant seat belt pretensioner.
- ❖ The seat belt pretensioner assembly or surrounding area has been damaged.



In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- ❖ The front of the vehicle (shaded in the illustration) was involved in an accident that did not cause the seat belt pretensioners to operate.
- ❖ The seat belt pretensioner assembly or surrounding area is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

## SRS AIRBAGS

The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbags are designed to provide further protection for the driver, front and rear outside passengers in addition to the primary safety protection provided by the seat belts.



### ✂ Front airbags

In response to a severe frontal impact, the front airbags work together with the seat belts to help reduce injury by inflating. The front airbags help to reduce injuries mainly to the driver's or front passenger's head or chest directly hitting the steering wheel or dashboard.

The front passenger airbag will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up regardless of the presence of the occupant in the seat.

Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which will record the use of the seat belt restraint system by the driver and passenger when the front airbags are inflated.

Be sure to wear your seat belt properly.

### CAUTION

The driver or front passenger who is too close to the steering wheel or dashboard during airbag deployment can be killed or seriously injured. Lexus strongly recommends that:

-  The driver sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while still maintaining control of the vehicle.
-  The front passenger sit as far back as possible from the dashboard.
-  All vehicle occupants be properly restrained using the available seat belts.



✕ **Side airbags**

**In response to a severe side impact, the side airbags for the driver or front passenger work together with the seat belts to help reduce injury by inflating. The side airbags help to reduce injuries mainly to the driver's or front passenger's chest.**

The side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up regardless of the presence of the occupant in the seat.

Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which will record the use of the seat belt restraint system by the driver and passenger when the side airbags are inflated.

Be sure to wear your seat belt properly.

 **CAUTION**

**The side airbags inflate with considerable force. To avoid potential death or serious injury when they inflate, the driver and front passenger must:**

-  **Wear their seat belts properly.**
-  **Remain properly seated with their back upright and against the seat at all times.**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---



### **✕Curtain shield airbags for front and rear outside occupants**

**In response to a severe side impact, the curtain shield airbag on either side works together with the seat belts by inflating. The curtain shield airbags help to reduce injuries mainly to the driver's head, front passenger's head and rear outside passenger's head.**

The curtain shield airbag is activated even with no passenger in the front seat or rear seat.

Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which will record the use of the seat belt restraint system by the driver and passenger when the curtain shield airbags are inflated.

Be sure to wear your seat belt properly.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

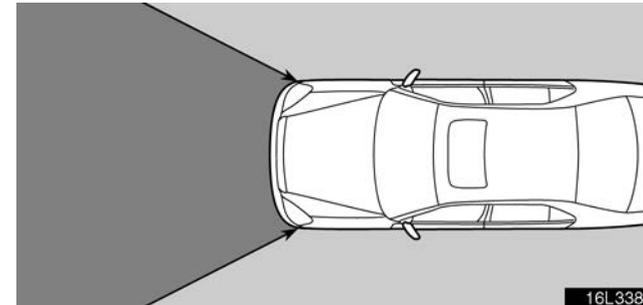
**The curtain shield airbags inflate with considerable force. To avoid potential death or serious injury when they inflate, the driver, front passenger and rear outside passenger must:**

- ⚠ Wear their seat belts properly.**
- ⚠ Remain properly seated with their back upright and against the seat at all times.**



**The indicator comes on when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the SRS airbags are operating properly.**

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensors, occupant detection sensor, seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see "Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers" on page 46.)



**The front airbags are designed to activate in response to a severe frontal impact within the shaded area between the arrows in the illustration.**

The front airbags will work if the severity of the impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 25 km/h (15 mph) collision when impacting straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

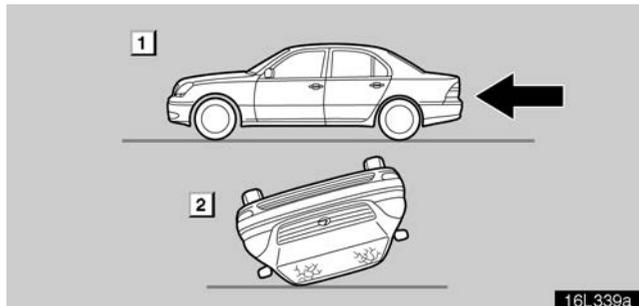
If the severity of the impact is below the above threshold level, the front airbags may not work.

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if it is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the nose of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

It is possible that in some collisions at the lower zone of airbag sensor detection and activation, the SRS airbags and seat belt pretensioners will not operate all together.

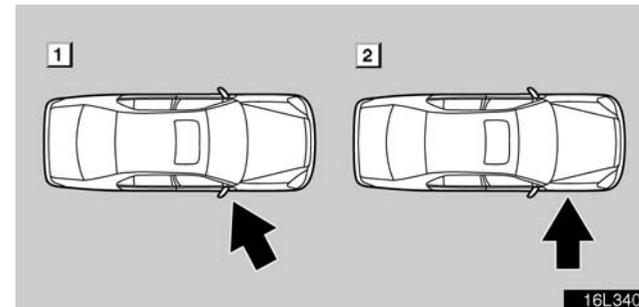
For the safety of all occupants, always wear your seat belts properly.



- ✕ 1 Collision from the rear
- 2 Vehicle rollover

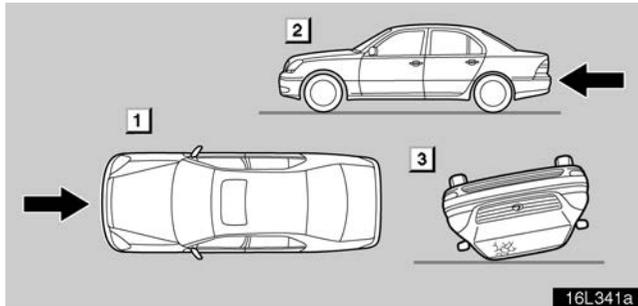
The front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.

The side and curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment area suffers a severe impact from the side.



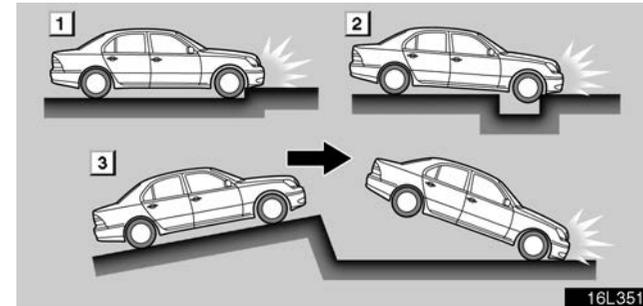
- ✕ 1 Collision from the side at an angle
- 2 Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment

The side and curtain shield airbags may not inflate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment as shown in the illustration.



- ✘ 1 Collision from the front
- ✘ 2 Collision from the rear
- ✘ 3 Vehicle rollover

The side and curtain shield airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a front or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

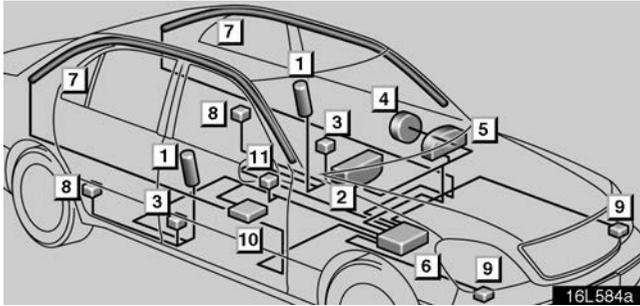


- ✘ 1 Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard material
- ✘ 2 Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- ✘ 3 Landing hard or vehicle falling

The SRS airbags may deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

1

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



- ✕ **1** Side airbag module (airbag and inflator)
- 2** Airbag module for front passenger (airbag and inflator)
- 3** Side and curtain shield airbag sensor assembly
- 4** Airbag module for driver (airbag and inflator)
- 5** SRS warning light
- 6** Airbag sensor assembly
- 7** Curtain shield airbag module (airbag and inflator)
- 8** Curtain shield airbag sensor assembly
- 9** Front airbag sensors
- 10** Occupant detection sensor
- 11** Seat belt buckle switch

The SRS airbag system consists mainly of the above components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensors.

In a severe frontal impact, the front airbag sensors detect deceleration and the system triggers the front airbag inflators. In a severe side impact, the side and curtain shield airbag sensor and/or the curtain shield airbag sensor trigger(s) the side and curtain shield airbag inflators and/or the curtain shield airbag inflator. At this time, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the forward or lateral motion of the occupants.

When the SRS airbags operate, they produce a fairly loud noise and release some smoke and residue along with non-toxic gas. This does not indicate a fire. This gas is normally harmless; however, for those who have delicate skin, it may cause minor skin irritation. Be sure to wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent any potential skin irritation.

Deployment of the airbags happens in a fraction of a second, so the airbags must inflate with considerable force. While the system is designed to reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor burns or abrasions and swelling.

Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, dashboard, front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars and roof side) may be hot for several minutes, but the airbags themselves will not be hot. The airbags are designed to inflate only once.

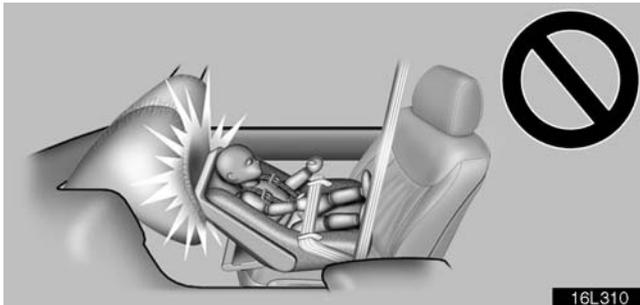
A crash severe enough to inflate the front airbags may break the windshield as the vehicle buckles. In vehicles with a front passenger airbag, the windshield may also be damaged by absorbing some of the force of the inflating airbag.

 **CAUTION**

 The SRS airbag system is designed only as a supplement to the primary protection of the driver side and front and rear outside passenger side seat belt systems. The front and rear outside passenger seat occupants can be killed or seriously injured by the inflating airbags if they do not wear the available seat belts properly. During sudden braking just before a collision, an unrestrained driver or front passenger or rear outside passenger can move forward or sideways into direct contact with or close proximity to the airbag which may then deploy during the collision. To ensure maximum protection in an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. Wearing a seat belt properly during an accident reduces the chances of death or serious injury or being thrown out of the vehicle. For instructions and precautions concerning the seat belt system, see "Seat belts" on page 126.

 Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by the deploying airbags. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seat of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seat is the safest for infants and children. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 151 .

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



**⚠ Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.**



**✂ Move seat fully back**

- ⚠ A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child.**
- ⚠ Do not allow the child to lean against the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, because the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.**

**For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 151.**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



**⚠ Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard when the vehicle is in use, since the front passenger airbag inflates with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, you may be killed or seriously injured. Sit up straight and well back in the seat, and always use your seat belt properly.**



**⚠ Do not lean against the door when the vehicle is in use, since the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, you may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.**

**⚠ Sit up straight and well back in the seat, distributing your weight evenly in the seat. Do not apply excessive weight to the outer side of the front seats on vehicles with side airbags.**

1

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

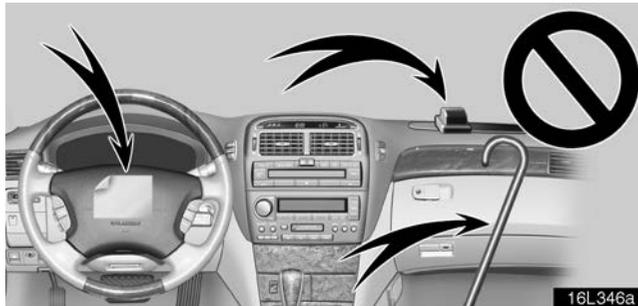


- ⚠ Do not get your head closer to the area where the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, since these airbags inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, you may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.
- ⚠ Do not allow a child to kneel on the passenger seat facing the passenger's side door, since the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.



- ⚠ Do not allow a child to stand up or kneel on the front passenger seat, since the front passenger airbag inflates with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- ⚠ Do not hold a child on your lap or in your arms. Use a child restraint system in the rear seat. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 151.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

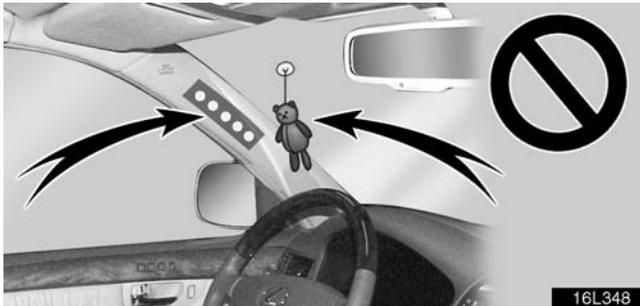


**Do not put objects or your pets on or in front of the dashboard or steering wheel pad that houses the driver and front passenger airbag system. They might restrict inflation or cause death or serious injury as they are projected rearward by the force of the deploying airbags. Likewise, the driver and front passenger should not hold objects in their arms or on their knees.**



**Do not attach a cup holder or any other device or object on or around the door. When the side airbag inflates, the cup holder or any other device or object will be thrown with great force, or the side airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury. Likewise, the driver and front passenger should not hold objects in their arms or on their knees.**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



- Do not attach a microphone or any other device or object around the part where the curtain shield airbag activates such as on the windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars and roof side or assist grips. When the curtain shield airbag inflates, the microphone or other device or object will be hurled with great force or the curtain shield airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not hook a hanger, heavy or sharp pointed objects on the coat hook. If the curtain shield airbag inflates, those items will be hurled away with great force or the curtain shield airbag may not activate correctly. When you hang clothes, hang them on the coat hook directly.

- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the side airbags inflate. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, causing death or serious injury.
  - Do not modify or remove any wiring. Do not modify, remove, strike or open any components, such as the steering wheel pad, steering wheel, column cover, front passenger airbag cover or airbag sensor assembly. Doing so may cause sudden front airbags inflation or disable the system, which could result in death or serious injury.
  - Do not modify or replace the seats or upholstery of front seats with side airbags. Such changes may disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
  - Do not disassemble or repair the front and rear pillars and roof side rail containing the curtain shield airbags. Such changes may disable the system or cause the curtain shield airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury. Consult your Lexus dealer about any repairs and modifications.

**NOTICE**

**Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Lexus dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system in some cases.**

- ⚠ **Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player.**
- ⚠ **Modification of the suspension system.**
- ⚠ **Modification of the front end structure and side structure of the passenger compartment.**
- ⚠ **Attachment of a grille guard (bull bar, kangaroo bar, etc.), snowplow, winches or any other equipment to the front end.**
- ⚠ **Repairs made on or near the front fenders, front end structure, console, steering column, steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or front seats.**



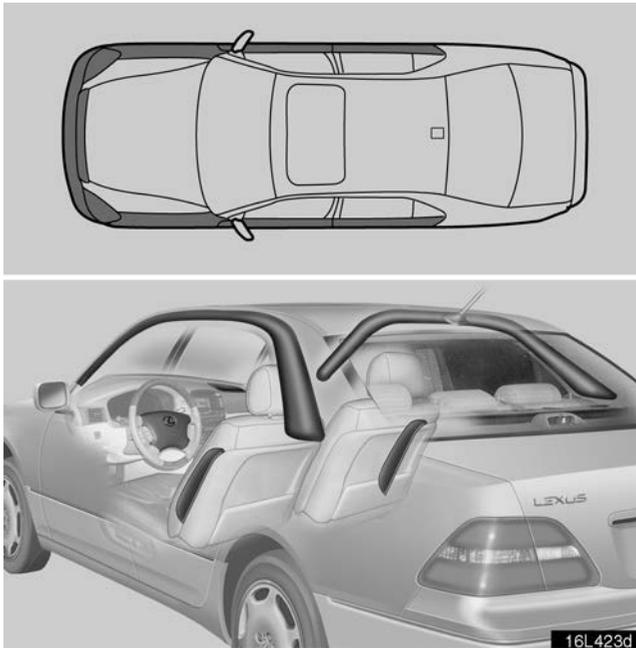
This SRS airbag system has an indicator to inform the driver of operating problems. If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the airbags. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- ⚠ When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on, stays on or flashes.
- ⚠ The light comes on or starts flashing while driving.

If the light stays on, it indicates that the front airbags have a problem. If the light flashes, the side and curtain shield airbags have a problem.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---



- ⚠ The surface of the seats with the side airbags or the pad section of the steering wheel or front passenger airbag cover (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- ⚠ The portion of the front and rear pillars and roof side rail garnish (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible:

- ⚠ Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- ⚠ The front of the vehicle and portion of the doors (shaded in the illustration) were involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.

## CHILD RESTRAINT

### Child restraint precautions

Lexus strongly urges the use of child restraint systems for children small enough to use them.

The laws of all 50 states in the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of a child restraint system.

Your vehicle conforms to SAE J1819.

If a child is too large for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle's seat belt. See "Seat belts" on page 126 for details.

### CAUTION

- ⚠ For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on age and size. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior if you are unrestrained.
- ⚠ Lexus strongly urges use of a proper child restraint system which conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

- ⚠ Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front seat. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the airbag can cause death or serious injury if a rear-facing child restraint system is put on the front seat.
- ⚠ Unless it is unavoidable, do not put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat.
- ⚠ A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- ⚠ Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured.
- ⚠ Do not allow the child to lean against the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, because the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---

### Child restraint system

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt. You must carefully consult the manufacturer's instructions which accompany the child restraint system.

To provide proper restraint, use a child restraint system following the manufacturer's instructions about the appropriate age and size of the child for the restraint system.

Install the child restraint system correctly following the instructions provided by its manufacturer of the system. General directions are also provided under the following illustrations.

The child restraint system should be installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

#### CAUTION

-  **Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front seat. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the airbag can cause death or serious injury if a rear-facing child restraint system is put on the front seat.**
-  **Unless it is unavoidable, do not put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat.**

-  **A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child.**
-  **Do not allow the child to lean against the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, because the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.**
-  **After installing the child restraint system, make sure it is secured in place according to the manufacturer's instructions. If it is not restrained securely, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.**

When not using the child restraint system, keep it secured with the seat belt or place it in the trunk or somewhere other than in the passenger compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

Your vehicle has anchors for securing the top strap of a child restraint system.

For instructions about how to use the anchor bracket, see "Using a top strap" on page 166.

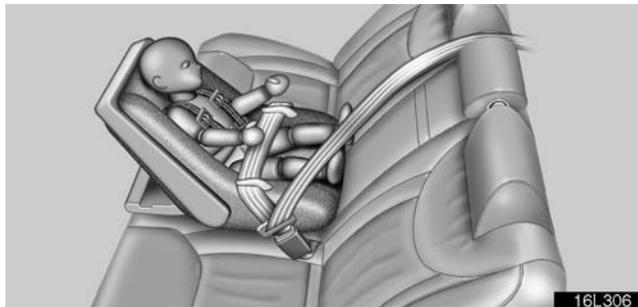
**Types of child restraint system**

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types depending on the child's age and size.

- (A) Infant seat
- (B) Convertible seat
- (C) Booster seat

Install the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.

**(A) Infant seat**



**(B) Convertible seat**



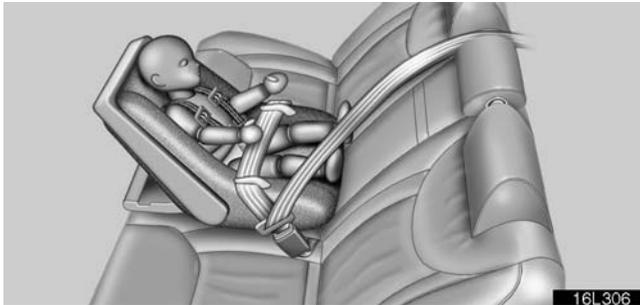
**(C) Booster seat**



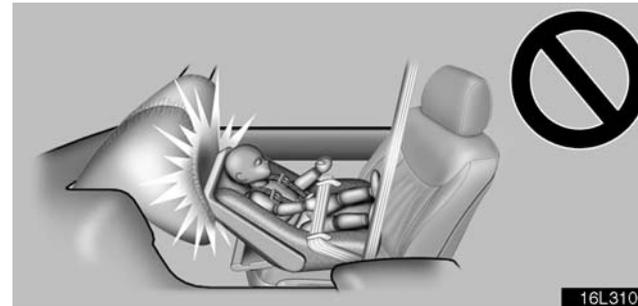
## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### INSTALLATION WITH 3-POINT TYPE SEAT BELT

#### (A) Infant seat installation



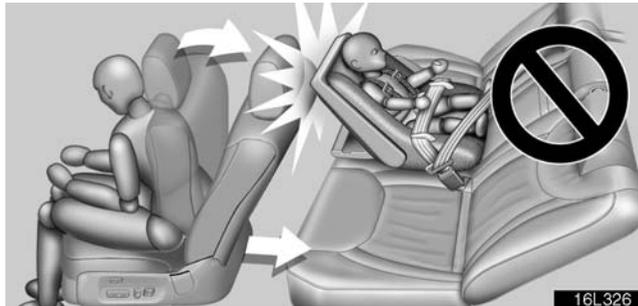
An infant seat is used in rear-facing position only.



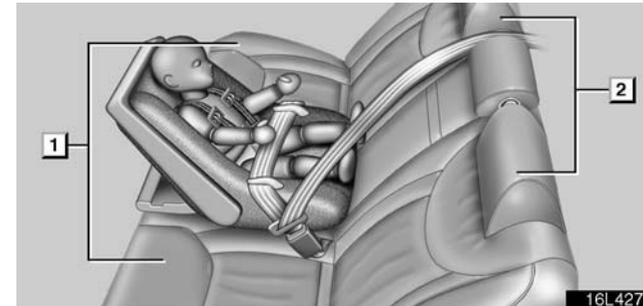
#### CAUTION

 Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



**If the driver's seat position does not allow sufficient space for safe installation, install the child restraint system on the rear right seat.**



- 1 Fix both seats at the same position.
- 2 Fix both seatbacks at the same angle.

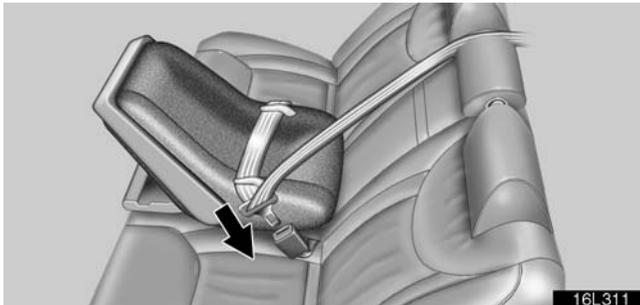
### **CAUTION**

**When installing a child restraint system in the rear center position, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in a collision.**

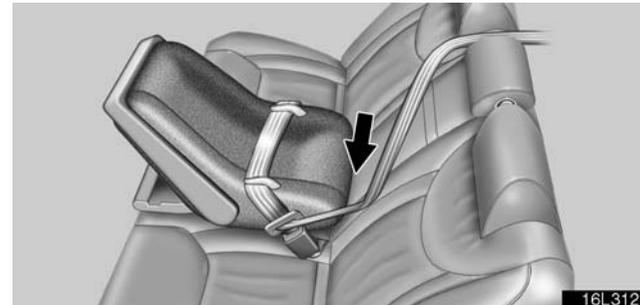
**1**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---



1. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the infant seat following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and inserting the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt. Keep the lap portion of the belt tight.



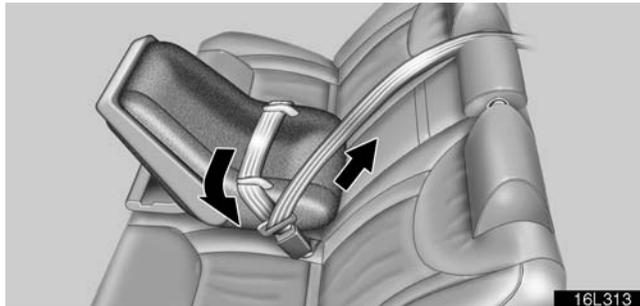
2. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted even slightly, it cannot be extended.

To hold the infant seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.

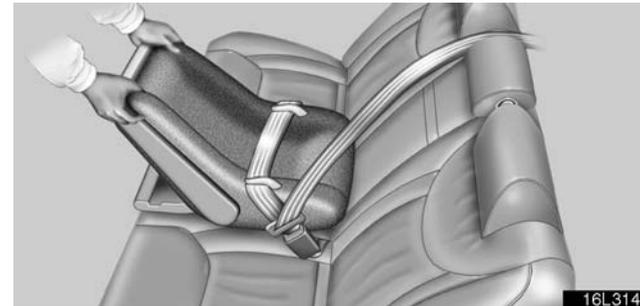
### CAUTION

-  After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.
-  Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.
-  If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the child restraint system until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect your child from injury.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



3. While pressing the infant seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the infant seat securely.



### CAUTION

Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.

1

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---



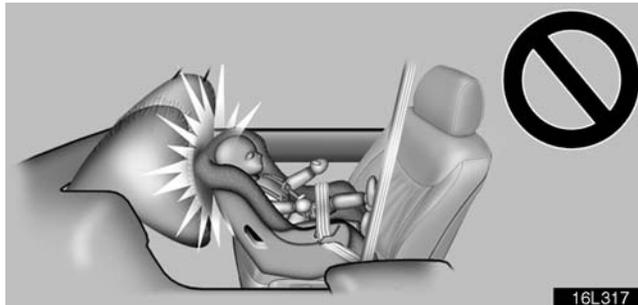
4. To remove the infant seat, press the buckle-release button and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or older child passenger.

### (B) Convertible seat installation



A convertible seat is used in forward-facing or rear-facing position depending on the age and size of the child. When installing, follow the manufacturer's instructions about the appropriate age and size of the child as well as directions for installing the child restraint system.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



### CAUTION

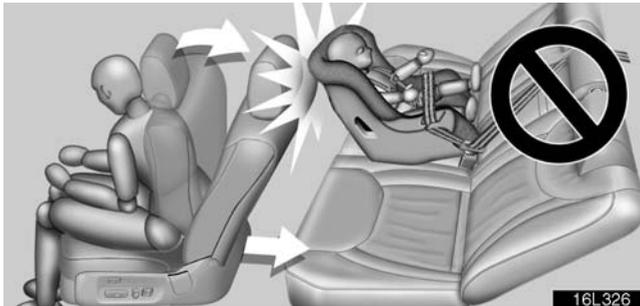
 Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.



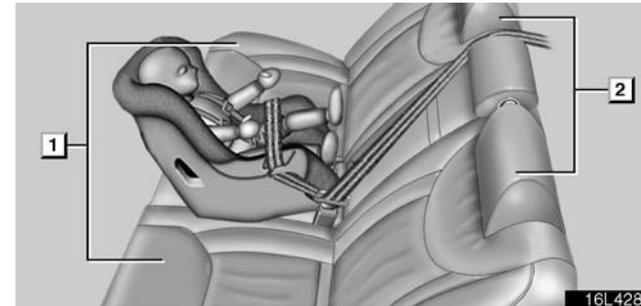
 *Move seat fully back*

-  A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child.
-  Do not allow the child to lean against the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, because the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



**If the driver's seat position does not allow sufficient space for installation, install the child restraint system on the rear right seat.**



- 1 Fix both seats at the same position.
- 2 Fix both seatbacks at the same angle.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

**When installing a child restraint system in the rear center position, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in a collision.**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



1. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the convertible seat following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and inserting the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt. Keep the lap portion of the belt tight.



2. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted slightly, it cannot be extended.

To hold the convertible seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.

### CAUTION

- ⚠ After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.
- ⚠ Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.
- ⚠ If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the child restraint system until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect your child from injury.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---



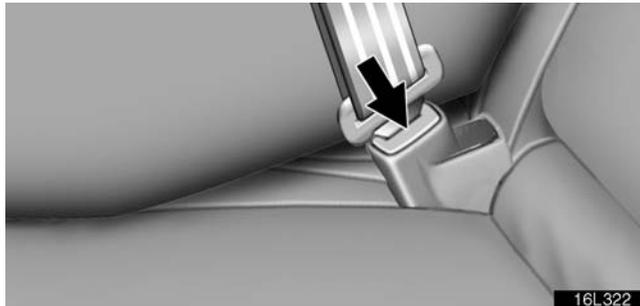
3. While pressing the convertible seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the convertible seat securely.



 **CAUTION**

**Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



4. To remove the convertible seat, press the buckle-release button and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or older child passenger.

### (C) Booster seat installation



A booster seat is used in forward-facing position only.

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



✂ *Move seat fully back*

### CAUTION

- ⚠ **A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child.**
- ⚠ **Do not allow the child to lean against the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, because the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.**



1. Sit the child on a booster seat. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the booster seat and across the child following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and insert the tab into the buckle.

Make sure the shoulder belt is correctly across the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is positioned as low as possible on child's hips. See "Seat belts" on page 126 for details.

### CAUTION

- ⚠ **Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause serious injuries in a collision.**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

- ⚠ Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended result. Keep the lap belt positioned as low on child's hip as possible.
- ⚠ For child's safety, do not place the shoulder belt under child's arm.
- ⚠ After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.
- ⚠ Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent your child from properly latching the tab and buckle.
- ⚠ If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the child restraint system until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect your child from injury.



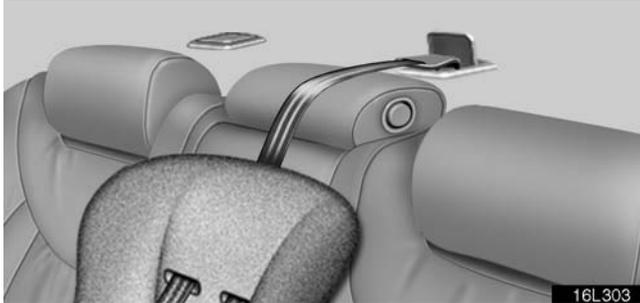
2. To remove the child restraint system, press the buckle-release button and allow the belt to retract.

1

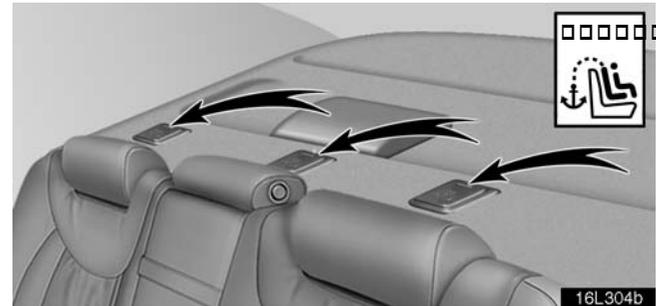
## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---

### Using a top strap



Follow the procedure below for a child restraint system that requires the use of a top strap.

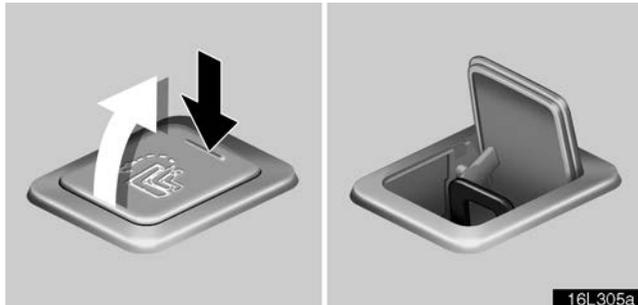


#### ✂ **Anchor brackets**

Use the anchor bracket on the package tray behind the rear seat to attach the top strap.

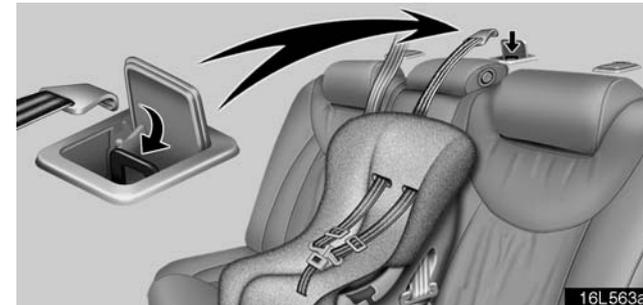
Anchor brackets are installed for each rear seating position.

This symbol indicates the locations of user ready anchor bracket.



**TO USE THE ANCHOR BRACKET**

1. Push the lid of the anchor bracket to open it.



2. Fix the child restraint system with the seat belt.
3. Latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

For instructions to install the child restraint system, see “Type of child restraint system” on page 153.

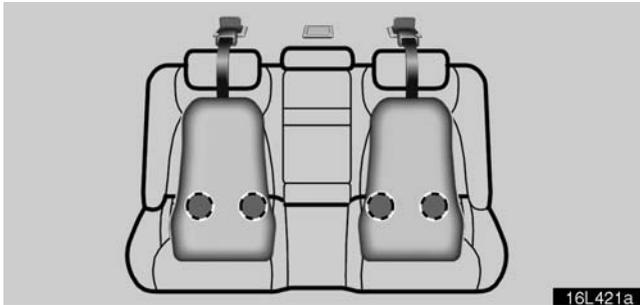
When the child restraint is not in use, make sure the head restraint is mounted.

**1**

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions.</b></li> <li> <b>Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.</b></li> </ul>

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

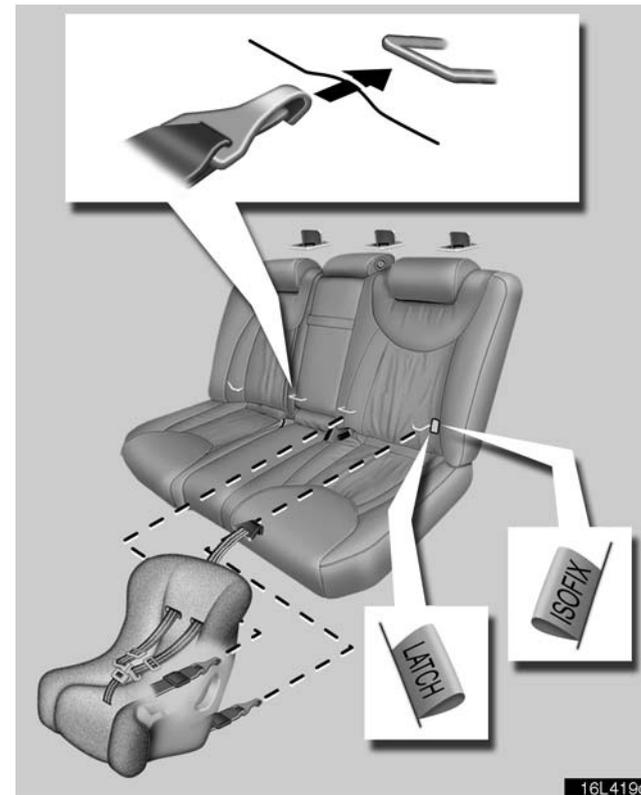
### Installation with child restraint lower anchorages



The lower anchorages for the child restraint system interfaced with the FMVSS225 specification are installed in the rear seat.

The anchorages are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback of both outside rear seats.

Child restraint system interfaced with the FMVSS225 specification can be fixed with these anchorages. In this case, it is not necessary to fix the child restraint system with a seat belt on the vehicle.



✂ **Type A**



## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### CAUTION

- ⚠ **When using the lower anchorages for the child restraint system, be sure that there are no irregular objects around the anchorages or that the seat belt is not caught.**
- ⚠ **Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.**

## DRIVING POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM

A microcomputer will memorize the position of the driver's seat, the height of the head restraint of the driver's seat, the seat cushion length of the driver's seat, the height of the shoulder belt anchor of the driver's seat belt, and the positions of the tilt and telescopic steering, and outside rear view mirrors. Three different driving position profiles can be entered into the computer's memory.

Recording a driving position in the computer's memory can only be done when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position and the selector lever is in the "N" or "P" position.

### Setting the driving position



**1. Adjust the driver's seat, driver's head restraint height and seat cushion length, driver's shoulder belt anchor, tilt and telescopic steering and outside rear view mirrors to the desired position.**

**2. While pushing the "SET" button, push button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.**

The beep sound means that the positions are recorded in the computer's memory.

By repeating these two steps and pressing the remaining button, the driving position for another driver can be recorded.

To set a new memorized position, select the desired position and perform step 2. The previous memory will be erased and the new position will be set.

To make only slight changes to an already memorized position, the easiest way is to first activate the memorized position, then make the desired changes and perform step 2 above.

### Recalling the memorized position



**When you push button "1", "2" or "3", the driving position will be automatically adjusted to the position recorded for that button.**

**1**

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

### Conditions for memorized position activation

- ⚠ Ignition switch "ON" and selector lever in "N" or "P" position with the vehicle stopped.  
All parts of the memorized positions can be activated.
- ⚠ Ignition switch off and within 30 seconds of opening driver's door.  
The memorized position can be activated, except for the tilt and telescopic steering.

If any driving position memory switch is pushed while one of the memorized driving position profiles is being activated, the operation will stop.

To activate the system, push the desired button ("1", "2" or "3") again.

The driving position memory control system cannot be operated while the vehicle is moving.



### CAUTION

- ⚠ **Do not start the vehicle while the adjustments are being made.**
- ⚠ **Take care not to select the wrong button, or the seat could strike the rear passenger or hit your body against the steering wheel. If this happens, you can stop the movement by pressing another driving position memory switch.**

## REAR SEAT POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM

A microcomputer will memorize the position of the rear seats and the height of the rear head restraints.

Recording the rear seat position in the computer's memory can only be done when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

### Setting the rear seat position



**1. Adjust the rear seat position and the height of the head restraint of the rear seat to the desired position.**

**2. Keep pushing the "SET" button until a beep sounds.**

The beep sound means that the position has been memorized. The memory will be erased when the battery is removed for inspection or service.

### Recalling the memorized position



**Keep pressing the “M” button until a beep sounds; the rear seat and rear head restraint positions will be automatically adjusted to the memorized position.**

If the “M” switch is pushed while the memorized position profile is being activated, the operation will stop.

Do not place anything under the rear seat as this might interfere with seat movement.

### Door opening linked seat sliding function

**The rear seat automatically moves backward when the rear door is opened if the seat is adjusted to a forward position.**

The ignition switch must be in the “ON” position.

This function is actuated when the selector lever is set in the “P” position or if the vehicle is stopped with the brake pedal depressed.

While the seat is being moved by this function, the operation will not stop even if the door is closed midway.



**To cancel this function, push the “C” button.**

The indicator light comes on.

1

## COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

---

To reactivate the function once again, push the “C” button.

The indicator light goes off.

# **SECTION 1-7**

---

## **INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS**

### **Theft deterrent**

Theft deterrent system .....	176
Theft prevention labels .....	178



## THEFT DETERRENT

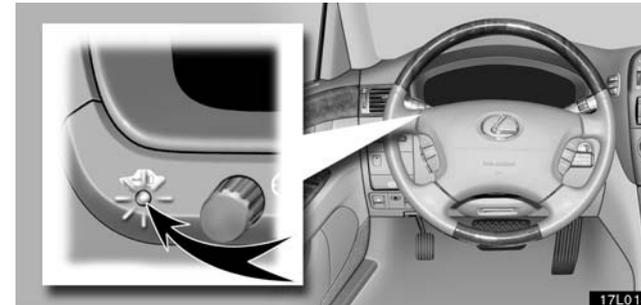
### THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM



To deter theft of the vehicle, this system is designed to sound an alarm if any of the doors, trunk or hood is forcibly unlocked or opened or the battery terminal is disconnected and then reconnected while the vehicle is locked.

The alarm blows the horn intermittently, flashes the headlights, tail lights, turn signal lights and other exterior lights, and illuminates the interior lights.

After the alarm is activated, when you unlock any door or the trunk using an ignition key or wireless remote control, the tail lights turn on for about 2 seconds to inform you that the system was activated.



✕ *Security indicator light*

#### Setting the system

**1. Turn the ignition key to the "LOCK" position and remove it.**

The engine immobiliser system causes the indicator light to flash.

**2. Close and lock all the doors, trunk and hood using an ignition key or wireless remote control.**

If you lock them with the wireless remote control, the turn signals flash once.\*

*NOTE: \*The turn signals can be set not to flash. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

The flashing indicator light will remain on when all the doors, trunk and hood are closed and locked.

**3. After 30 seconds, the indicator flashes and the system is set.**

### Cancelling the system

**When you unlock any door using an ignition key or wireless remote control, the system is cancelled.**

If you unlock any door with the wireless remote control, the turn signals flash twice.\*

*NOTE: \*The turn signals can be set not to flash. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

### Activating the system

The alarm sounds for 60 seconds if any of the following are operated:

- 🔑 Unlocking any door or trunk without using an ignition key or wireless remote control.
- 🔑 Opening the hood forcibly.
- 🔑 Reconnecting the battery.

If any door is unlocked and the ignition key is not in the ignition switch during the alarm sounding, its door is automatically locked.

**To stop the alarm:** Use either of the following methods.

- 🔑 Unlock the door or trunk using an ignition key or wireless remote control.
- 🔑 Turn the ignition switch on.

### Testing the system

1. Open all the windows.
2. Set the system as described above.

The doors should be locked with the ignition key or wireless remote control. Be sure to wait until the indicator light starts flashing.

3. Unlock one of the doors from the inside through one of the opened windows.

The system should activate the alarm.

4. Unlock any of the doors with a key or the wireless remote control to cancel the system.

5. Repeat this operation for the other doors, trunk and hood.

When testing the hood, also check that the system is activated when the battery terminal is disconnected and then reconnected.

If the system does not work properly, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

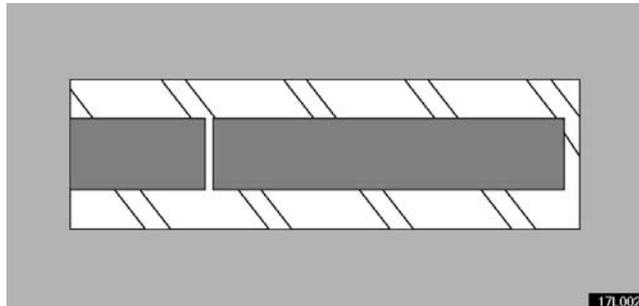
#### **NOTICE**

***When disconnecting the battery, be sure to cancel the theft deterrent system. Otherwise, the system could activate an alarm and lock the unlocked door(s) automatically.***

## THEFT DETERRENT

---

### THEFT PREVENTION LABELS (U.S.A. ONLY)



**Your new vehicle carries theft prevention labels which are approximately 56 mm (2.20 in.) by 16 mm (0.63 in.).**

The purpose of these labels is to reduce the incidence of vehicle thefts by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. The label is designed so that once it is applied to a surface, any attempt to remove it will result in destroying the integrity of the label. Transferring these labels intact from one part to another will be impossible.

#### **NOTICE**

***You should not attempt to remove the theft prevention labels as it may violate certain state or federal laws.***

## SECTION 2-1

---

### AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO

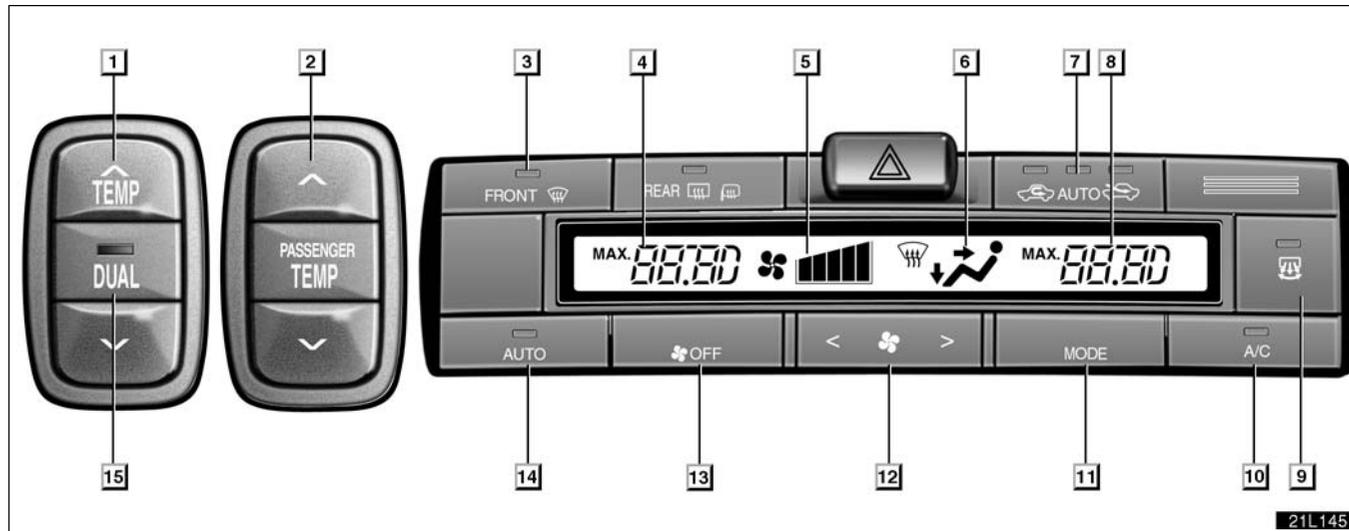
#### Air conditioning

Automatic air conditioning controls (Without rear air conditioning and air purifier) .....	180
Automatic air conditioning controls (With rear air conditioning and air purifier) .....	182
Rear air conditioning controls .....	196

***For vehicles equipped with Navigation System, please refer to the separate “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.***

## AIR CONDITIONING

### AUTOMATIC AIR CONDITIONING CONTROLS (Without Rear Air Conditioning and Air Purifier)



✂The automatic air conditioning automatically maintains the set temperature.

This air conditioning features automatic fan speed and air flow control which automatically selects the most suitable fan speed and air flow to control the temperature. The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

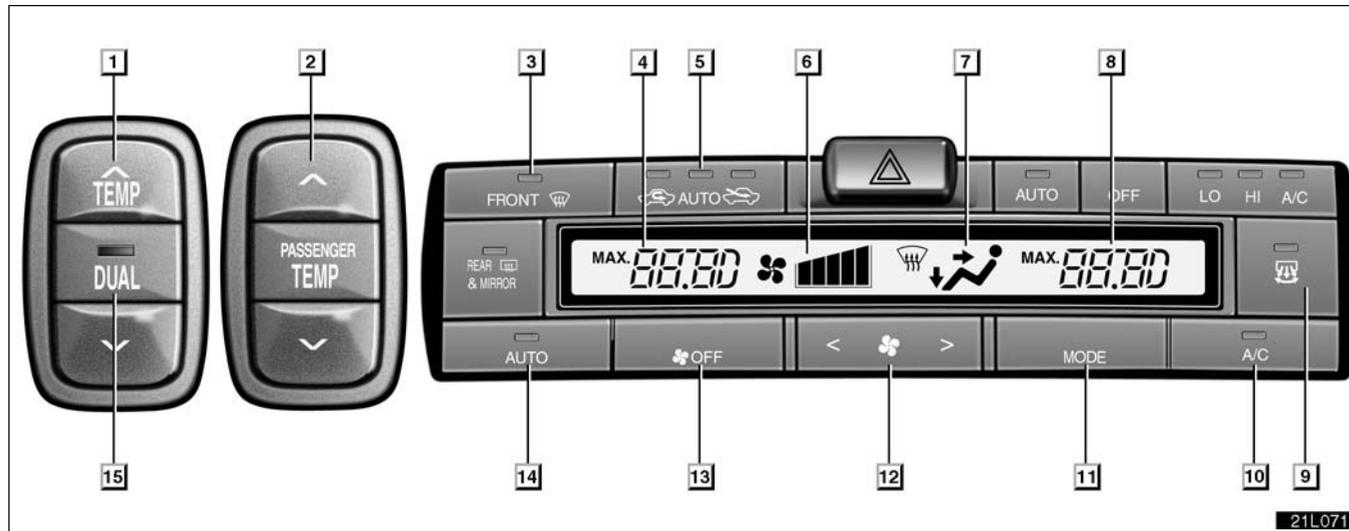
#### NOTICE

**To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the air conditioning on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.**

- 1** *Temperature selector*  
*(with the "DUAL" button on; for driver and rear passengers)*  
*(with the "DUAL" button off; for driver and all passengers)*
- 2** *Passenger side temperature control button*
- 3** *Front windshield button*
- 4** *Driver side temperature display*  
*(in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)*
- 5** *Fan speed display*
- 6** *Air flow display*
- 7** *Air intake control button*
- 8** *Passenger side temperature display*  
*(in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)*
- 9** *Center vent vane swing button*
- 10** *Air conditioning on-off button*
- 11** *Air flow control button*
- 12** *Fan speed control button*
- 13** *OFF button*
- 14** *Automatic control button*
- 15** *Separate/dual control button*

## AIR CONDITIONING

### AUTOMATIC AIR CONDITIONING CONTROLS (With Rear Air Conditioning and Air Purifier)



✂ The automatic air conditioning automatically maintains the set temperature.

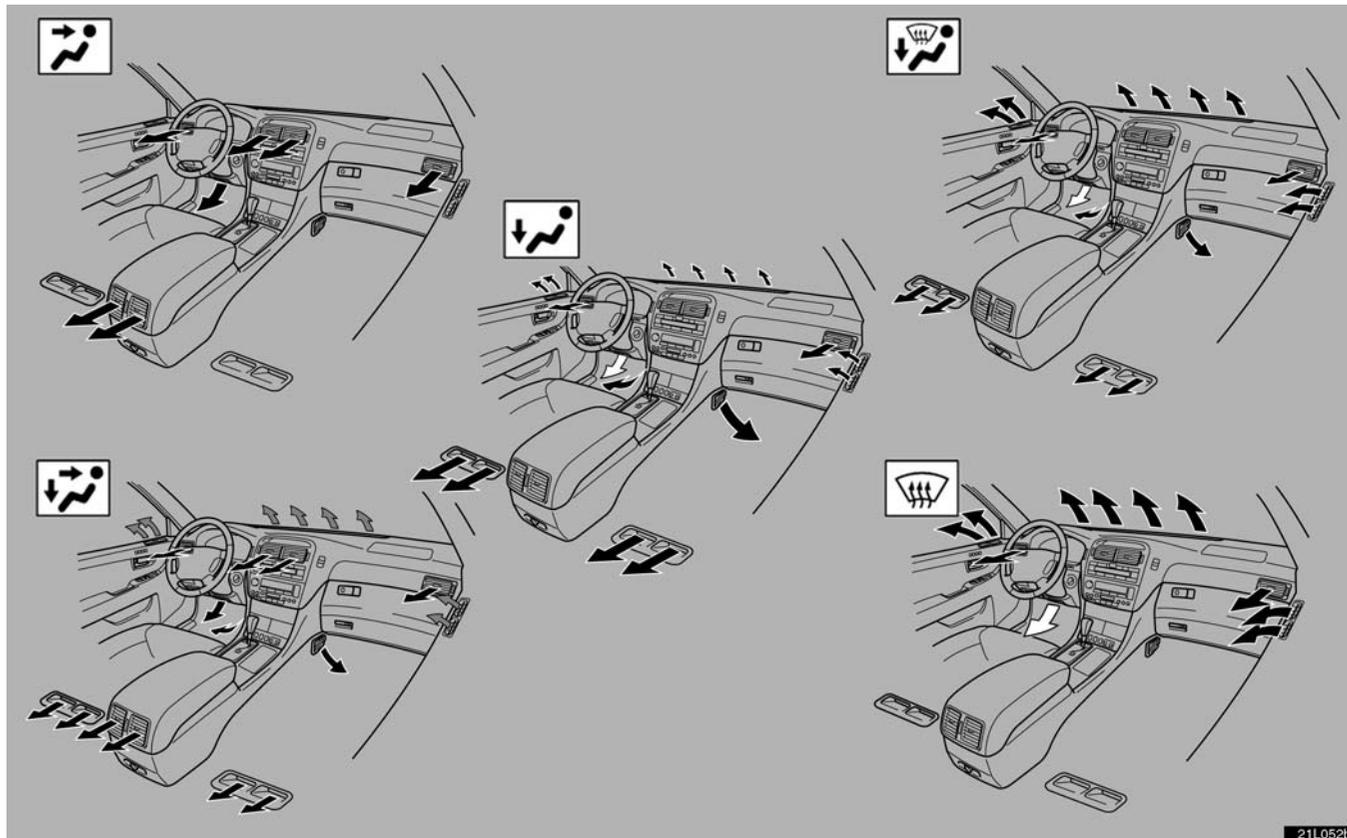
This air conditioning features automatic fan speed and air flow control which automatically selects the most suitable fan speed and air flow to control the temperature. The ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.

#### NOTICE

**To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the air conditioning on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.**

- 1** *Temperature selector*  
*(with the "DUAL" button on; for driver and rear passengers)*  
*(with the "DUAL" button off; for driver and all passengers)*
- 2** *Passenger side temperature control button*
- 3** *Front windshield button*
- 4** *Driver side temperature display*  
*(in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)*
- 5** *Air intake control button*
- 6** *Fan speed display*
- 7** *Air flow display*
- 8** *Passenger side temperature display*  
*(in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)*
- 9** *Center vent vane swing button*
- 10** *Air conditioning on-off button*
- 11** *Air flow control button*
- 12** *Fan speed control button*
- 13** *OFF button*
- 14** *Automatic control button*
- 15** *Separate/dual control button*

## AIR CONDITIONING



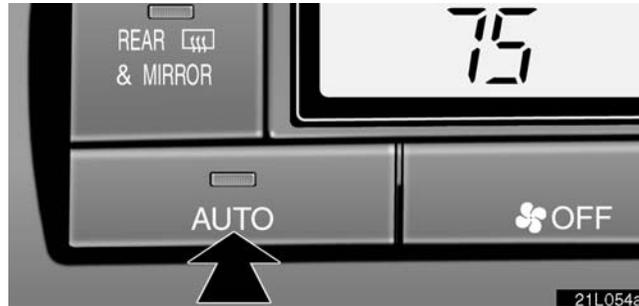
✂ Air flow selection

➡ Automatic air flow mode only

⇨ See "Lower vent" on page 195.

**(a) Climate control**

**SETTING OPERATION – automatic control**



**1. Push the "AUTO" button.**

Air flow quantity, switching of the diffusers, on-off of the air conditioning, and switching of the air intake between RECIRCULATED AIR and OUTSIDE AIR are automatically adjusted. If you use the air purifier automatic mode at the same time, air purifying effect will be enhanced (If equipped). The operation status is shown by each indicator.

When one of the manual control buttons is depressed while operating in automatic mode, the mode relevant to the depressed button is set. Other conditions continue to be adjusted automatically.

It is recommended that you close the lower vent. For details about this, see page 195.

Push the "OFF" button briefly to turn the air conditioning off. If you keep the "OFF" button pushed, the data for the air filter is reset.



**2. Use the "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" button to set the desired temperature.**

The "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" button is used to set the desired temperature. The temperature will be controlled on the driver and front and rear passenger sides (if rear air conditioning is equipped) simultaneously or individually. The figures on the panel indicate degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade.

**"TEMP" button** – Changes the temperature on the driver and front and rear passenger sides (if rear air conditioning is equipped) simultaneously or individually.

**"PASSENGER TEMP" button** – Changes the temperature on the passenger side only.

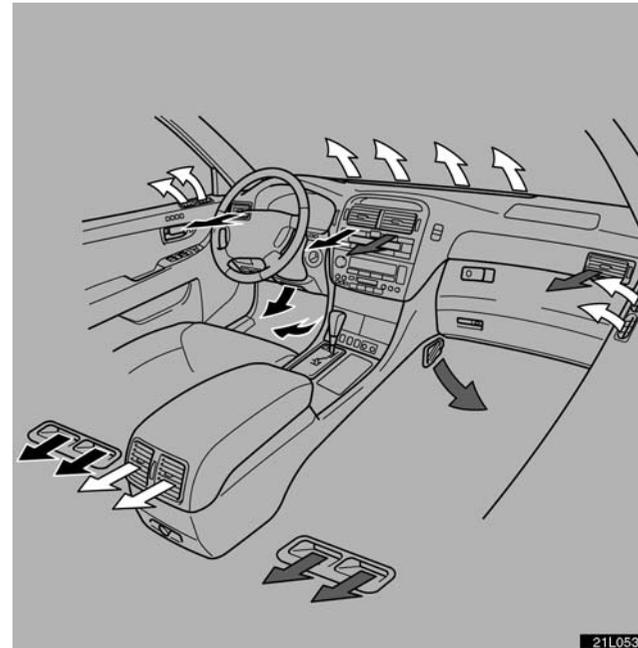
**"DUAL" button** – Changes the mode of the temperature setting.

## AIR CONDITIONING

---

The indicator on the "DUAL" button has two modes:

- 🔊 **With the indicator on** – For individual temperature setting
- 🔊 **With the indicator off** – For simultaneous temperature setting

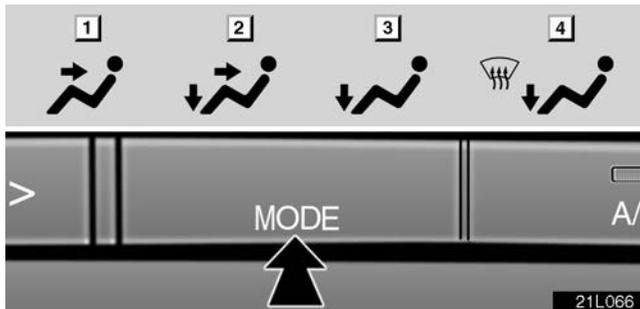


- ➔ Driver side setting
- ➔ Passenger side setting
- ➔ Mixed setting

**SETTING OPERATION – manual control**

When one of the manual control buttons is depressed while operating in automatic mode, the mode relevant to the depressed button is set. Other conditions continue to be adjusted automatically.

If manual air flow selection is desired –



The outlets from which air is delivered can be selected manually by pushing the button. The function of each mode is as follows:

- 1 **Panel** – Air flows mainly from the instrument panel vents.
- 2 **Bi-level** – Air flows from both the floor vents and the instrument panel vents.
- 3 **Floor** – Air flows mainly from the floor vents.

It is recommended that you close the lower vent. For details about this, see page 195.

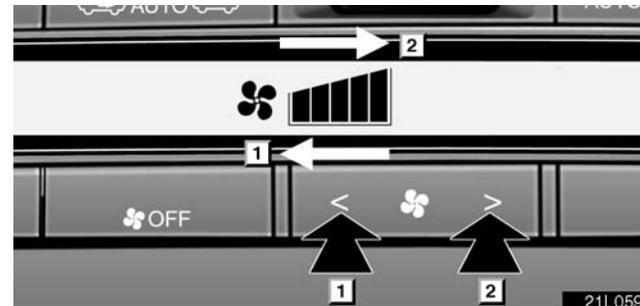
- 4 **Floor/Windshield** – Air flows mainly from the floor vents and windshield vents.

It is recommended that you close the lower vent. For details about this, see page 195.

If quick heating or cooling is desired –

Push the "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" button on either side and hold it until "MAX. HOT" or "MAX. COLD" appears on the display.

If manual fan speed control is desired –



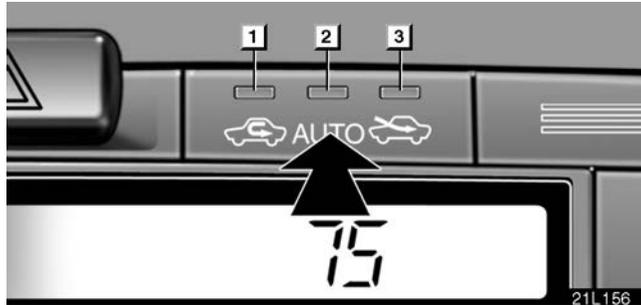
✕ 1 **Fan speed at low** 2 **Fan speed at high**

The fan speed can be set to your desired speed by pushing the appropriate side of fan speed control button. The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered. Pushing the "OFF" button briefly turns off the fan.

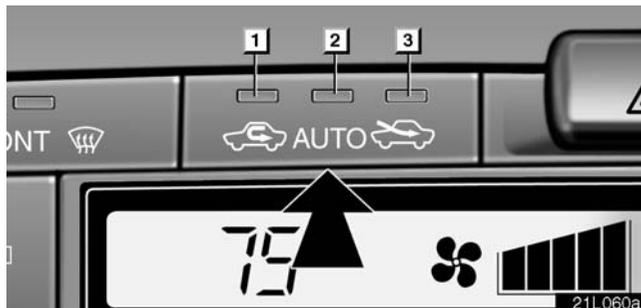
To remove exterior windshield frost, use the high speed setting.

## AIR CONDITIONING

If manual switching of air intake is desired –



✗ Without rear air conditioning and air purifier



✗ With rear air conditioning and air purifier

Each time you push the air intake control button, the mode changes in order from the RECIRCULATED AIR mode to AUTOMATIC mode to OUTSIDE AIR mode, then back to the RECIRCULATED AIR mode. Each indicator light shows which mode is now selected.

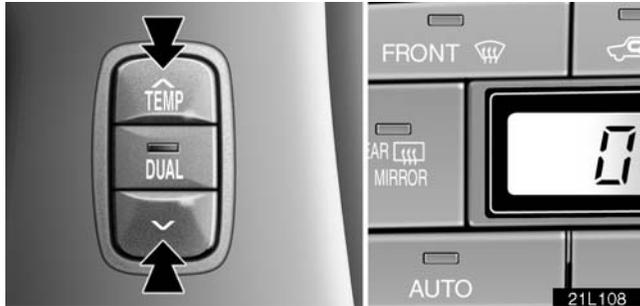
- 1 RECIRCULATED mode** – If quick circulation of cooled air is desired, select this mode.
- 2 EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode** – If the outside air contains harmful substances like exhaust gas (i.e., when the vehicle running just in front of your vehicle accelerates rapidly), the system changes automatically from the OUTSIDE AIR mode (with indicators **2** and **3** on) to the RECIRCULATED mode (with indicators **1** and **2** on). If you use the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode and the air purifier automatic mode at the same time, air purifying effect will be enhanced (If equipped).
- 3 OUTSIDE AIR mode** – The system will take fresh outside air into the vehicle.

Turning off the air conditioning manually will cancel the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode. If you select the “AUTO” mode during fan operating, the air conditioning turns on and the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode will operate.

For normal use, it is best to keep the air intake control button set to OUTSIDE AIR mode. If recirculated air is used during heating, the windows will fog up more easily.

**To change the sensitivity of the sensor switching between the RECIRCULATED and OUTSIDE AIR in the AUTOMATIC mode, push the air intake control button until you hear a beep. The display changes as illustrated below.**

The sensitivity of the sensor can be adjusted only while the vehicle has stopped.



When you push either side of the "TEMP" button several times, the sensitivity changes from "+3" down to "-3". If you do not operate any button for a few seconds, the previous display returns.

### **If manual on-off of the air conditioning is desired –**

Push the "A/C" button to turn the air conditioning on and push it again to turn the air conditioning off. If you turn off the air conditioning manually, the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode will be cancelled.

If the outside temperature is lowered down to around 0°C (32°F), the air conditioning will turn off automatically. At this time, the indicator on the A/C button is off and the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC indicator light remains on. However, the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode does not operate. When the air conditioning turns on as with the raised temperature, the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode resumes.

If the system is used for ventilation, heating in dry weather or removing frost or exterior fog on the windshield, turn the air conditioning off once it is no longer required. This will improve fuel economy. The air conditioning can be used for year-round automatic temperature control including cooling and dehumidifying operation.

If the air conditioning compressor does not operate, the indicator of the "A/C" button will blink. If the indicator of the "A/C" button blinks even when the "A/C" button is pushed again, have the compressor checked by your nearest Lexus dealer.

## AIR CONDITIONING

### (b) Windshield defogging and defrosting



#### To remove interior fog on the windshield –

Push the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button.

#### To remove frost or exterior fog on the windshield –

1. Place the temperature control button at the maximum temperature.
2. Push the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button.
3. Push the fan speed control button on the right side to obtain a maximum air flow.

For further information for removing frost and fog, see "Lower vent" on page 195.

When the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button is pushed while operating in automatic mode, the air conditioning is set to operate and the OUTSIDE AIR mode is set.

If you push the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button once again while in the FRONT WINDSHIELD mode, the mode then returns to the last mode used.

#### CAUTION

**Do not use the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button during cooled air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up blocking your vision.**

When you turn the ignition switch on after the removal and installation of the battery terminal, the indicator light may flash and the operating sound of the motor may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

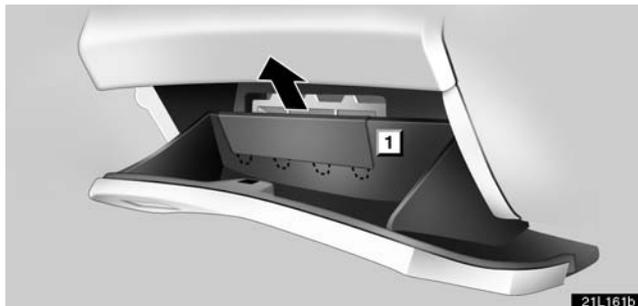
You may hear the operating sound of the motor about 70 seconds after the ignition switch is turned off. This is not also a malfunction.

**(c) Air conditioning filter**

If the “CHANGE A/C FILTER” appears on the multi-information display, change the air conditioning filter as soon as possible because the filter might have clogged.

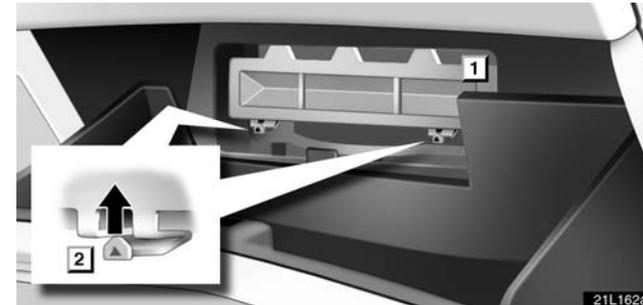
The filter may clog after long use which will reduce the air flow.

**1. When you replace the filter, be sure to turn off the fan.**



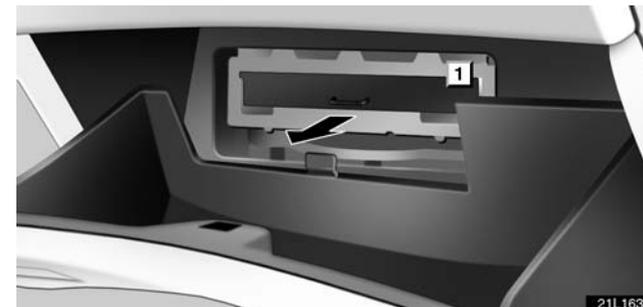
✂ **1** Cover

**2. Open the glove box and remove the cover.**



✂ **1** Filter cover **2** Levers

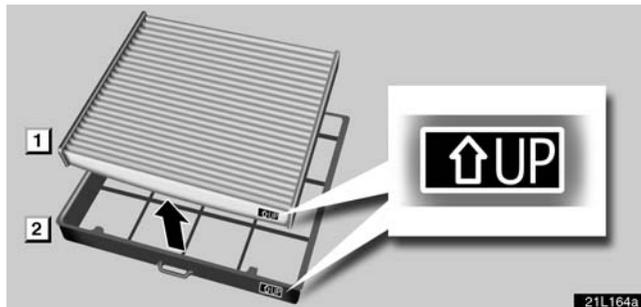
**3. Push up the levers and remove the filter cover.**



✂ **1** Filter case

**4. Pull the filter case toward you.**

## AIR CONDITIONING



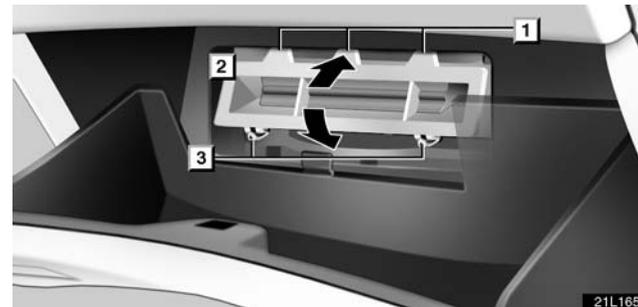
✂ 1 Filter 2 Filter case

5. Take the filter out of the filter case and replace it with a new one.

### NOTICE

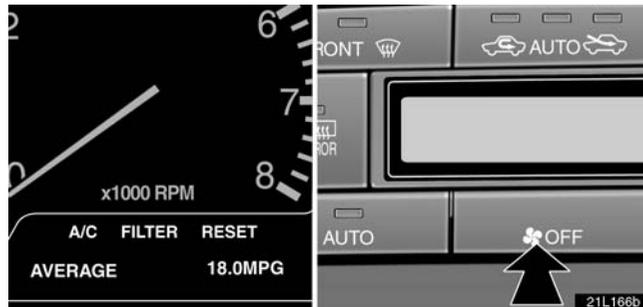
*When installing, the UP marks shown on the filter and filter case should be noted and fitted as shown.*

6. Install it in the reverse order of removal.



✂ 1 Tabs 2 Filter cover 3 Levers

7. When installing the filter cover, insert the 3 upper tabs and then 2 lower levers.



8. After the replacement, push and hold the “OFF” button for the front air conditioning for more than 4 seconds to reset the air filter clogging data. The “A/C FILTER RESET” appears on the multi-information display and a tone sounds to inform you that the data has been reset.

**NOTICE**

*The filter should be installed properly in position. The use of air conditioning with the filter removed may cause the malfunction of the air conditioning system.*

**(d) Operating tips**

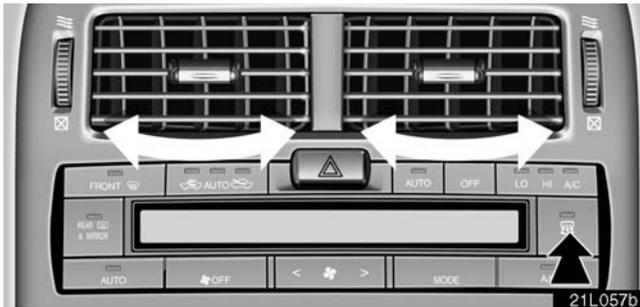
- ☞ Make sure the air inlet grilles in front of the windshield are not blocked by leaves or other obstructions.
- ☞ If air flow control is not satisfactory, check the dashboard vents. (See “Center vents”, “Side vents”, “Lower vent” and “Rear vents”.)
- ☞ To help cool down the interior after parking in the hot sun, drive for the first few minutes with the windows open. After the excess heat has blown away, close the windows.
- ☞ When driving on dusty roads, close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake control button be left to the OUTSIDE AIR mode and the fan speed control button be pressed to anywhere except the “OFF” button.
- ☞ If following another vehicle on a dusty road, or driving in windy and dusty conditions, it is recommended that the air intake control button be temporarily pressed in to the RECIRCULATED AIR mode, which will close off the outside passage and prevent outside air and dust from entering the vehicle interior.

## AIR CONDITIONING

### Center vents



The center vents may be opened or closed as shown.



Push the swing button to swing the vanes.

The vanes directly aimed at the driver and front passenger will swing wider as the room temperature nears the desired temperature. The swinging angle will also change from narrow to wide depending on the room temperature.



When you push the swing button with no passenger in the front seat and the “DUAL” button ON (with the indicator on):

The vanes directly aimed at the driver and rear passenger will swing wider as the room temperature nears the desired temperature. The swinging angle will also change from narrow to wide depending on the room temperature.

When you push the swing button with no passenger on the front seat and “DUAL” button OFF (with the indicator off):

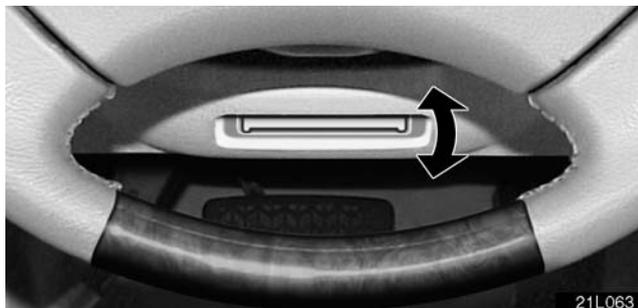
The vanes directly aimed at the driver will swing wider as the room temperature nears the desired temperature. The swinging angle will also change from narrow to wide depending on the room temperature.

**Side vents**



The side vents may be opened or closed as shown.

**Lower vent**



The lower vent may be opened or closed as shown.

For removing frost or fog, it is recommended that you close the lower vent when you push the “FRONT WINDSHIELD” button, or use the “Floor” or the “Floor/Windshield” mode.

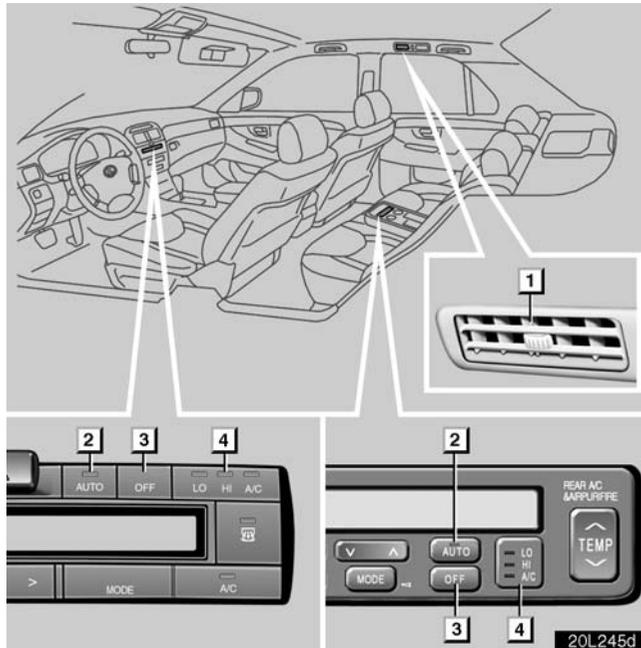
**Rear vents**



The rear vents may be opened or closed as shown.

## AIR CONDITIONING

### REAR AIR CONDITIONING CONTROLS



- ✕ 1 Rear air vent 2 Auto button 3 Off button  
4 LO HI A/C button

These are the controls added to the front air conditioning when your vehicle is equipped with a rear air conditioning. The controls for the rear passengers and for the front passengers both work the same, so operation can be made with the controls on either panel.

#### (a) Controls and Functions

##### REAR AIR CONDITIONING ON-OFF –

Push the "AUTO" button to turn the air conditioning on, and push the "OFF" button to turn it off.

##### AIR FLOW CONTROL –

The mode changes every time the "LO HI A/C" button is pushed.

**AUTO mode** – Turns the fan operation to automatic.

**LO speed mode** – Turns the fan at low speed.

**HI speed mode** – Turns the fan at high speed.

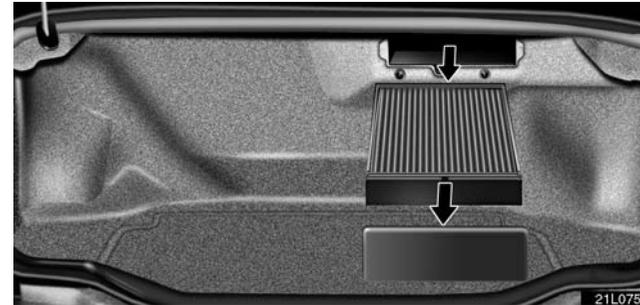
**(b) Rear Cooling**

1. Turn the front air conditioning on. The rear cooler will not turn on if the front air conditioning is off.
2. Turn the rear air conditioning on. The fan speed and rear cooler are adjusted automatically.
3. Use either of the “LO HI A/C” buttons to adjust the desired fan speed and the rear cooler. Each indicator light shows which mode is now selected.

**(c) Air Purification**

The air purifier operates whenever the rear air conditioning or the rear fan operation is on, regardless of front air conditioning activation.

**(d) Rear air filter**



Replace the air filter when the use of rear air conditioning or air purification function reduces air flow or deodorant performance.



## **SECTION 2-2**

---

### **AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO**

#### **Audio**

Audio system ..... 200

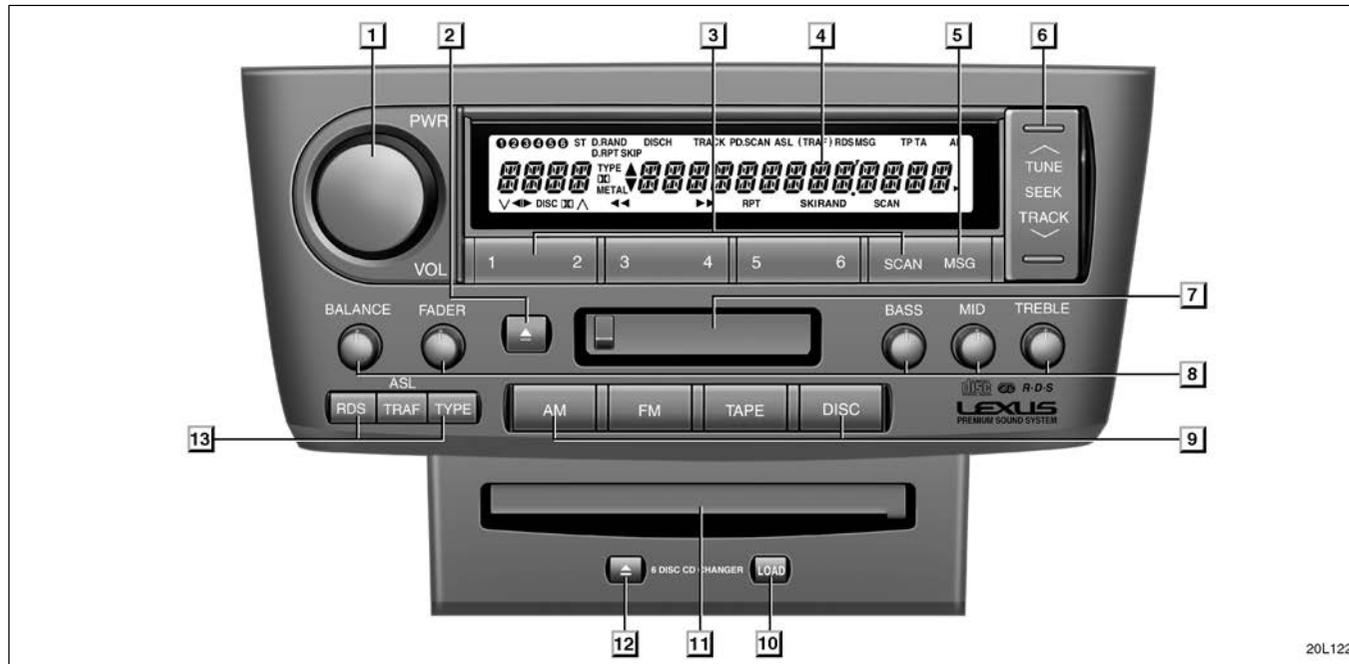
**2**

*For vehicles equipped with Navigation System, please refer to the separate "Navigation System Owner's Manual".*

## AUDIO

### AUDIO SYSTEM

Quick reference for your audio system



✂ If a Mark Levinson brand audio system is installed, the “Mark Levinson” logo is shown on the panel.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>1</b> <b>Turning the system on and adjusting the volume</b><br/>(See page 202 for details.)</p> <p><b>2</b> <b>Stopping and ejecting a cassette tape</b><br/>(See page 212 for details.)</p> <p><b>3</b> <b>Function buttons</b><br/> <b>1 – 6:</b> Station selector buttons<br/>(See page 207 for details.)<br/> <b>SCAN:</b> Scan tuning<br/>(See page 208 for details.)</p> <p><b>4</b> <b>Display of functions in TAPE or CD mode</b><br/>   <b>:</b> Side change<br/>(See page 213 for details.)<br/>  <b>:</b> DOLBY NR<br/>(See page 212 for details.)<br/>   <b>:</b> Rewinding or reversing<br/>(See page 213 or 218 for details.)<br/>   <b>:</b> Fast forwarding<br/>(See page 213 or 218 for details.)<br/> <b>RPT:</b> Automatic repeat<br/>(See page 213 or 218 for details.)<br/> <b>SKIP:</b> Automatic skip of blank portions of tape<br/>(See page 213 for details.)<br/> <b>v ^ :</b> Disc selection<br/>(See page 217 for details.)<br/> <b>RAND:</b> Random access<br/>(See page 219 for details.)</p> | <p><b>5</b> <b>Radio text message</b><br/>(See page 211 for details.)</p> <p><b>6</b> <b>Radio mode:</b> Frequency tuning<br/>(See page 206 or 208 for details.)<br/> <b>TAPE mode:</b> Direct access to a desired program<br/>(See page 214 for details.)<br/> <b>DISC mode:</b> Direct access to a desired program<br/>(See page 218 for details.)</p> <p><b>7</b> <b>Cassette tape slot</b><br/>(See page 212 for details.)</p> <p><b>8</b> <b>Tone and balance knobs</b><br/>(See page 203 for details.)</p> <p><b>9</b> <b>Mode selectors</b><br/>(See page 202 for details.)</p> <p><b>10</b> <b>Compact disc load button</b><br/>(See page 215 for details.)</p> <p><b>11</b> <b>Compact disc slot</b><br/>(See page 215 for details.)</p> <p><b>12</b> <b>Ejecting a compact disc</b><br/>(See page 216 for details.)</p> <p><b>13</b> <b>Automatic sound levelizer</b><br/>(See page 204 for details.)<br/> <b>Radio data system/Traffic announcement/<br/>Program type</b><br/>(See page 209 for details.)</p> |
|--|--|

## AUDIO

### Using your audio system: some basics

This section describes some of the basic features of the Lexus audio system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

Your audio system works when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

#### **NOTICE**

*To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the car audio on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.*

#### (a) Turning the system on and off



**Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off. Turn this knob to adjust the volume.**

The system turns on in the last mode used.



**Push "AM", "FM", "TAPE" or "DISC" to turn on that mode. The selected mode turns on directly.**

Push these buttons if you want to switch from one mode to another.

If the tape or disc is not set, the cassette player or compact disc player does not turn on.

You can turn off the cassette player by ejecting the cassette tape. If the audio system was previously off, then the entire audio system will be turned off when you eject the cassette tape. If another function was previously playing, it will come on again.



In the "TAPE" or "CD" mode, the applicable functions are shown in the lowest part of the display. Push the switch just below to turn on each function.

**(b) Tone and balance**

How good an audio program sounds to you is largely determined by the mix of the treble, mid-range, and bass levels. In fact, different kinds of music and vocal programs usually sound better with different mixes of treble, mid-range, and bass.

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is also important.

Keep in mind that if you are listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of one group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.



**"BALANCE" knob:** Use this knob to adjust the sound balance between the right and left speakers.

**"FADER" knob:** Use this knob to adjust the sound balance between the front and rear speakers.

**"BASS" knob:** Use this knob to adjust low-pitched tones.

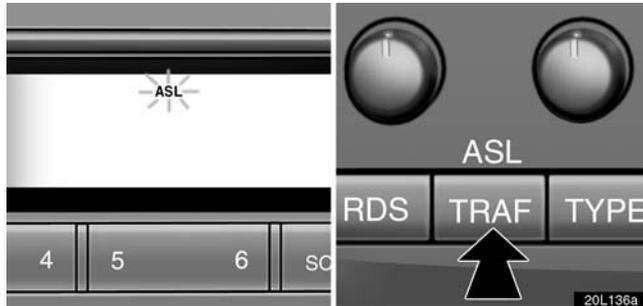
**"MID" knob:** Use this knob to adjust mid-pitched tones.

**"TREBLE" knob:** Use this knob to adjust high-pitched tones.

## AUDIO

---

### (c) Automatic sound levelizer



When the audio sound becomes difficult to be heard due to road noise, wind noise, etc. during driving, the system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to the noise level.

Push and hold the “TRAF” button until “ASL” appears on the display.

### (d) Your radio antenna

The wire antenna is mounted inside the rear window.

#### **NOTICE**

- ⚠ *When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the wire antenna.*
- ⚠ *Putting a window tint (especially, conductive or metallic type) on the rear window may affect the reception of radio or mobile telephone. For the installation of the window tint, consult with your Lexus dealer.*

### (e) Your cassette player

When you insert a cassette, the exposed tape should be to the right.

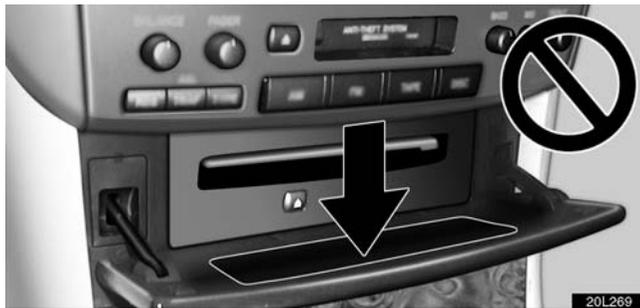
#### **NOTICE**

- Do not oil any part of the cassette player, and do not insert anything except a cassette tape into the slot.*

(f) Your automatic changer



To use the automatic changer, push the panel.



**NOTICE**  
*Do not put any object on the panel or push it hard. Doing this may damage the panel.*



Your automatic changer can store up to 6 discs and play selected discs or continuously play all the discs set in the player.

When you set discs into the player, make sure their labels face up. If not, the player will display "ERROR1" and the disc number.

## AUDIO

### NOTICE

- ⚠ **Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the compact disc player. Do not insert anything except a compact disc into the slot.**
- ⚠ **Do not insert a disc upon another one, or it will damage the automatic changer. Insert only one disc into the slot at a time.**
- ⚠ The following products may not be playable on your compact disc player.
  - Copy-protected CD
  - CD-R (CD-Recordable)
  - CD-RW (CD-Re-writable)
  - CD-ROM
- ⚠ Your compact disc player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.

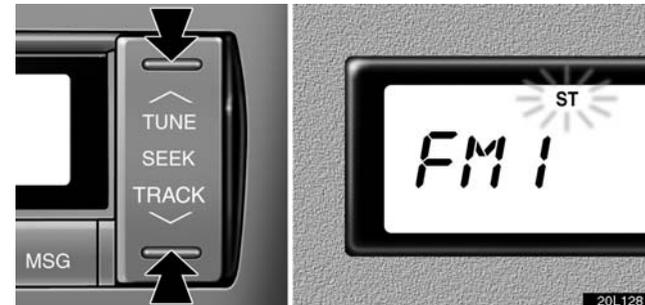
### Radio operation

#### (a) Listening to the radio



Push these buttons to choose either an AM or FM station.

"AM", "FM1", "FM2" or "FM TYPE" appears on the display.



Push this button on the upper side to step up the station band or on the lower side to step down.

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. "ST" appears on the display. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception. In this case, "ST" disappears from the display.

#### (b) Presetting a station



**1. Tune in the desired station.**

**2. Push one of the station selector buttons ( 1–6 ) and hold it until a beep is heard. This sets the station to the button and the button number ( 1–6 ) appears on the display.**

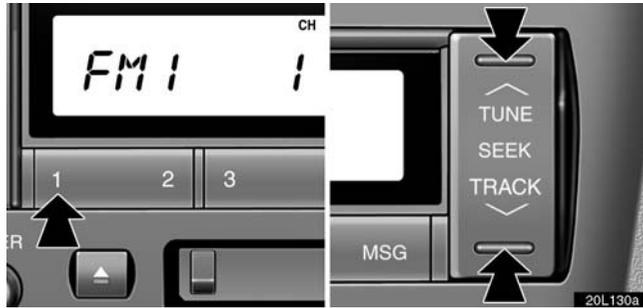
Each button can store one AM station and two FM stations. To change the preset station to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset station memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

## AUDIO

### (c) Selecting a station

Tune in the desired station using one of the following methods.



**Preset tuning:** Push the button ( 1–6 ) for the station you want. The button number ( 1–6 ) and station frequency appear on the display.

**Manual tuning:** Push the "TUNE SEEK" button briefly. Each time you push the button, the radio will step up or down to another frequency.

**Seek tuning:** Push the "TUNE SEEK" button and hold it until you hear a beep. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched out one after another.



**To scan all the frequencies:** Push the "SCAN" button briefly. "SCAN" appears on the display. The radio will find the next station up the band, stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a station, push the "SCAN" button a second time.

**To scan the preset stations:** Push the "SCAN" button and hold it until you hear a beep. "P.SCAN" appears on the display. The radio will tune in the next preset station up the band, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To select a station, push the "SCAN" button a second time.

**(d) RDS (Radio Data System)**

**AF (Alternative Frequency) function:** When the RDS is turned on, a station providing good reception is automatically selected if current reception worsens.



When you push the “RDS” button briefly during FM reception, the RDS turns on. “RDS” and “RDS SEARCH” appear on the display and the radio starts to search RDS stations.

If no RDS stations can be found, “NOTHING” appears and the display returns to the previous mode.

If RDS stations are found, “FOUND \*\*ST” appears on the display (\*\* indicating the number of stations which are found) in the FM TYPE mode and the RDS stations are preset by program type.

To turn off the RDS, push the “RDS” button until you hear a beep.

**TYPE (Program type):**

When you push the “TYPE” button while receiving an RDS station, the current program type appears on the display.

Each time you push the “TYPE” button, the program type changes as in the following:

- 🔊 ROCK
- 🔊 EASY LIS (Easy listening)
- 🔊 CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and jazz)
- 🔊 R&B (Rhythm and Blues)
- 🔊 INFORM (Information)
- 🔊 RELIGION
- 🔊 MISC
- 🔊 ALERT (Emergency message)

## AUDIO

---

### Emergency broadcast:



If an emergency broadcast is received during reception of anything other than AM broadcasting, you will hear a beep and "ALERT" appears on the display. After this, an emergency broadcast will start. The volume of the emergency program is the same as the TA volume level.

### TRAF (Traffic) function: A station that regularly broadcasts traffic information is automatically located and broadcasts when the program starts.

When you push the "TRAF" button, "TRAF SEEK" appears on the display and the radio will start seeking any traffic program station.

If no traffic program station is found, "NO TRAF INFO" appears on the display for a few seconds and the display returns to the previous mode. However, if the "TRAF" button is pushed while in "TAPE" or "DISC" mode, the radio will start seeking traffic program stations again after 20 seconds.

If a traffic program station is found, the name of the traffic program station is displayed for a while until a traffic announcement is received. On reception of a traffic announcement, you will hear a beep and "TRAF ANNOUNCE" appears on the display for a few seconds.

After the traffic announcement program is over, a beep sounds and the display returns to the previous mode.

**TA volume level:** The volume of the traffic information program can be adjusted independently by turning the "PWR VOL" knob while a traffic program station is received.

**Radio text message:**

If the radio receives a radio text message during FM reception, “MSG” and a text message appears on the display. After the text message goes off, “MSG” also goes off.

After the text message goes off from the display, pushing the “MSG” button during message reception shows the text message again on the display.

The RDS audio system can store three messages consisting of 64 characters in memory. To store a message in memory, push the “MSG” button until you hear a beep.

If three messages are already stored in memory, the oldest message will be overwritten by the new message.

To recall a radio text message, push the “MSG” button. Each time you push the button, the available messages will be displayed beginning with the newest one.

If there is no radio text message in memory and when no message is received, “NO MSG STORED” appears on the display. After this, the display returns to the previous mode.

## AUDIO

### Cassette tape player operation

#### (a) Playing a cassette tape



**When you insert a cassette tape, the exposed tape should face to the right.**

The player will automatically start when you insert a cassette tape. At this time, "TAPE" appears on the display.

If a metal or chrome equivalent cassette tape is put in the cassette player, the player will automatically recognize it, and "METAL" appears on the display.

To stop or eject the cassette tape, push the "EJECT" button.

**Auto-reverse feature:** After the cassette player reaches the end of a tape, it automatically reverses and begins to play the other side, regardless of whether the cassette was playing or fast forwarding.



**If a cassette is already in the slot, push the "TAPE" button.**

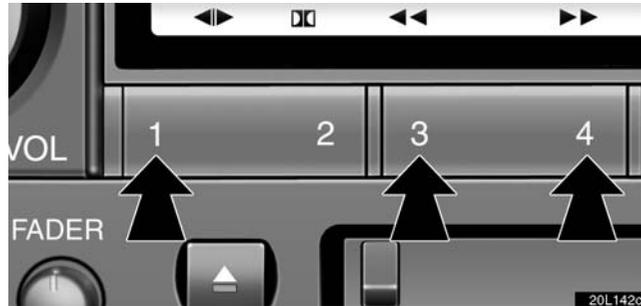
**Dolby<sup>®</sup> Noise Reduction\* feature:** If you are listening to a tape that was recorded with Dolby<sup>®</sup> Noise Reduction, push the button by the double-D symbol until the appropriate symbol appears on the display.

The Dolby NR mode reduces tape noise by about 10 dB. For best sound reproduction, play your tapes with the Dolby NR on or off according to the mode used for recording the tape.

To play a tape recorded without Dolby NR, push the button again to turn off the Dolby NR.

\* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol  are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

(b) Manual program selection



**"Program" button:** Push the "I X" button to select the other side of a cassette tape. The display indicates which side is currently selected (☆ indicates top side, ♪ indicates bottom side).

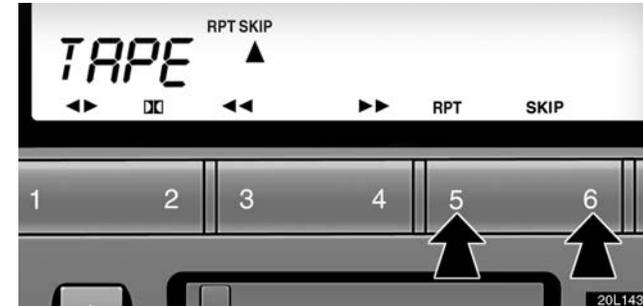
**"Rewind" button:** Push the "⏮" button to rewind a tape. "REW" appears on the display.

To stop rewinding, push the same button or "TAPE" button.

**"Fast forward" button:** Push the "⏭" button to fast forward a cassette tape. "FF" appears on the display.

To stop fast forwarding, push the same button or "TAPE" button.

(c) Automatic program selection



**"RPT" button:** The repeat feature automatically replays the current program.

Push the "RPT" button while the program is playing. When the program ends, it will automatically be rewound and replayed. Push the button again to turn off the repeat feature.

There must be at least 4 seconds of blank space between programs for the repeat feature to work correctly.

**"SKIP" button:** The skip feature allows you to fast forward past long stretches of blank tape. This is especially useful at the end of cassettes.

Push the "SKIP" button. The player will automatically skip any blank portions of 15 seconds or more and play the next program. To cancel it, push the button once again.

## AUDIO

---



**"Automatic program selection" button:** The automatic program selection feature allows you to program your cassette player to skip forward or backward to locate the song you want to hear. You can skip up to nine programs at a time.

Push this button on the upper side to skip forward. "FF" and the number will appear on the display. Push the button until the number you want to skip appears on the display. After that, the player will automatically skip forward.

When the end of the tape is reached, the player automatically reverses sides and resumes normal play.

Push this button on the lower side to skip backward. Push the button until "REW" and the number you want to skip appear on the display.

- ⚡ If you set "REW 1", the player will rewind to the beginning of the current program.
- ⚡ When counting the number of programs you want to rewind, remember to count the current program as well. For example, if you want to rewind to a song that is two before the song you are listening to, push this button until "REW 3" appears on the display.

When the beginning of the tape is reached, the player automatically resumes normal play.

There must be at least 5 seconds of blank space between programs for this feature to work correctly.

**"RPT", "SKIP" or "Automatic program selection" features:** These features may not work well with some spoken word, live or classical recordings.

## Compact disc player operation

### (a) Inserting or ejecting compact discs

The ignition switch must be in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

Your automatic changer can store up to 6 discs.



#### Setting a single compact disc:

##### 1. Push the "LOAD" button briefly.

The green indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking and "WAIT" appears on the display. After the blinking indicators stay on and the "WAIT" changes to the "LOAD", the CD door opens.

##### 2. Insert only one disc while the CD door is open.

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

After insertion, the set disc is automatically loaded.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, "ERROR1" and disc number appear on the display.

If you need to insert the next disc, repeat the same procedure to insert another disc.

#### Setting all the discs:

##### 1. Push the "LOAD" button until you hear a beep.

The green indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking and "WAIT" appears on the display. After the blinking indicators stay on and the "WAIT" changes to the "LOAD", the CD door opens.

##### 2. Insert only one disc while the CD door is open.

The CD door closes and "WAIT" appears again.

##### 3. Insert the next disc after the "WAIT" changes to the "LOAD" and the CD door opens.

##### 4. Repeat this procedure until you insert all the discs.

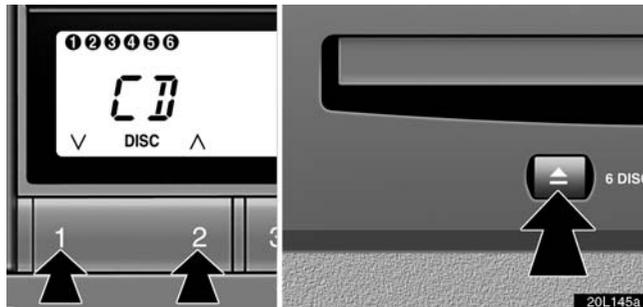
To cancel the operation, push the "LOAD" or "DISC" button.

If you do not insert the discs within 15 seconds after pushing the "LOAD" button and "LOAD" is displayed, the operation will be canceled automatically.

### NOTICE

***Do not insert one disc stacked on top of another one or feed them in continuously, to prevent discs from getting stuck in the player.***

## AUDIO



### ⚙ Ejecting a single disc:

1. Push the button under the "V" or "Λ" signal on the display to display the disc number you want to eject.
2. Push the "EJECT" button briefly.

At this time, the display shows "EJECT," and the indicators at both ends of the slot as well as the disc number light up.

### ⚙ Ejecting all the discs:

**Push the "EJECT" button until you hear a beep.**

However, if you accidentally pushed the "EJECT" button, push the "DISC" or "LOAD" button to insert the disc again.

Do not push in the disc which is being ejected forcibly.

### (b) Playing a compact disc



**Push the "DISC" button if the discs are already loaded in the player.**

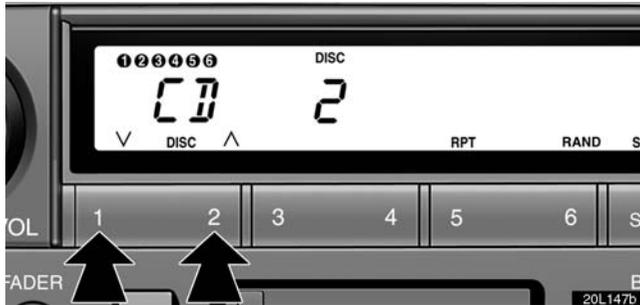
"DISC" appears on the display.

The discs set in the player are played continuously, starting with the last disc you inserted. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track number and the time from the beginning of the program appear on the display.

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The player will skip any empty disc number.

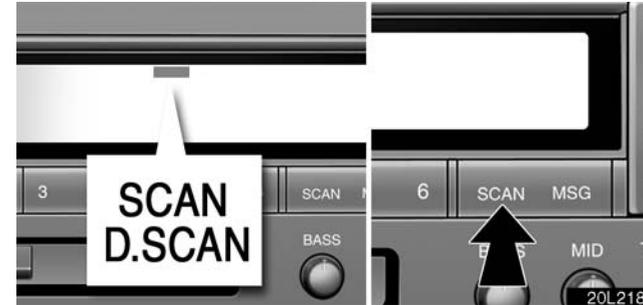
(c) Selecting a desired disc



Push the button under the "v" or "Λ" signal to select the disc number.

Push the button several times until the desired disc number appears on the display. When you release the button, the player will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

(d) Searching for a desired track or disc



**Searching for a desired track:**

Push the "SCAN" button briefly. "SCAN" will appear on the display. The compact disc player will play the next track for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a track, push the "SCAN" button a second time. If the player reaches the end of the disc, it will continue scanning at track 1.

After all the tracks are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

**Searching for a desired disc:**

Push the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep. With "D.SCAN" on the display, the program at the beginning of each disc will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, push the "SCAN" button a second time.

After all the discs in the automatic changer are scanned in one pass, the scan function is cancelled.

## AUDIO

### (e) Selecting a desired track



**"TRACK" button:** Use for direct access to a desired track.

Push either side of the "TRACK" button several times until the desired track number appears on the display. As you release the button, the player will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

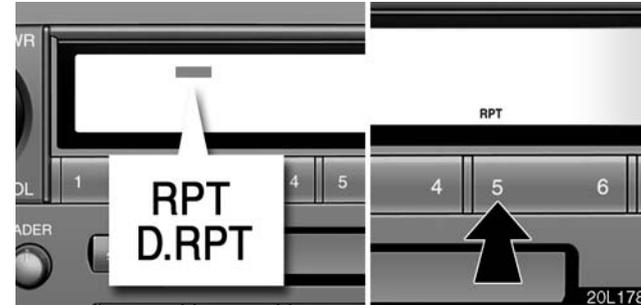
#### **"Fast forward" button:**

Push the "TRACK" button on the upper side and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing from that position.

#### **"Reverse" button:**

Push the "TRACK" button on the lower side and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing.

### (f) Repeating a track or a disc



**"RPT" button:** There are 2 repeat features — you can either replay a disc track or a whole compact disc.

**Repeating a track:** Push the "RPT" button briefly while the track is playing. "RPT" will appear on the display. When the track ends, it will automatically be replayed. This process will be continued until you push the button again to turn off the repeat feature.

**Repeating a disc:** Push the "RPT" button and hold it until you hear a beep. "D.RPT" will appear on the display. The player will repeat all the tracks on the disc you are listening to. When the disc ends, the player will automatically go back to the top track of the disc and replay. This process will be continued until you push the button again to turn off the repeat feature.

**(g) Random playing**

**"RAND" button:** There are 2 random features — you can either listen to the tracks on all the compact discs in the player in random order, or only listen to the tracks on a specific compact disc in random order.

**Random playing for the tracks on a disc:** Push the "RAND" button briefly. "RAND" will appear on the display and play the disc you are listening to in random order.

**Random playing for all the tracks in the automatic changer:** Push the "RAND" button and hold it until you hear a beep. "D.RAND" will appear on the display and the player will perform all the tracks on all the discs in the automatic changer in random order. To turn off the random feature, push "RAND" a second time.

When a track is skipped or the system is inoperative, push the button to reset.

**(h) If the player malfunctions**

If the player or another unit equipped with the player malfunctions, your audio system will display one of the four following error messages.

**If "WAIT" appears on the display,** it indicates that the inside of the player unit may be too hot due to the very high ambient temperature. Remove the disc from the player and allow the player to cool down.

**If "ERROR 1" appears on the display,** it indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged, or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly.

**If "ERROR 3" or "ERROR 4" appears on the display,** it indicates there is trouble inside the system. Eject the disc.

**If the malfunction is not rectified,** take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

## AUDIO

### Rear controller (some models)

The rear controller is installed in the armrest of the rear center seat so that you can operate the audio system in the rear seat.



**"POWER" button:** Use this button to turn the system on and off.

**"MODE" button:** Use this button to change the mode. If a tape or compact disc is not inserted, the "TAPE" or "CD" mode is skipped.

You can lock the button operation. To activate the lock, push and hold the "MODE" button until you hear a beep. "LOCK" appears on the display. All the buttons in the rear controller are inoperative. To cancel it, push and hold the "MODE" button until you hear a beep again. You can use all the buttons.

**"VOL" button:** Use this button to adjust the volume.

#### (a) When the radio mode is selected

**"CH" button:** Push the "CH" button to select a station preset on the preset button of the front audio system. Each push of the button changes to the station with higher numbered preset button.

**"v ^" button:** Push this button for manual tuning or seek tuning.

Push this button briefly. Each time you push the button, the radio will step up or down to another frequency.

Push this button and hold it until you hear a beep. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station, and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched out one after another.

#### (b) When the "TAPE" mode is selected

**The applicable functions are shown in the lowest part of the display. Push the switch just below to turn on each function. In the "CD" mode, "DISC" and "TRACK" are displayed.**

**"CH" button:** Push this button to select the other side of a cassette tape.

**"v ^" button:** Push the left or right side to skip forward or backward to locate the song you want to hear. For details, see "Automatic program selection" on page 213.

**(c) When the "CD" mode is selected**

**"CH" button:** Use this button to search a desired disc.

**"v ▲" button:** Use this button to search a desired track or push this button and hold it to fast forward or reverse.

**Steering pad switches**

The steering pad switches are installed on the left side of the steering wheel.

**"MODE" switch:** Use this switch to change the mode. If a tape or compact disc is not inserted, the "TAPE" or "CD" mode is skipped. When you push the switch with the audio system turned off, the audio system turns on.

**"VOL" switches:** Use this switches to adjust the volume. Push "▲" to increase the volume and "▼" to decrease the volume. The volume continues to increase or decrease while the switch is being pressed.

**"SET" switch:** Use this switch to adjust the preset volume. To preset the volume, adjust the volume and then push and hold this switch until you hear a beep.

## AUDIO

---

### (a) When the radio mode is selected

“” or “” **switch:** Push this switch for seek tuning or to select a station.

- 🔔 Push this switch briefly to select a station that you assigned to a switch on the audio system.
- 🔔 Push this switch and hold it until you hear a beep. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station, and will stop on reception.

### (b) When the “TAPE” mode is selected

“” or “” **switch:** Push this switch to fast forward or rewind the tape or for automatic program selection.

- 🔔 Push this switch until you hear a beep to fast forward or rewind the tape. To stop fast forwarding or rewinding, push the same side on the switch until you hear a beep.
- 🔔 Push this switch briefly for automatic program selection. When automatically selecting a program, you can skip up to 9 programs at a time. For details, see page 213 for details.

### (c) When the “CD” mode is selected

“” or “” **switch:** Use this switch to select a desired track or disc.

- 🔔 Push this switch briefly to select a desired track.
- 🔔 To select a desired disc, push and hold this switch until you the desired number of the disc appears and you hear a beep.

### CAUTION

Operate the steering pad switches with due care while you are driving to avoid accidents.

### Car audio system operating hints

### NOTICE

*To ensure correct audio system operations:*

- 🔔 *Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio system.*
- 🔔 *Do not put anything other than a cassette tape or compact disc into the cassette tape slot or compact disc slot.*
- 🔔 *The use of a cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.*

**Radio reception**

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with your radio – it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or telephone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther you are from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as your vehicle moves.

Here are some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with your radio:

**FM**

**Fading and drifting stations** – Generally, the effective range of FM is about 40 km (25 miles). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

**Multi-path** – FM signals are reflective, making it possible for two signals to reach your antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

**Static and fluttering** – These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees, or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

**Station swapping** – If the FM signal you are listening to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, your radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

**AM**

**Fading** – AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere – especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

**Station interference** – When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

**Static** – AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightning, or electrical motors. This results in static.

**Caring for your cassette player and tapes**

For the best performance for your cassette player and tapes:

Clean the tape head and other parts regularly.

⚠ A dirty tape head or tape path can decrease sound quality and tangle your cassette tapes. The easiest way to clean them is by using a cleaning tape. (A wet type is recommended.)

## AUDIO

---

Use high-quality cassettes:

- ❖ Low-quality cassette tapes can cause many problems, including poor sound, inconsistent playing speed, and constant auto-reversing. They can also get stuck or tangled in the cassette player.
- ❖ Do not use a cassette if it has been damaged or tangled or if its label is peeling off.
- ❖ Do not leave a cassette in the player if you are not listening to it, especially if it is hot outside.
- ❖ Store cassettes in their cases and out of direct sunlight.
- ❖ Avoid using cassettes with a total playing time longer than 100 minutes (50 minutes per side). The tape used in these cassettes is thin and could get stuck or tangled in the cassette player.

### Caring for your compact disc player and discs

- ❖ Your compact disc player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.
- ❖ Extremely high temperature can keep your compact disc player from working. On hot days, use air conditioning to cool the vehicle interior before you listen to a disc.
- ❖ Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make your compact disc player skip.
- ❖ If moisture gets into your compact disc player, you may not hear any sound even though your compact disc player appears to be working. Eject all discs from the player and wait until the player dries.

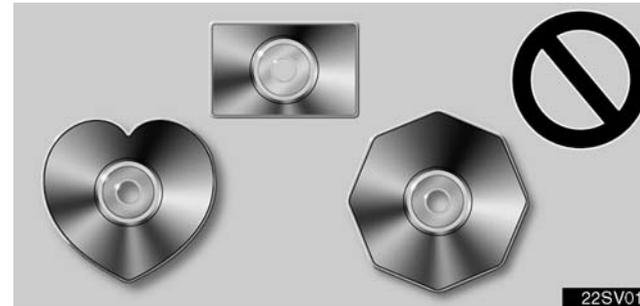


**Compact disc players use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the player correctly.**

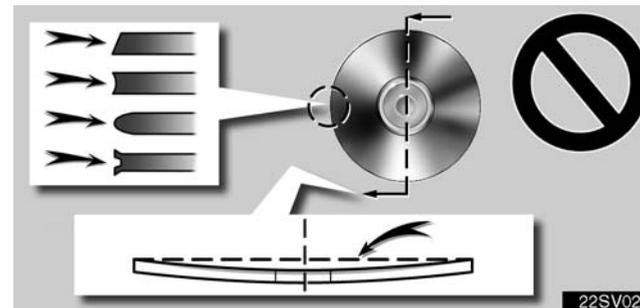


Use only compact discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your compact disc player.

- Copy-protected CD
- CD-R (CD-Recordable)
- CD-RW (CD-Re-writable)
- CD-ROM



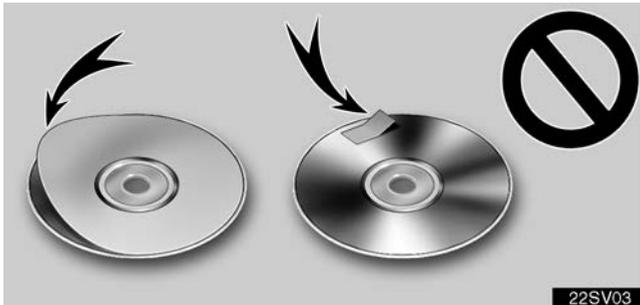
✗ *Special shaped discs*



✗ *Low quality discs*

## AUDIO

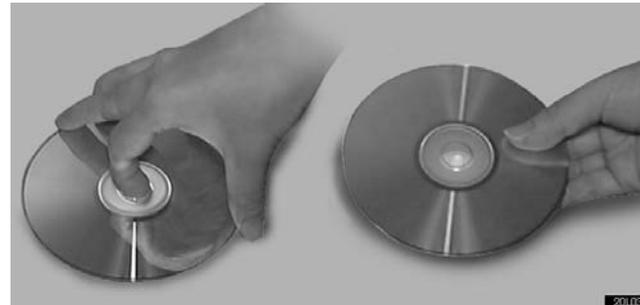
---



✗ *Labeled discs*

### **NOTICE**

***To prevent damage to the player or changer, do not use special shaped, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations.***



✗ *Correct*

✗ *Wrong*

- ✦ Handle compact discs carefully, especially when you set them into the player. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- ✦ Dirt, scrapes, warping, pin holes, or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)



**To clean a compact disc:** Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in a circle). Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.



## SECTION 3-1

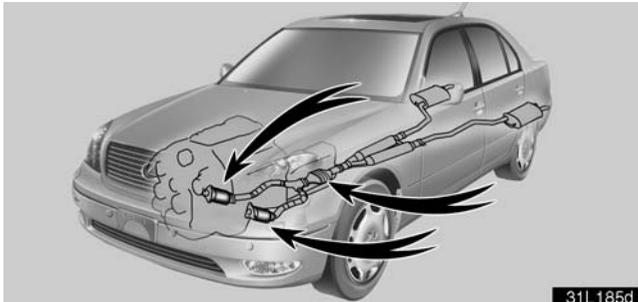
---

### STARTING AND DRIVING

#### Starting and driving

Three-way catalytic converters .....	230
Engine exhaust caution .....	231
Before starting the engine .....	232
Ignition switch with steering lock .....	232
Parking brake .....	233
How to start the engine .....	234
Automatic transmission .....	235
Electronic throttle control system .....	242
Lexus park assist system .....	243
Cruise control .....	248
Dynamic laser cruise control .....	251
Electronically modulated air suspension .....	274
Traction control system .....	276
Vehicle skid control system .....	277
Brake system .....	279
Types of tires .....	283

## THREE-WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTERS



Three-way catalytic converters are emission control devices installed in the exhaust system.

The purpose is to reduce pollutants in the exhaust gas.

### CAUTION

-  Keep people and combustible materials away from the exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.
-  Do not drive, idle or park your vehicle over anything that might burn easily such as grass, leaves, paper or rags.

### NOTICE

*A large amount of unburned gases flowing into the three-way catalytic converter may cause it to overheat and create a fire hazard. To prevent this and other damage, observe the following precautions:*

-  Use only unleaded gasoline.
-  Do not drive with an extremely low fuel level; running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, creating an excessive load on the three-way catalytic converter.
-  Do not allow the engine to run at idle speed for more than 20 minutes.
-  Avoid racing the engine.
-  Do not push-start or pull-start your vehicle.
-  Do not turn off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
-  Keep your engine in good running order. Malfunctions in the engine electrical system, electronic ignition system or fuel system could cause an extremely high three-way catalytic converter temperature.
-  If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, take your vehicle in for a check-up as soon as possible. Remember, your Lexus dealer knows your vehicle and its three-way catalytic converter system best.

*To ensure that the three-way catalytic converter and the entire emission control system operate properly, your vehicle must receive the periodic inspections required by the Lexus Maintenance Schedule. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance".*

**ENGINE EXHAUST CAUTION**



- ⚠ Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust. It contains carbon monoxide, which is a colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death.
- ⚠ Make sure the exhaust system has no holes or loose connections. The system should be checked from time to time. If you hit something, or notice a change in the sound of the exhaust, have the system checked immediately.
- ⚠ Do not run the engine in a garage or enclosed area except for the time needed to drive the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gases cannot escape, making this a particularly dangerous situation.
- ⚠ Do not remain for a long time in a parked vehicle with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, however, do so only in an unconfined area and adjust the heating or cooling system to force outside air into the vehicle.

- ⚠ Keep the trunk lid closed while driving. An open or unsealed trunk lid may cause exhaust gases to be drawn into the vehicle.
- ⚠ To allow proper operation of your vehicle's ventilation system, keep the inlet grilles in front of the windshield clear of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- ⚠ If you smell exhaust fumes in the vehicle, drive with the windows open and the trunk lid closed. Have the cause immediately located and corrected.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

### BEFORE STARTING THE ENGINE

1. Check the area around the vehicle before entering it.
2. Adjust seat position, seatback angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle.
3. Adjust the inside and outside rear view mirrors.
4. Lock all doors.
5. Fasten seat belts.

Remember to check that the service reminder indicators function when turning the ignition switch to "ON", and check the fuel gauge to see that you have sufficient fuel.

### IGNITION SWITCH WITH STEERING LOCK



**"START" – Starter motor on. The key will return to the "ON" position when released.**

For starting tips, see page 234.

**"ON" – Engine on and all accessories on.**

This is the normal driving position.

#### **NOTICE**

***Do not leave the key in the "ON" position if the engine is not running. The battery will discharge and the electronic ignition system could be damaged.***

**"ACC" – Accessories such as the radio operate, but the engine is off.**

If you leave the key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position and open the driver's door, a buzzer will remind you to remove the key.\*

*NOTE: \*The volume or interval of beep sound can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*



**"LOCK" – Engine is off and the steering wheel is locked. The ignition key can be removed only at this position.**

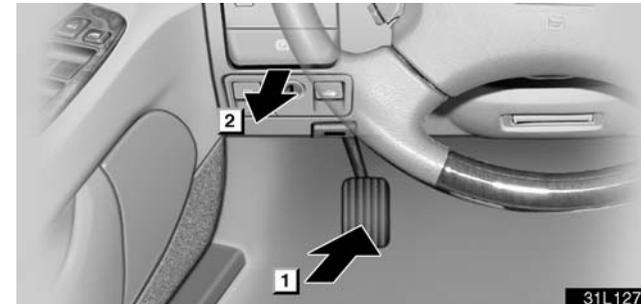
To turn the ignition switch from "ACC" to the "LOCK" position, you must put the transmission selector lever in the "P" position.

Once you remove the key, the engine immobiliser system is automatically set. See "Engine immobiliser system" on page 11.

When starting the engine, the key may seem stuck at the "LOCK" position. To free it, first be sure the key is pushed all the way in, and then rock the steering wheel slightly while turning the key gently.

If, in an emergency, you must turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving, turn the ignition switch only to "ACC".

## PARKING BRAKE



- 1 To set: Fully depress the parking brake pedal.**
- 2 To release: Pull the parking brake release lever.**

Before leaving your vehicle, firmly apply the parking brake.

**CAUTION**

**Before driving, make sure the parking brake is fully released and that the parking brake reminder light is off.**

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

### HOW TO START THE ENGINE

#### Before cranking

1. Apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Put the selector lever in "P". If you need to restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, put the selector lever in "N". A starter safety device will prevent the starter from operating if the selector lever is in any drive position.
4. Depress the brake pedal and hold it to the floor until driving off.

#### Starting the engine

Before starting the engine, be sure to follow the instructions in "Before cranking".

#### Normal starting procedure

The multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system in your engine automatically controls the proper air–fuel mixture for starting. You can start a cold or hot engine as follows:

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, crank the engine by turning the ignition switch to "START". Release it when the engine starts.
2. After the engine runs for about 10 seconds, you are ready to drive.

If the weather is below freezing, let the engine warm up for a few minutes before driving. Do not leave the vehicle while the engine is warming up.

#### If the engine stalls ...

Simply restart it, using the correct procedure given in normal starting.

#### If the engine will not start

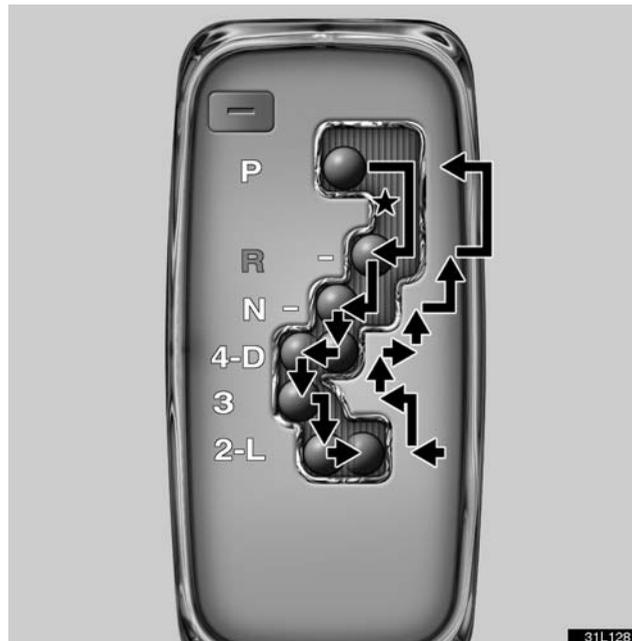
See "If your vehicle will not start" on page 298.

#### NOTICE

-  **Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring systems.**
-  **Do not race a cold engine.**
-  **If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.**

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Your automatic transmission has a shift lock system to minimize the possibility of incorrect operation. This means you can only shift out of "P" position when the brake pedal is depressed with the ignition switch in "ON" position. (Ⓢ)



✂ *The shift position is displayed on the instrument cluster.*

- P:** Parking, engine starting and key removal position
- R:** Reverse position
- N:** Neutral position
- D:** Normal driving position (Shifting into overdrive possible)
- 4:** Position for engine braking (Shifting into overdrive not possible)

When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For the operation to decrease the vehicle speed, see page 250.

- 3, 2:** Position for more powerful engine braking
- L:** Position for maximum engine braking

**3**

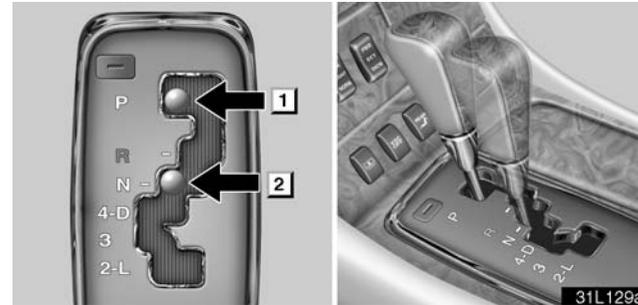
## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

Correct use of the automatic transmission is explained in the following parts.

- (a) Normal driving
- (b) Using engine braking
- (c) Using the "3", "2" and "L" positions
- (d) Backing up
- (e) Parking
- (f) Good driving practice
- (g) If you cannot shift the selector lever

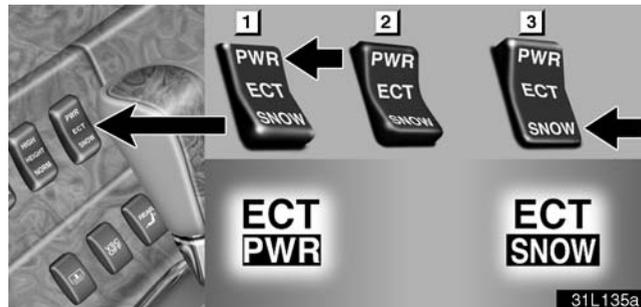
### (a) Normal driving



✕ **1** "P" (Park) position **2** "N" (Neutral) position

**1. Start the engine as instructed in "How to start the engine" on page 234.**

The transmission must be in "P" or "N". The engine will not start in any drive position even if the ignition switch is turned to "START".



- ✕ 1 Power position 2 Normal position
- 3 Snow position

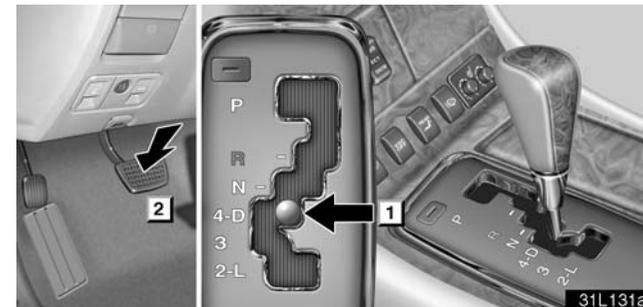
**2. Set the driving pattern selector switch to the "Normal" position.**

Your transmission has a driving pattern selector switch which allows you to select "Power", "Normal" or "Snow" mode to suit your driving condition. For ordinary driving, Lexus recommends that you use the "Normal" position to improve fuel economy.

**3. For more powerful acceleration and sporty driving, use the "Power" position.**

In the "Power" position, the "ECT PWR" light in the instrument cluster is on and the transmission is shifted up at higher vehicle speeds and shifted down more responsively than in the "Normal" position.

**For "Snow" mode, see "Electronic Throttle Control System" on page 242.**



- ✕ 1 "D" (Drive) position 2 Brake pedal

**4. With your foot holding down the brake pedal, shift the selector lever to "D".**

Always use the "D" position to improve fuel economy and quiet driving. Only in this position, shifting into the overdrive gear is possible. However, while the engine coolant temperature is low, the transmission will not shift into the overdrive gear even in the "D" position. (See "(b) Using engine braking" and "(f) Good driving practice" for exceptions.)

<b>CAUTION</b>
<p><b>Never put your foot on the accelerator pedal while shifting.</b></p>

3

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

### 5. Release the parking brake and brake pedal. Depress the accelerator pedal slowly for smooth starting.

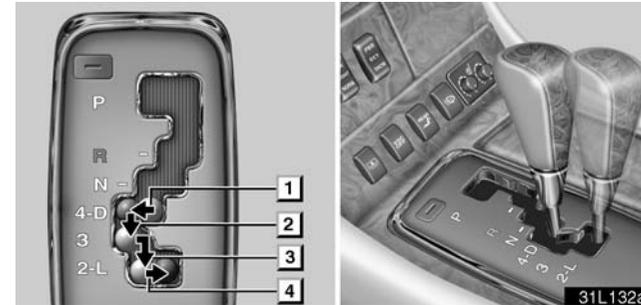
In normal cruising, the vehicle will start in first gear and automatically shift up to the most suitable gear. On inclines, declines or winding roads, etc., the vehicle shifts up and down automatically according to the running conditions to obtain the suitable driving power and engine braking.

When the lever is in the "4" position, the automatic transmission system will select the most suitable gear for the running conditions such as hill climbing, hard towing, etc.

If you need to accelerate rapidly while driving, depress the accelerator pedal to the full throttle position. This provides more acceleration by automatically downshifting the transmission to the next lower gear or beyond, depending on the vehicle speed.

If engine braking is needed, such as in descending a long hill, see "(b) Using engine braking".

### (b) Using engine braking



To use the braking power of the engine, downshift the transmission in the way described below:

- 1 Shift into the "4" position. The transmission will downshift to fourth gear and engine braking will be enabled.

When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. If you need to decrease the vehicle speed, see page 250.

- 2 Shift into the "3" position. The transmission will downshift to third gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than 159 km/h (99 mph) and stronger engine braking will be enabled.

- 3 Shift into the "2" position. The transmission will downshift to second gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than 104 km/h (64 mph) and stronger engine braking than that of "3" position will be enabled.
- 4 Shift into the "L" position. The transmission will downshift to first gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than 40 km/h (25 mph) and maximum engine braking will be enabled.

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<b>Be careful when downshifting on a slippery surface. The abrupt change in engine speed could cause the vehicle to spin or skid.</b>

**(c) Using the "3", "2" and "L" positions**

The "3", "2" and "L" positions are used for strong engine braking as described previously.

With the selector lever in "3", "2" or "L", you can start the vehicle in motion as with the lever in "D".

With the selector lever in "3" or "2", the vehicle will start in first gear and automatically shift to third or second gear.

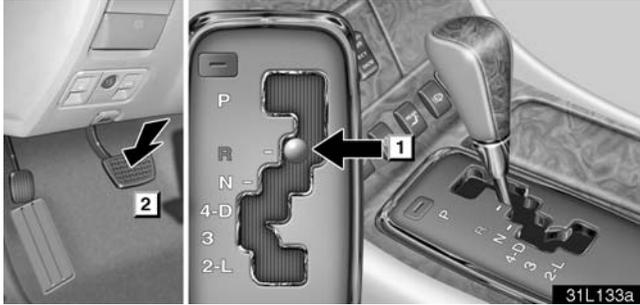
With the selector lever in "L", the transmission is engaged in first gear.

<b>NOTICE</b>	
	<b>Be careful not to over-rev the engine. Watch the tachometer to keep engine rpm from going into the red zone. The approximate maximum allowable speed for each position is given below for your reference:</b>
	<b>"3" ... 160 km/h (99 mph)</b>
	<b>"2" ... 104 km/h (65 mph)</b>
	<b>"L" .... 68 km/h (42 mph)</b>
	<b>Do not continue hill climbing or hard towing for a long time in the "3", "2" or "L" position. This may cause severe automatic transmission damage from overheating. To prevent such damage, "4" position should be used in hill climbing or hard towing.</b>



## STARTING AND DRIVING

### (d) Backing up



✕ **1** "R" (Reverse) position **2** Brake pedal

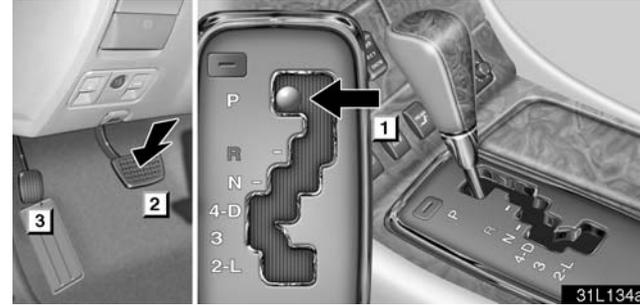
1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. With the brake pedal held down with your foot, shift the selector lever to the "R" position.

#### **NOTICE**

**Never shift into reverse while the vehicle is moving.**

When you are backing up, you can adjust the outside rear view mirrors down quickly. For details, see page 122.

### (e) Parking



✕ **1** "P" (Park) position **2** Brake pedal  
**3** Parking brake pedal

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Depress the parking brake pedal fully.
3. With the brake pedal held down with your foot, shift the selector lever to the "P" position.

#### **CAUTION**

**While the vehicle is moving, never attempt to move the selector lever into "P" under any circumstances. Serious mechanical damage and loss of vehicle control may result.**

**(f) Good driving practice**

- ⚠ If the transmission repeatedly shifts up and down between fourth and overdrive gears when climbing a gentle slope, shift the selector lever to the "4" position. Be sure to shift the selector lever to the "D" position after climbing the slope.
- ⚠ When towing a trailer, in order to maintain efficient engine braking and electrical charging performance, do not use overdrive. The selector lever must be in the "4" position.



**CAUTION**  
Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

**NOTICE**

**NOTICE**  
*Always use the brake pedal or the parking brake to hold the vehicle on an upgrade. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal, as this can cause the transmission to overheat.*

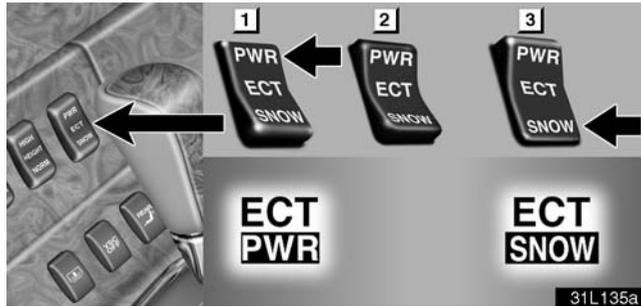
**(g) If you cannot shift the selector lever**

If you cannot shift the selector lever even though the brake pedal is depressed, use the shift lock override button. For instructions, see "If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever" on page 320.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

### ELECTRONIC THROTTLE CONTROL SYSTEM

The electronic throttle control system always maintains appropriate engine output in relation to the accelerator opening in all driving conditions.



- ✕ **1** Power position **2** Normal position  
**3** Snow position

The electronic throttle control system has 3 modes: Normal, Power and Snow modes.

**Normal mode:** For ordinary driving, Lexus recommends that you use the normal mode to improve fuel economy.

**Power mode:** For more powerful acceleration and sporty driving.

In the power mode, the "ECT PWR" light in the instrument cluster is on and the transmission is shifted up at higher vehicle speeds and shifted down more responsively than in the normal mode.

To return to the normal mode, push the driving pattern selector switch lightly on the "SNOW" side.

**Snow mode:** For slippery road surfaces such as in snow. In this mode, the spinning of the rear wheels is controlled appropriately.

When you push the driving pattern selector switch on the "SNOW" side, the snow mode is turned on and the "ECT SNOW" light in the instrument cluster comes on.

To return to the normal mode, push the driving pattern selector switch on the "SNOW" side again.

When you turn the ignition switch off in the snow mode, the mode automatically changes to the normal mode.

## LEXUS PARK ASSIST SYSTEM

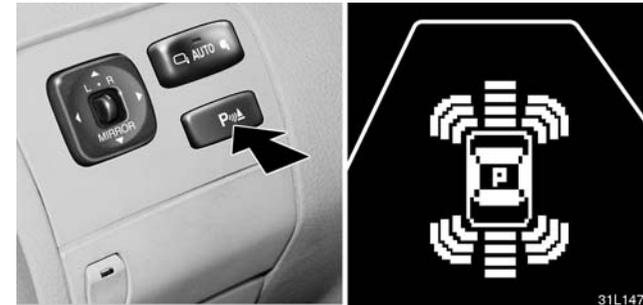


### ✕ Sensors

**The Lexus park assist system will help you to easily park by detecting any obstacle around your vehicle with ultrasonic sensors and informing you of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the obstacle with the indicators on the display and with beeping sounds.\***

This system will operate at a vehicle speed of less than about 10 km/h (6 mph) with the selector lever in a position other than "P".

*NOTE: \*The volume of the beeps can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*



**You can use this system in either of the following ways.**

- ✎ Push the main switch of the Lexus park assist system with the ignition on. A beep sounds for one second. After the system self-check is performed, the Lexus park assist system screen appears for 2 seconds.
- ✎ Push the main switch of the Lexus park assist system and turn the ignition on. The Lexus park assist system screen appears for 2 seconds and a system self-check is performed. At this time, a beep does not sound.

Up to 4 indicator bars are shown on the front and rear sides of the vehicle mark and up to 3 indicator arcs are shown on each corner of the vehicle mark. The number of indicators shows the approximate range up to the obstacle. The indicator marks disappear one-by-one as your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle. Also, as you get closer to the obstacle, the beeping interval becomes shorter.

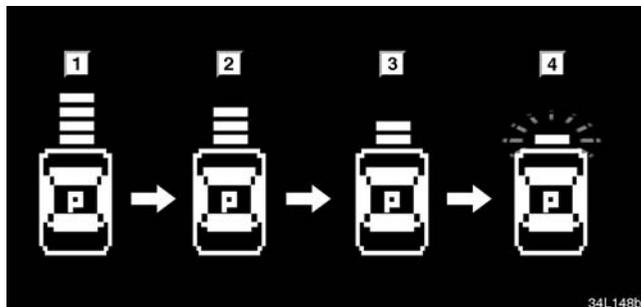
To turn off the system, push the main switch again.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

### NOTICE

- ⚠ **If an accident should occur, the sensors will be affected, resulting in a system failure.**
- ⚠ **If the indicators remain on the display but you do not hear a beeping sound, the system may be malfunctioning. Contact your Lexus dealer.**

### Indicators and beeps

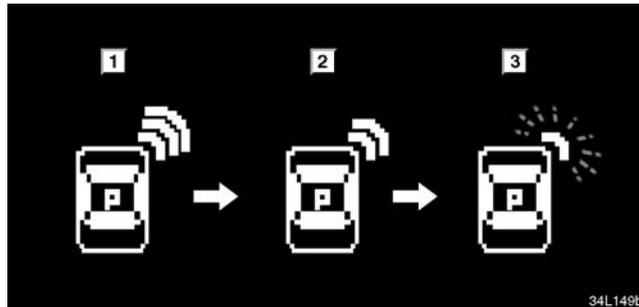


⚠ *Front or rear obstacles*

Depending on the distance between your vehicle and the obstacle, the display and beeps change as follows:

- 1 About 50 cm (1.5 ft.) to about 100 cm (3.0 ft.):** 4 bars appear on the front or rear side of the vehicle mark where the obstacle is detected. If the obstacle is detected on the rear side of the vehicle, the beeps remind you that your vehicle is getting closer to the obstacle by sounding intermittently.
- 2 About 37.5 cm (1.1 ft.) to about 50 cm (1.5 ft.):** The number of bars will decrease from 4 to 3, and the beeps sound at shorter intervals than in step **1**.
- 3 About 25 cm (0.8 ft.) to about 37.5 cm (1.1 ft.):** The number of bars will decrease from 3 to 2. The beeps sound at shorter intervals than in step **2**.
- 4 Less than about 25 cm (0.8 ft.):** The number of bars will decrease from 2 to 1, and the bar blinks while the beeps sound continuously.

*NOTE: \*The beeps can be activated or deactivated. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*



✕ **Corner obstacles**

Depending on the distance between your vehicle and the obstacle, the display and beeps change as follows:

- 1 About 37.5 cm (1.1 ft.) to about 50 cm (1.5 ft.): 3 arcs appear on the corner of the vehicle mark where the obstacle is detected. At this time, the beeps remind you that your vehicle is getting closer to the obstacle by sounding intermittently.
- 2 About 25 cm (0.8 ft.) to about 37.5 cm (1.1 ft.): The number of arcs will decrease from 3 to 2. The beeps sound at shorter intervals than in step 1.
- 3 Less than about 25 cm (0.8 ft.): The number of arcs will decrease from 2 to 1, and the bar blinks while the beeps sound continuously.

**Malfunction warning**



If a sensor malfunctions, a beep sounds for about 7 seconds and blinking indicators show which sensor is not working properly.

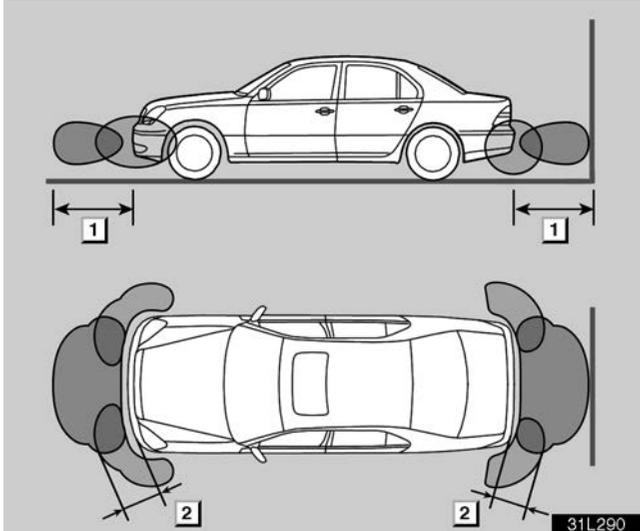
If the above screen appears on the display, the following causes are suspected.

- The sensor is malfunctioning or a cable has broken.
- Icicles, snowflakes or mud gets on the sensor.

The sensors operate individually. When one sensor is malfunctioning, sounding beeps and blinking indicators to show that it is malfunctioning, if another sensor detects an obstacle during this time, the approximate distance to the obstacle will be shown by that sensor.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

### Lexus park assist system operating hints



#### ✕ Sensor detection range

**1** About 1 m (3 ft.) **2** About 50 cm (1.5 ft.)

The sensor detection range is limited around the bumper. Be sure to confirm a safe distance around your vehicle and drive slowly.

If more than one obstacle is detected in the same direction, the indicators for the obstacle nearest to the vehicle will turn on.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Do not install an accessory or the like within the sensor detection range. Doing so may cause the Lexus park assist system to malfunction, resulting in an accident.

### NOTICE

- ⚠ *The sensors do not detect an obstacle just under the bumper. A short object, thin stake or the like will be detected once but might not be detected as your vehicle gets very close to such an object.*
- ⚠ *If an obstacle is very close to your vehicle, it might not be detected.*
- ⚠ *If a sensor is subjected to a strong impact, it will not operate properly.*

The Lexus park assist system may not work properly in the following cases:

- ⚠ When icicles, snowflakes or mud gets on the sensors.  
If removed, the system will work properly.
- ⚠ When the sensor is frozen.  
If deiced, the system will work properly.
- ⚠ When the sensor is covered with something.  
If removed, the system will work properly.

Especially in cold weather, a malfunction warning screen may appear on the display due to frozen sensors. If the malfunction warning screen appears on the display, be sure to check the sensor. If the malfunction warning screen appears despite no mud, ice or snowflakes on the sensor, the sensor might have malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

**In the following conditions, the detection range may be affected:**

- ❖ When you stop your vehicle in scorching sun or in cold weather.
- ❖ Foreign matter such as snowflakes or mud gets on the sensor.

**The Lexus park assist system may detect the following by mistake:**

- ❖ Bumpy roads or gravelled roads or grass when driving on such surfaces, or on grass
- ❖ Devices issuing ultrasonic waves, such as a horn from another vehicle, motorcycle engine, air braking sound from heavy-duty vehicles, if such a device is operated around your vehicle
- ❖ Rain or water splashing over the sensor
- ❖ The ground on which the vehicle is tilted
- ❖ Radio antenna or fender pole mounted on your vehicle
- ❖ Mud, ice or snowflakes on the sensor
- ❖ Tall curb stone
- ❖ Towing eyelet mounted on your vehicle
- ❖ Towing hitch mounted on your vehicle

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

The Lexus park assist system may not detect the following:

- ❖ Thin objects such as wire or rope
- ❖ Objects with a surface area too small to reflect ultrasonic waves such as wire gauze or fence
- ❖ Sound wave absorbing objects such as cotton or snow
- ❖ Objects with a sharp edge
- ❖ Shorter objects
- ❖ Tall objects with the upper part projected

For vehicles with a Navigation System, the park assist graphics appear both on the navigation display and multi-information display. For details, see the separate "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

## CRUISE CONTROL

The cruise control allows you to cruise the vehicle at a desired speed over about 40 km/h (25 mph) with your foot off the accelerator pedal.

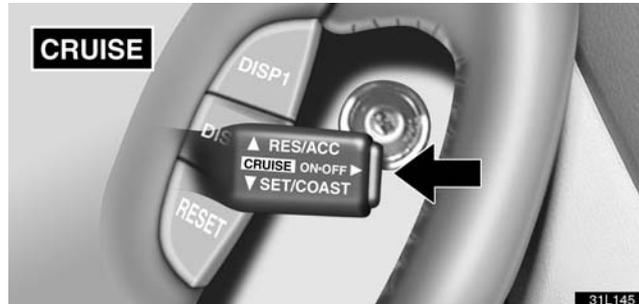
Your cruising speed can be maintained although a slight speed change may occur when driving up or down a gradient, within the limits of engine performance. On steeper hills, a great speed change will occur so it is better to drive without the cruise control.

When the cruise control is on, the driving pattern of the automatic transmission is fixed in the normal position, regardless of the position of the selector switch.

### CAUTION

- ❖ To help maintain maximum control of your vehicle, do not use the cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads.
- ❖ Avoid vehicle speed increases when driving downhill. If the vehicle speed is too fast in relation to the cruise control set speed, cancel the cruise control then downshift the transmission to use engine braking to slow down.

Turning on the system



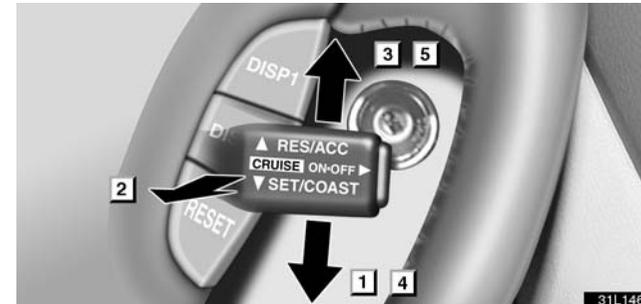
To operate the cruise control, push the main switch. This turns the system on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster shows that you can now set your desired cruising speed. Another push on the switch will turn the system completely off.

When the ignition switch is turned off, the main switch is also automatically turned off. To use the cruise control again, push the main switch again to turn it on.

**CAUTION**

**To avoid accidental cruise control engagement, keep the main switch off when not using the cruise control.**

Setting operation



✂ *Each function is described below.*

**1 Setting at a desired speed.**

The transmission must be in "D" or "4" before you set the cruise control speed.

Bring the vehicle to the desired speed, press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and release it. This sets the vehicle at that speed. Now you may take your foot off the accelerator pedal. If you need acceleration – for example, when passing – depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the set speed. When you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the speed set prior to the acceleration.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

### **2** Cancelling the preset speed

You can cancel the preset speed by either of the following:

- a. Pulling the control lever in the "CANCEL" direction.
- b. Depressing the brake pedal.

If the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will be automatically cancelled.

If the vehicle speed drops 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset speed, the preset speed will also automatically be cancelled.

If the slip indicator light blinks and a warning tone sounds, the preset speed will be automatically cancelled.

If the preset speed automatically cancels out for other than these reasons, do not operate the cruise control. Although it is no problem to continue driving, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer at the earliest opportunity.

### **3** Resetting to a faster speed

Press the control lever upward in the "RES/ACC" direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held upward, the vehicle will gradually gain speed.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be increased 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pressing the control lever upward in the "RES/ACC" direction quickly within 0.6 seconds.

However, a quicker way to reset is to accelerate the vehicle and then press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction.

### **4** Resetting to a slower speed

Press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held downward, the vehicle speed will gradually decrease.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be lowered 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pressing the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction quickly within 0.6 seconds.

However, a quicker way to reset is to depress the brake pedal and then press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction.

Even if you downshift the transmission from the "D" position to "4" with the cruise control on, engine braking will not be applied because the cruise control is not cancelled. To decrease the vehicle speed, reset to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

### **5** Resuming the preset speed

If the preset speed is cancelled by pulling the control lever, by depressing the brake pedal or vehicle skid control activation, pushing the lever up in the "RES/ACC" direction will restore the speed set prior to cancellation. However, once the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will not be resumed.

### Cruise control failure warning

If the "CRUISE" indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes when using the cruise control, push the main switch to turn the system off and then push it again to turn it on.

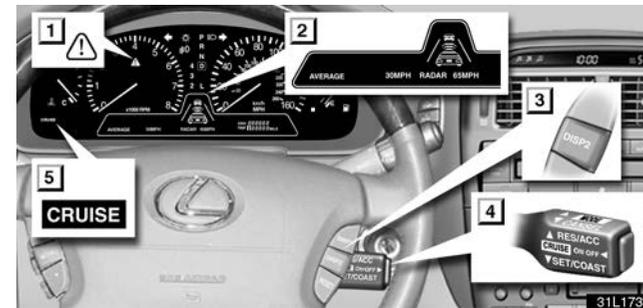
If any of the following conditions then occurs, there is some trouble in the cruise control system.

- ☞ The indicator light does not come on.
- ☞ The indicator light flashes again.
- ☞ The indicator light goes out after it comes on.

If this is the case, contact your Lexus dealer and have your Lexus inspected.

### DYNAMIC LASER CRUISE CONTROL

Dynamic laser cruise control allows you to drive at a selected cruising speed over about 45 km/h (28 mph) with your foot off the accelerator pedal, maintaining an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance. The laser radar sensor detects the reflection of the vehicle ahead in your lane.



- ✕ **1** Master warning light
- 2** Multi-information display
- 3** DISP2 switch (for changing vehicle-to-vehicle distance)
- 4** Cruise control lever
- 5** "CRUISE" indicator light

**3**

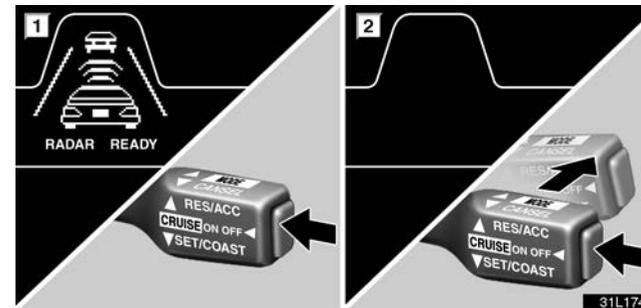
## STARTING AND DRIVING

The dynamic laser cruise control function has 2 cruise control modes: vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode for maintaining an appropriate distance between vehicles, and a conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode for cruising at preset speeds.

### CAUTION

Always drive carefully and attentively when using either cruise control mode. Read and understand the Owner's Manual thoroughly before using the cruise control. To avoid serious injury or death, do not rely on to prevent accidents or to control the vehicle's speed in emergency situations. Do not use cruise control except in appropriate road and traffic conditions.

## Changing the dynamic laser cruise control mode



- ✂ 1 *Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode*
- ✂ 2 *Conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode*

When you push the main switch, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance mode is activated. To change to the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode, push the lever in the "MODE" direction for longer than about 1 second.

However, once the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode activates and is used, it cannot be changed to the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode using the above operation.

To change the mode, turn the main switch off and then on. Next push the lever in the "MODE" direction for longer than about 1 second.

To change to the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode from the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode, push the lever in the "MODE" direction for longer than about 1 second.

 CAUTION

**In the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode, a warning tone does not sound to warn you if you are too close to the vehicle ahead, as neither the presence of the vehicle ahead nor the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is detected. Pay special attention to the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Always confirm the setting in the multi-information display.**

For the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, see the following description. For the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode, see page 269.

**Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

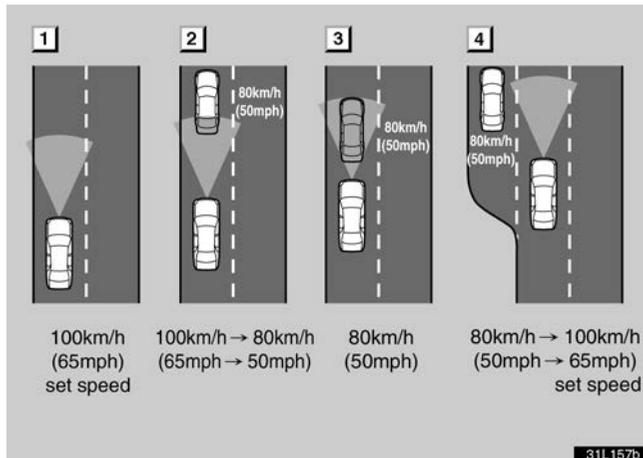
**The laser radar sensor in this system primarily detects the reflectors of the vehicle ahead of you to determine the presence of the vehicle ahead as well as measuring the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. The detection range of the sensor is about 120 m (400 ft.) ahead.**

When the dynamic laser cruise control is on, the driving pattern (PWR, normal, snow) of the automatic transmission is fixed in the normal position, regardless of the position of the selector switch.

 CAUTION

**The dynamic laser cruise control is not a collision-avoidance system and will not prevent accidents. The dynamic laser cruise control is a vehicle speed control device that is intended for use only on freeways or roads where the traffic is light or moderate. To avoid serious injury, you must use caution and be attentive to road and traffic conditions while using dynamic laser cruise control.**

## STARTING AND DRIVING



### ✕ *Dynamic laser cruise control operations*

The dynamic laser cruise control function operates automatically and depending on whether a vehicle is detected ahead may change the speed of your vehicle as follows:

If no vehicle is running ahead of you:

- 1 Cruising at a fixed speed:** If there is no vehicle detected ahead, your cruising speed is maintained at the preset speed from about 45 km/h (28 mph) to about 135 km/h (85 mph). The preset speed is displayed in the multi-information display. For the vehicle speed setting, see "Setting operation" on page 258.

If a vehicle is detected ahead of you:

- 2 Deceleration cruising function:** If a slower moving vehicle is detected ahead of you, your vehicle cruising speed decreases within the range of about 40 km/h (25 mph) to about 135 km/h (85 mph). The multi-information display shows the preset speed, the detected vehicle ahead and selected vehicle-to-vehicle distance. If your vehicle gets closer to the vehicle ahead because of insufficient automatic deceleration, then the warning tone warns you to also manually apply brakes.
- 3 Follow-up cruising function:** After deceleration, your vehicle cruising speed changes in proportion to the speed of the vehicle ahead to maintain an appropriate distance from your vehicle to the vehicle ahead. The vehicle-to-vehicle distance can be changed. For details, see "Changing vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting" on page 263.
- 4 Acceleration cruising function:** If the vehicle ahead changes lanes, your vehicle cruising speed will be gradually increased up to the preset speed, and your vehicle resumes fixed-speed cruising.

### CAUTION

**Under certain conditions where the vehicle in front slows drastically, or is stopped, the dynamic laser cruise control will neither warn you nor decelerate. The driver must depress the brake pedal to slow down, ensuring collision avoidance or that sufficient vehicle-to-vehicle distance is maintained.**

When vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is activated, you must still be attentive to road and traffic conditions. Should your vehicle speed decrease below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the dynamic laser cruise control will shut off, requiring you to apply the brakes to slow. When a vehicle ahead slows suddenly, stops or a vehicle cuts in front, the system may slow your vehicle abruptly, but the automatic braking will cease if the speed decreases below about 40 km/h (25 mph) requiring the driver's manual application of brakes.

 **CAUTION**

**Certain conditions make vehicle detection difficult or impossible.**

-  **As this system operates by detecting primarily the reflectors of the vehicle ahead, the distance cannot be accurately detected in the following cases, resulting in improper vehicle-to-vehicle distance.**
  -  **The vehicle ahead has higher ground clearance, which means that the placement of the reflectors is in a higher position.**
  -  **The rear section of the vehicle ahead is extremely dirty.**
  -  **The vehicle ahead or other vehicles around you are flinging up water or snow.**
  -  **Excessive exhaust gas (black smoke) is coming from the vehicle ahead or other vehicles around you, obscuring your front view.**

-  **Protective film is attached to the reflectors on the vehicle ahead, or reflectors are not installed on the vehicle ahead or are damaged.**
-  **Heavy luggage which is loaded in your trunk or on top of your rear seats is raising up the nose of your vehicle.**
-  **The laser radar sensor automatically detects dirt if dirt is sticking to the sensor glass of your vehicle, and if detected, a message is shown on the multi-information display. However, if the glass sensor is covered with a transparent or translucent vinyl bag, icicle, etc., dirt may not be detected, resulting in improper vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Continue driving with due care to the vehicle ahead. If dirt is detected, the dynamic laser cruise control function is automatically cancelled. Always keep the sensor glass clean.**

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

### CAUTION

- ⓘ Dynamic laser cruise control should not be used in the following conditions, to avoid serious injury or death.
  - ⓘ In bad weather (such as rain, fog, snow, sandstorms or direct sunlight, or when raindrops or snowflakes get in the laser radar sensor glass), the vehicle-to-vehicle distance will not be measured accurately.

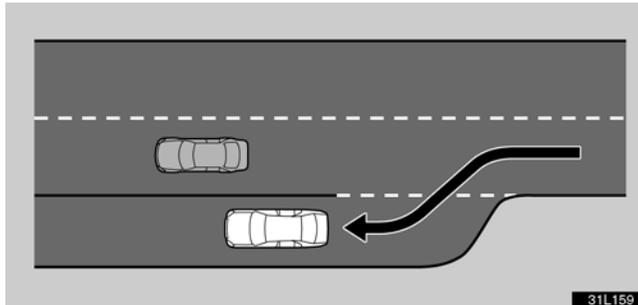
If the wipers are operated at high or low speeds (including the high and low speed operation with the wiper lever in the “AUTO” position), dynamic laser cruise control is automatically cancelled. (In the case of intermittent wiper operation, it is not cancelled.) Dynamic laser cruise control is automatically cancelled when the measurement is extremely unstable due to bad weather.
  - ⓘ On the roads in heavy traffic or at sharp bends:

As an appropriate speed cannot be maintained, serious injury or death could result.
  - ⓘ On slippery road surfaces (icy or snow-covered road surfaces):

The tires will race and you will be unable to control.

- ⓘ On steep downhill slopes:

If there is no vehicle detected ahead, the preset speed will be easily exceeded because of inefficient engine braking, resulting in serious injury or death. (In this case, automatic braking will not work.) If there is a vehicle detected ahead, the delay in deceleration timing could cause serious injury or death.
- ⓘ When the warning tone sounds frequently (because acceleration or deceleration was repeated or sufficient vehicle-to-vehicle distance was not maintained), an appropriate vehicle speed cannot be attained, resulting in serious injury or death.
- ⓘ On roads with steep and short inclines and declines, failure to detect the vehicle ahead will shorten the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead, resulting in serious injury or death.



Dynamic laser cruise control should not be used in circumstances which are inappropriate for any cruise control such as entering freeway on-ramps or off-ramps.

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<p><b>The dynamic laser cruise control should not be used when exiting from, or when entering or merging onto a freeway. When you are following a slower moving vehicle and exiting, the sensor does not detect the vehicle and will accelerate to preset speed.</b></p>

### Turning on the system



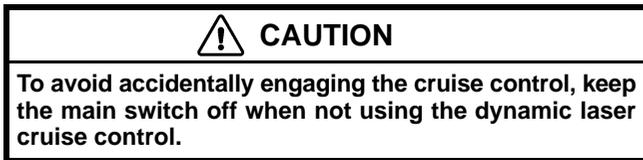
To operate the dynamic laser cruise control, push the main switch. This turns the system on. When the “CRUISE” indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on and “RADAR READY” appears on the multi-information display, you can now set your desired cruising speed and vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Pushing the main switch again will turn the system completely off and “CRUISE OFF” will appear in the multi-information display.

When the ignition is turned off, the main switch is also automatically turned off. To use the dynamic laser cruise control again, push the main switch again to turn it on.

When the ignition is turned off, all the preset data is cleared. When you use the dynamic laser cruise control again, you need to reset the data.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

The multi-information display will return to the vehicle-to-vehicle distance screen about 6 seconds after the vehicle-to-vehicle distance screen has been changed to another screen.



## Setting operation



✕ *Each function is described below.*

### 1 Setting the desired speed

The transmission must be in "D" or "4" before you set the cruise control speed.

After bringing the vehicle to the desired speed, press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and release it. This sets the vehicle at that speed. At this time, the multi-information display indicates settings such as the preset vehicle speed, whether a vehicle is present ahead and selected vehicle-to-vehicle distance. If there is no vehicle detected ahead, the dynamic laser cruise control screen does not display the vehicle ahead. At this time, you may take your foot off the accelerator pedal. If you need to accelerate – for example, when passing – depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the preset speed. When you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the control prior to acceleration.

You cannot set a desired speed if the master warning light comes on, the warning tone sounds and the multi-information display indicates a warning message such as "CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE", "CLEAN RADAR SENSOR" or "CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM". If any of the above messages appears on the display, see "Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode failure warning" on page 267.

If you turn off the main switch while the warning message is displayed, the warning message turns off and the multi-information display switches to another screen. If no warning message appears on the display, when you turn the main switch on again, the setting can be made.

You can change the dynamic laser cruise control screen to another screen even while the warning message is displayed.

### **2** Cancelling the preset speed

You can cancel the preset speed by doing any of the following:

- a. Pulling the control lever toward you, in the "CANCEL" direction.
- b. Depressing the brake pedal.
- c. Pushing the main switch at the end of the cruise control lever.

If cancelled by a. or b., the multi-information display shows "RADAR READY" and the dynamic laser cruise control enters the ready mode.

If cancelled by c., the "CRUISE" indicator light goes off in the instrument panel and the multi-information display shows "CRUISE OFF". In this case, the preset speed data is cleared, and you must set the speed from the beginning.

**In the following cases, the preset speed automatically cancels out. At this time, the multi-information display shows "RADAR READY" and the dynamic laser cruise control enters the ready mode.**

- a. The vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph). (40 km/h (25 mph) is designated as a cancel speed.)
- b. The control lever is pressed downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and held at less than 45 km/h (28 mph). (45 km/h (28 mph) is designated as a lower preset speed limit.)



### **CAUTION**

**In either a. or b., the warning tone reminds you that the dynamic laser cruise control is cancelled and you must apply the brakes to slow the vehicle.**

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

In the following cases, the warning messages appear and the preset speed automatically cancels out. When dynamic laser cruise control is restored, the warning messages turn off and dynamic laser cruise control enters "RADAR READY" mode.

- a. The slip indicator light blinks and a warning tone sounds. (This occurs when the vehicle is about to skid.)
- b. The wipers are operated at high or low speeds (including high and low speed operations with the wiper lever in the "AUTO" position.)
- c. The driving pattern selector switch is set to "SNOW" mode.
- d. The anti-lock brake system is activated by automatic braking. (The warning tone sounds.)
- e. The sensor does not operate properly because a foreign matter sticks to the sensor.

### **NOTICE**

***If the preset speed automatically cancels out for other than the above reasons, do not operate the dynamic laser cruise control and have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer at the earliest opportunity.***

### **3 Resetting to a faster speed**

Press the control lever upward in the "RES/ACC" direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held upward, the vehicle will gradually gain speed.

A quicker way to reset the speed is to accelerate and then press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction.

### **4 Resetting to a slower speed**

Press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and hold it. The vehicle starts to decelerate from the speed at which the lever is operated. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held downward, the vehicle speed will gradually decrease.

A quicker way to reset the preset speed is to depress the brake pedal and then press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction.

If the control lever is released when the vehicle speed exceeds the upper limit of the preset speed traveling downhill while you are pressing the control lever downward, the system will memorize the upper limit of the preset speed as a preset speed.

Shifting the transmission from "D" to "4" will not slow your vehicle as it does when the dynamic laser cruise control is not engaged. To slow down, reset the cruise control to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

**5 Resuming the preset speed**

If the preset speed has been cancelled, when you push the lever up in the "RES/ACC" direction while "RADAR READY" shows up on the multi-information display and at a vehicle speed of about more than 40 km/h (25 mph), the speed set prior to cancellation will be restored.

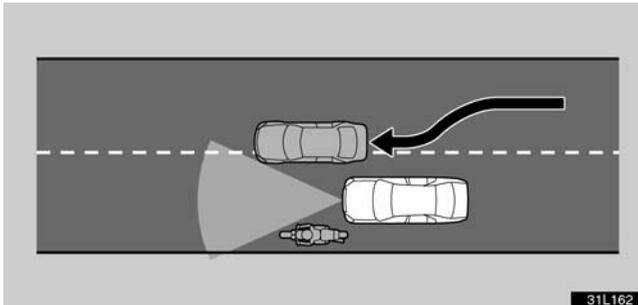
During follow-up cruising, if there are no vehicles running ahead because they have changed lanes, your vehicle will accelerate gradually up to the preset speed. At this time, pushing the control lever upward in the "RES/ACC" direction will quickly speed up your vehicle in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ⓘ **Deceleration cruising function and approach warning do not operate when the vehicle ahead is at a stop or driving very slowly**
- ⓘ **While vehicle-to-vehicle distance control (follow-up cruising) is on, acceleration and deceleration are automatically performed in proportion to the speed of the vehicle ahead detected. However, if the vehicle ahead of you decelerates abruptly or if another vehicle cuts in ahead of you, your vehicle may collide with the vehicle ahead unless you manually depress the brake pedal to slow down your vehicle. If you need to accelerate because the vehicle ahead or you changes lanes, then depress the acceleration pedal.**

ⓘ **Depending on the road configuration (curved roads, left and right continuous curved roads, driving at the start or end of the curve, narrow driving lanes due to road construction) or your vehicle condition (steering wheel maneuvering, position in the lane or unstable driving because of an accident or breakdown), vehicles in other lanes or surrounding objects will be detected, resulting in a control failure or the activated approach warning. This may also result in a very close distance between vehicles due to a failure to detect the vehicle ahead. Maneuvering the steering wheel in response to a violent lateral wind will cause similar conditions.**

## STARTING AND DRIVING



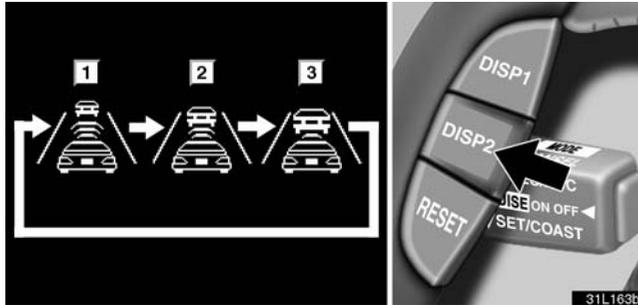
### CAUTION

If other vehicles are driving outside of the laser radar detection range, a delay in the detection of the vehicle cutting in at short range or detection failure of the motorcycle running on the side of the same lane will occur. In this case, the dynamic laser cruise control system will not function properly.

### CAUTION

-  When a slower vehicle in front of you leaves the lane, the dynamic laser cruise control will no longer detect a vehicle ahead and will attempt to accelerate the vehicle to the faster preset speed.
-  When the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control is on (on follow-up cruising), your cruising speed is regulated in proportion to the speed of the vehicle ahead, so increasing the preset vehicle speed using the control lever does not accelerate the vehicle. However, if the vehicle ahead leaves the lane, your cruising speed will increase up to the preset speed because the preset speed has been set higher using the control lever. Confirm the setting on the multi-information display.

**Changing vehicle-to-vehicle distance**



✕ 1 Long 2 Middle 3 Short

You can select one of the following vehicle-to-vehicle distances: “Long”, “Middle” or “Short”. Each time you push the “DISP2” switch briefly, the setting changes from “Long” to “Middle” to “Short” and then back to “Long”. You can confirm the setting on the multi-information display.

It should be noted that pushing the “DISP2” switch longer will change to another screen.

**Your vehicle speed changes in proportion to the speed of the vehicle ahead, maintaining the selected distance. However, if the vehicle speed is slower, the selected distance will be shorter than the designated distance.**

When the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is activated or the multi-information display indicates “RADAR READY”, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting can be changed.

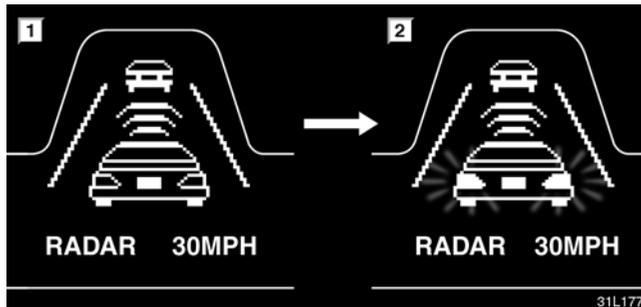
The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is always set to “Long” when the ignition switch is turned on.

 <b>CAUTION</b>	
	Select the vehicle-to-vehicle distance considering traffic conditions. The approximate vehicle-to-vehicle distance based on time interval when driving at 88 km/h (55 mph) is shown below :
	“Long” ..... about 75 m (about 245 ft.)
	“Middle” ..... about 50 m (about 165 ft.)
	“Short” ..... about 30 m (about 100 ft.)
	If the vehicle speed is slower than 88 km/h (55 mph), the distance will be shorter than the above.
	During long downhill driving, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance will be shorter than the selected distance.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

### Braking control

Dynamic laser cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. If an approach warning is activated, depress the brake pedal to decelerate to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



- ✕ 1 ***Under the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control***
- 2 ***Braking activated***

Braking control is operating only when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is selected and your vehicle speed exceeds about 40 km/h (25 mph).

If you are getting closer to the vehicle ahead at relatively higher speed than those of the vehicle ahead or if engine braking cannot be applied properly, braking control is automatically activated. The multi-information display changes as shown in the illustration and the stop/tail lights on your vehicle and on the vehicle on the display come on.

### CAUTION

**Braking control will not ensure that your vehicle will reduce speed appropriately. Do not rely on dynamic laser cruise control to prevent collision.**

Approach warning



**⚠ CAUTION**

While you are cruising in the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, if the vehicle ahead decelerates abruptly or if another vehicle cuts in ahead of you, inadequate braking will make your vehicle closer to the vehicle ahead of you and the multi-information display flashes and beeps. The driver must depress the brake pedal to slow down, ensuring collision avoidance or that sufficient vehicle-to-vehicle distance is maintained.

⚠ The approach warning may not turn on even if the vehicle drives closer to the vehicle ahead in the following conditions:

- ⚠ Your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are cruising at almost the same speed.
- ⚠ The vehicle ahead is cruising at a faster speed than yours. (The distance between the vehicles will become longer.)
- ⚠ Pay special attention to the very slow vehicle at the end of the line in heavy traffic or at the tollgate.
- ⚠ Immediately after the speed setting
- ⚠ The accelerator pedal is depressed or immediately after the release of the accelerator pedal

## STARTING AND DRIVING

### Laser radar sensor



The laser radar sensor is used for vehicle-to-vehicle distance control cruising. When the laser radar sensor is disabled for some reason, the warning message appears on the multi-information display. For details, see “Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode failure warning” on page 267.

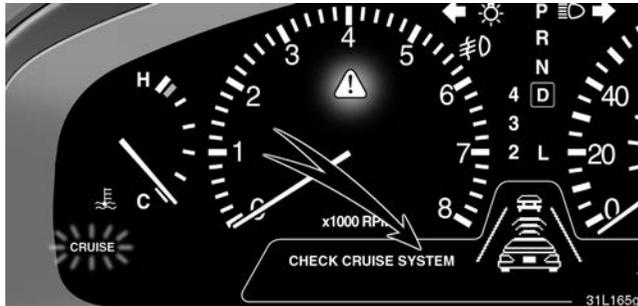
This product is a class I laser product complied with 21 C.F.R part 1040.10.

### CAUTION

To ensure that the dynamic laser cruise control system will function properly while driving, observe the following:

- ⚠ Always keep the laser radar sensor glass clean. When cleaning, use a soft cloth and be careful not to damage the sensor.
- ⚠ Avoid strong impacts around the laser radar sensor. An incorrect laser radar sensor alignment will result in system malfunction. A special device is required to adjust the laser radar sensor alignment. Be sure to have the sensor adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- ⚠ Do not affix a sticker (including a transparent sticker) or attach an accessory around the laser radar sensor.

### Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode failure warning



If there is trouble somewhere in the dynamic laser cruise control while the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is on, the "CRUISE" indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes, the master warning light comes on and the warning tone sounds, and one or more of the following warning messages will appear on the multi-information display.

- ❖ "CLEAN RADAR SENSOR"
- ❖ "CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE"
- ❖ "CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM"

If any warning message shown above appears, the preset speed automatically cancels out. Although it is no problem to continue driving, contact your Lexus dealer.

### CLEAN RADAR SENSOR

If the system cannot easily measure the vehicle-to-vehicle distance because of a dirty laser radar sensor glass while the dynamic laser cruise control is on, the master warning light comes on and the "CRUISE" indicator light flashes, the following message appears and a warning tone sounds.

If this message appears on the screen, clean the sensor glass with a soft cloth and try setting the preset speed again. If the dirt is removed without cleaning, the system will automatically enter the "RADAR READY" mode. If the system does not enter the "RADAR READY" mode even after cleaning or the message remains on the display, the system might be malfunctioning. Although it is no problem to continue driving, contact your Lexus dealer.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

The system will illuminate the following display:

**CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE**

**If the system cannot easily measure the vehicle-to-vehicle distance because of the following conditions while the dynamic laser cruise control is on, the master warning light comes on and the “CRUISE” indicator light flashes, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds.**

- ❖ The wipers are operated at high or low speeds
- ❖ Direct sunlight from the front
- ❖ The driving pattern selector switch is set to the “SNOW” mode.
- ❖ It is determined that it is difficult to make a measurement because of bad weather (such as rainy, foggy, or snowy weather)

**In the following cases, the dynamic laser cruise control switches to the “RADAR READY” mode:**

- ❖ The wipers are stopped or are switched to intermittent operation. (Including intermittent and stopped wipers in the “AUTO” position)
- ❖ No direct sunlight from the front
- ❖ The driving pattern selector switch is changed to the “Normal” or “Power” position.

In the above conditions, press the control lever upward in the “RES/ACC” direction and release it. The dynamic laser cruise control will be restored, however, even after the weather clears, if the setting operation cannot be performed or if the warning message still appears, the system might have malfunctioned.

Although it is no problem to continue driving, contact your Lexus dealer.

**CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM**

**If a system malfunction is detected when dynamic laser cruise control is in the “RADAR READY” mode or operating, the master warning light comes on, the above message appears and a warning tone sounds.**

If this message appears, stop your vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition off, and then restart it to reset the system. If the setting still cannot be made or the same message appears again, the system might have malfunctioned. Although it is no problem to continue driving, contact your Lexus dealer.

**NOTICE**

*While you are cruising with the dynamic laser cruise control on, if the master warning light comes on, the cruise indicator light flashes, "CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM" appears on the multi-information display and the warning tone sounds, turn the ignition switch off and then on again. If the function is cancelled again after setting or if settings cannot be made, the dynamic laser cruise control system may be malfunctioning. Although it is no problem to continue driving, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.*

**Conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode**

This mode allows you to cruise at a desired speed over about 45 km/h (28 mph) with your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Cruising speed can be maintained, although a slight speed change may occur when driving up or down a gradient, within the limits of engine performance. On steeper hills, the speed will change more radically so it is better to drive without cruise control.

When cruise control is on, the driving pattern of the automatic transmission is fixed in the normal position, regardless of the position of the selector switch.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

### CAUTION

- In the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode, an approach warning does not activate even if you are too close to the vehicle ahead, as neither the presence of the vehicle ahead nor the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is detected. Pay special attention to the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Always confirm the setting in the multi-information display.
- The conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode of the dynamic laser cruise control should not be used in the following conditions, which could result in serious injury or death.
  - To help maintain maximum control of your vehicle, do not use fixed speed control mode when using dynamic laser cruise control while driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads.
  - Avoid vehicle speed increasing when driving downhill. If the vehicle speed is too fast in relation to the preset speed in the fixed speed control mode, cancel the fixed control mode and then downshift the transmission to use engine braking to slow down.

### Turning on the system



To operate conventional cruise control mode, push the main switch. This turns the system on. The “CRUISE” indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on and “RADAR READY” appears on the multi-information display. Push the control lever in the “MODE” direction for longer than 1 second to change to conventional cruise control mode. The indicator on the multi-information display is as shown. You can now set your desired cruising speed. Pushing the main switch again will turn the system completely off and “CRUISE OFF” will appear in the multi-information display.

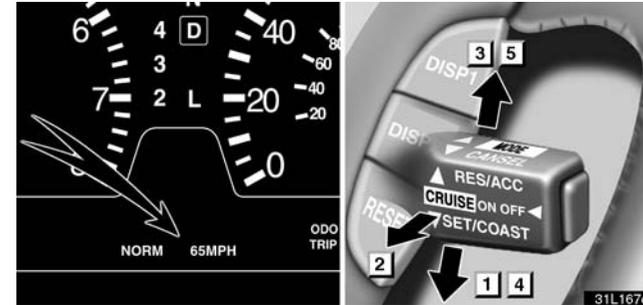
However, once the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode activates and is used, it cannot be changed to the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode using the above operation.

When the ignition switch is turned off, the main switch is also automatically turned off. To use the dynamic laser cruise control again, push the main switch again to turn it on.

**⚠ CAUTION**

To avoid accidentally engaging cruise control, keep the main switch off when not using dynamic laser cruise control.

**Setting operation**



✂ Each function is described below.

**1 Setting the desired speed**

The transmission must be in "D" or "4" before you set the cruise control speed in the conventional cruise control mode of the dynamic laser cruise control.

After bringing the vehicle to the desired speed, press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and release it. This sets the vehicle at that speed and the multi-information display shows the preset speed. At this time, you may take your foot off the accelerator pedal. If you need to accelerate – for example, when passing – depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the preset speed. When you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the speed set prior to acceleration.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

You cannot set a desired speed if the master warning light comes on, the warning tone sounds and the multi-information display indicates a warning message such as "CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM". If this message appears on the display, see "Conventional cruise control mode failure warning" on page 274.

If you turn off the main switch while the warning message is displayed, the warning message turns off and the multi-information display switches to another screen. When you turn the main switch on again, the warning message comes back on the display. If no warning message appears on the display, the setting can be made.

You can change the dynamic laser cruise control screen to another screen even while the warning message is displayed.

### **2** Cancelling the preset speed

You can cancel the preset speed by doing any of the following:

- a. Pulling the control lever in the "CANCEL" direction.
- b. Depressing the brake pedal.
- c. Turning off the main switch.

If cancelled by a. or b., the multi-information display shows nothing and the conventional cruise control enters the ready mode.

If cancelled by c., the "CRUISE" indicator light goes off in the instrument panel and the multi-information display shows "CRUISE OFF". In this case, the preset speed data is cleared, and you must set the speed from the beginning.

### **In the following cases, the preset speed automatically cancels out:**

- a. The vehicle speed falls below about 40km/h (25 mph).
- b. If the vehicle speed drops 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset speed, the preset speed will also automatically be cancelled.
- c. The control lever is pressed downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and held at less than about 45 km/h (28 mph). (45 km/h (28 mph) is designated as a lower preset speed limit .)
- d. The slip indicator light blinks and a warning tone sounds. (This occurs when the vehicle is about to skid.)

If the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed data is cleared and you must set the speed from the beginning.

If cancelled by the above cases, the multi-information display shows nothing and the conventional cruise control enters the ready mode.

If the preset speed automatically cancels out for other than the above reasons, do not operate the cruise control. Although it is no problem to continue driving, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer at the earliest opportunity.

### **3** Resetting to a faster speed

Press the control lever upward in the "RES/ACC" direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held upward, the vehicle will gradually gain speed.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be increased 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pressing the control lever upward in the "RES/ACC" direction quickly within 0.6 seconds.

A quicker way to reset the speed is to accelerate and then press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction.

### **4** Resetting to a slower speed

Press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held downward, the vehicle speed will gradually decrease.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be lowered 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pressing the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction quickly within 0.6 seconds.

A quicker way to reset the preset speed is to depress the brake pedal and then press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction.

Even if you downshift the transmission from the "D" position to "4" in the conventional cruise control mode, engine braking will not be applied because this mode is not cancelled. To slow down, reset the cruise control to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

### 5 Resuming the preset speed

If the preset speed is cancelled by pulling the control lever, by depressing the brake pedal or vehicle skid control activation, pushing the lever up in the "RES/ACC" direction will restore the speed set prior to cancellation. However, once the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will not be resumed.

### Conventional cruise control mode failure warning

If there is trouble in the conventional cruise control mode, the "CRUISE" indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes, the master warning light comes on and the warning tone sounds, the warning message "CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM" will appear on the multi-information display.

**CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM**

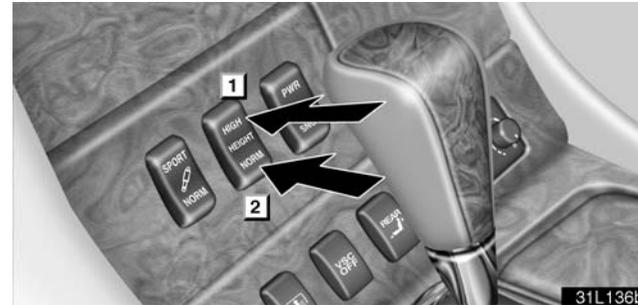
**If a system malfunction is detected when the conventional cruise control mode is in the ready mode or operating, the master warning light comes on, a warning tone sounds and the above message appears.**

If this message appears, push the main switch to turn the system off and then push it again to turn it on. If the setting still cannot be made or the same message appears again, the system might have malfunctioned. Although it is no problem to continue driving, contact your Lexus dealer.

## ELECTRONICALLY MODULATED AIR SUSPENSION

**This electronically modulated air suspension adjusts the damping effect on the shock absorbers and the vehicle height. This adjustment is automatically made in response to the driving conditions to provide good riding comfort and stability in all driving conditions.**

### (a) Vehicle height adjustment



✕ 1 High position 2 Normal position

**This system maintains a stable vehicle height, regardless of occupants and luggage weight. Select either of the following modes using a selector switch.**

**Normal mode:** Suitable for driving on roads with a normal surface.

**High mode:** Suitable for driving on rough roads which are unsurfaced or continually bumpy.

The damping effect is set slightly firmer in the high mode. So you may feel the vibration of the vehicle compared to in the normal mode. However, this does not mean a malfunction in the system. We recommend you use a normal mode in normal driving.

To change the mode, push the selector switch.

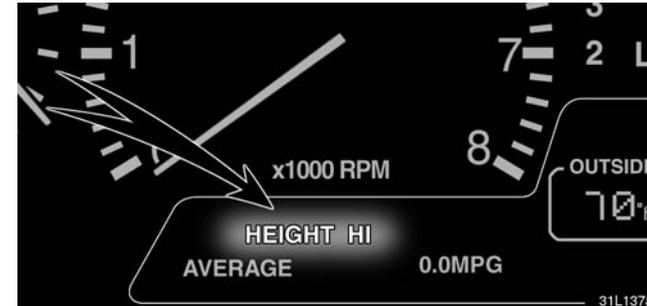
**Normal mode:**

The vehicle height remains at normal height at all driving speeds.

**High mode:**

The vehicle height switches between the following two vehicle heights according to the driving conditions:

Vehicle height	Driving condition
Normal	Medium and high speed driving
High	Low speed driving



The indicator light shows the high mode is selected.

3

**NOTICE**

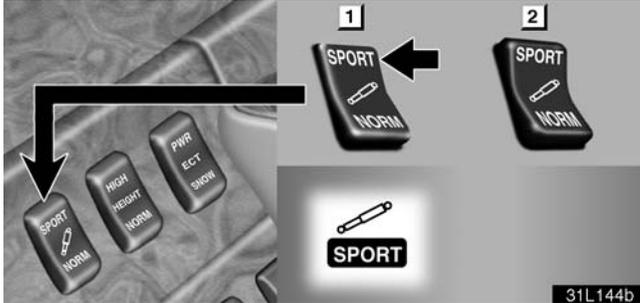
*For vehicles equipped with the height control switch, be sure to turn the ignition switch off before jacking. If this is not done, the vehicle height adjustment function will operate, which may cause body damage.*

**Malfunction warning**

If the system is malfunctioning, “HEIGHT HI” appears on the multi-information display, the master warning light comes on and a warning tone sounds. Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer at the first opportunity.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

### (b) Damping mode selection



✕ **1 Sports position** **2 Normal position**

The damping effect on the shock absorbers is adjusted. Select either of the following modes using a selector switch.

**Normal mode:** Suitable for ordinary driving.

**Sports mode:** Suitable for sporty type driving, such as on winding mountain roads and high speed driving.

To turn on the sports mode, push the selector switch on the “SPORT” side. The indicator comes on in the instrument cluster and a stronger damping effect than that in normal mode is automatically provided.

To change to the normal mode, push the switch to the “NORM” side.

## TRACTION CONTROL SYSTEM

The traction control system automatically helps control the spinning of the rear wheels which may occur when accelerating on slippery road surfaces, thus assisting driver to control the driving power of the rear wheels.



✕ **Slip indicator light**

**When you turn the ignition switch on, this system always turns on. Leave the system on during ordinary driving so that it can operate when needed. When traction control is applied, the slip indicator light blinks.**

You may hear a sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds when the engine is started or just after the vehicle is started. This means that the traction control system is in the self-check mode, and does not indicate malfunction.

When the traction control system is operating, you may feel vibration of your vehicle, caused by operation of the brakes. This indicates the system is functioning properly.

When getting the vehicle out of mud or new snow, etc. the traction control system will help operate to prevent the wheels from spinning.

To turn off the traction control system, see page 278.

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<p>Under certain slippery road conditions, full traction of the vehicle and power to the rear wheels cannot be maintained, even though the traction control system is in operation. Do not drive the vehicle under any speed or maneuvering conditions which will cause the vehicle to lose traction. In situations where the road surface is covered with ice or snow, your vehicle should be fitted with snow tires or tire chains. Always drive at an appropriate and cautious pace.</p>

## VEHICLE SKID CONTROL SYSTEM

The vehicle skid control system helps to provide integrated control of the systems such as an anti-lock brake system, traction control, engine control, electronically modulated air suspension, etc. This system automatically controls the output of the brakes or engine to help prevent the vehicle from skidding when cornering on a slippery road surface or abrupt steering wheel operation occurs.



 **Slip indicator light**

If the vehicle is going to skid during driving, the slip indicator light flashes and an alarm sounds.

The vehicle skid control activates when the vehicle speed is about more than 15 km/h (9 mph).

**3**

## STARTING AND DRIVING

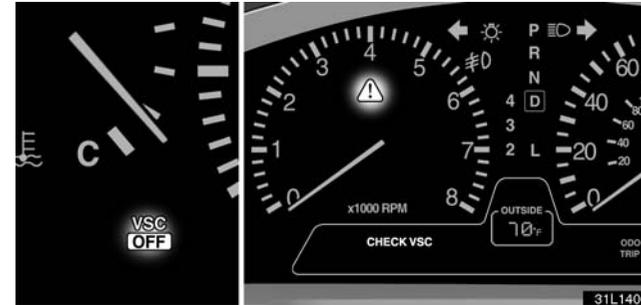
You may hear a sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds when the engine is started or just after the vehicle is started. This means that the vehicle skid control is in the self-check mode and does not indicate a malfunction.



You can turn off the vehicle skid control system by pushing the "VSC OFF" switch. The "VSC OFF" indicator comes on. At this time, the traction control system also turns off. You cannot turn off either one of them. Pushing the "VSC OFF" switch a second time turns the system back on and extinguishes the "VSC OFF" indicator light.

When you turn the ignition switch on, this system always turns on.

## Vehicle skid control failure warning



If the vehicle skid control system or the traction control system malfunctions, the master warning light and "VSC OFF" indicator light come on. At this time the warning message appears in the multi-information display. And the warning tone sounds.

If the message appears, the vehicle skid control system and traction control system do not work. Although it is no problem to continue driving, have your vehicle checked by Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

 CAUTION

- ⓘ Do not rely excessively on the vehicle skid control system. Even if the vehicle skid control system is operating, it is not that your vehicle is absolutely safe. Reckless driving will result in an unexpected accident. Always keep safety driving in mind. If the slip indicator light flashes, sounding an alarm, special care should be taken while driving.
- ⓘ Only use tires of specified size. The size, manufacturer, brand and tread pattern for all 4 tires should be the same. If you use the tires other than specified, or different type or size, the vehicle skid control system may not function correctly. When replacing the tires or wheels, contact your Lexus dealer.

## BRAKE SYSTEM

The tandem master cylinder brake system is a hydraulic system with two separate sub-systems. If either sub-system should fail, the other will still work. However, the pedal will be harder to press, and your stopping distance will be longer. Also, the brake system warning light may come on.

 CAUTION

**Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.**

### Brake booster

The brake booster uses engine vacuum to power-assist the brakes. If the engine should quit while you are driving, you can bring the vehicle to a stop with normal pedal pressure. There is enough reserved vacuum for one or two stops but no more!

 CAUTION

- ⓘ Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls. Each push on the pedal uses up your reserved vacuum.
- ⓘ Even if the power assist is completely lost, the brakes will still work. But you will have to push the pedal hard, much harder than normal. And your braking distance will be longer.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

### Anti-lock brake system

The anti-lock brake system is designed to automatically help prevent lock-up of the wheels during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces. This assists in providing directional stability and steering performance of the vehicle under these circumstances.

**Effective way to press the ABS brake pedal:** When the anti-lock brake system function is in action, you may feel the brake pedal pulsating and hear a noise. In this situation, to let the anti-lock brake system work for you, just hold the brake pedal down more firmly. Do not pump the brake in a panic stop. This will result in reduced braking performance.

The anti-lock brake system becomes operative after the vehicle has accelerated to a speed in excess of approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). It stops operating when the vehicle decelerates to a speed below approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

Depressing the brake pedal on slippery road surfaces such as on the manhole cover, the steel plate under the construction, joints in the bridge, etc. on a rainy day tends to activate the anti-lock brake system.

You may hear a click or motor sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds when the engine is started or just after the vehicle is started. This means that the anti-lock brake system is in the self-check mode, and does not indicate a malfunction.

When the anti-lock brake system is activated, the following conditions may occur. They do not indicate a malfunction of the system:

- You may hear the anti-lock brake system operating and feel the brake pedal pulsating and the vibrations of the vehicle body and steering wheel. You may also hear the motor sound in the engine compartment even after the vehicle is stopped.
- At the end of the anti-lock brake system activation, the brake pedal may move a little forward.

### CAUTION

**Do not overestimate the anti-lock brake system: Although the anti-lock brake system assists in providing vehicle control, it is still important to drive with all due care and maintain a moderate speed and safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, because there are limits to the vehicle stability and effectiveness of steering wheel operation even with the anti-lock brake system on.**

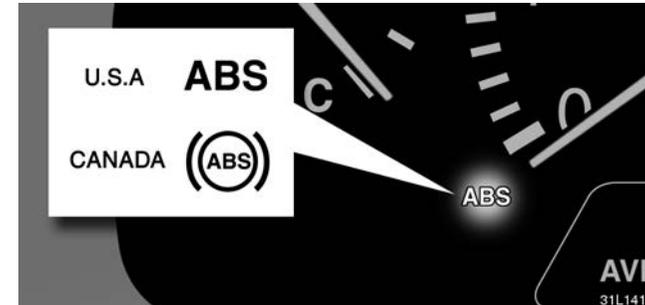
**If tires grip performance exceeds its capability, or if hydroplaning occurs during high speed driving in the rain, the anti-lock brake system does not provide vehicle control.**

Anti-lock brake system is not designed to shorten the stopping distance: Always drive at the moderate speed and maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you. Compared with vehicles without an anti-lock brake system, your vehicle may require a longer stopping distance in the following cases:

- ❖ Driving on rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.
- ❖ Driving with tire chains installed.
- ❖ Driving over the steps such as the joints on the road.
- ❖ Driving on roads where the road surface is pitted or has other differences in surface height.

**Install all 4 tires of specified size at appropriate pressure: The anti-lock brake system detects vehicle speeds using the speed sensors for respective wheels' turning speeds. The use of tires other than specified may fail to detect the accurate turning speed resulting in a longer stopping distance.**

"ABS" warning light



The light comes on when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system and the brake assist system work properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if either of the systems malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system, the brake assist system, the traction control system and/or the vehicle skid control system do/does not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the parts monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- ❖ The light does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, or remains on.
- ❖ The light comes on while you are driving.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.



### CAUTION

**If the "ABS" warning light remains on together with the brake system warning light, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

**In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.**

### Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drums are replaced.

Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding-down.

### Brake assist system

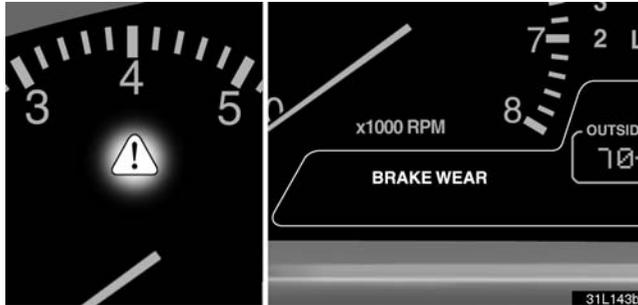
**If you slam the brakes on such as in an emergency or apply the brakes more firmly than usual such as when descending the hill with the designated number of occupants in the vehicle, the brake assist system provides more powerful braking.**

If you slam the brakes on or apply the brakes more firmly, more powerful braking will be applied. At this time, you may hear a sound in the engine compartment and feel the vibrations of the brake pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

The brake assist system becomes operative after the vehicle has accelerated to a speed in excess of approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). It stops operating when the vehicle decelerates to a speed below approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

For an explanation of this system's warning light, see "ABS" warning light on page 51 or 281.

### Brake pad wear limit warning message



**When your brake pads are worn enough to require replacement, the warning tone sounds, the master warning light blinks and brake pad wear warning message in the multi-information display appears.**

If the warning message in the multi-information display appears while driving, have the brake pads checked and replaced by your nearest Lexus dealer immediately.

Continuous driving without replacing the brake pads will cause expensive rotor damage and increasing brake pedal effort to get the same stopping distance.

## TYPES OF TIRES

Determine what kind of tires your vehicle is originally equipped with.

### 1. All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use all year round.

All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

### 2. Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed capability tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions.

Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

## STARTING AND DRIVING

---

 **CAUTION**

-  Do not mix all season and summer tires on your vehicle as this can cause dangerous handling characteristics, resulting in loss of control.
-  Do not use tires other than the manufacturer's designated tires, and never mix tires or wheels of the sizes different from the originals.

## **SECTION 3-2**

---

### **STARTING AND DRIVING**

#### **Driving tips**

Break-in period .....	286
Operation in foreign countries .....	286
Tips for driving in various conditions .....	286
Winter driving tips .....	288
Dinghy towing .....	289
Trailer towing .....	289
How to save fuel and make your vehicle last longer .....	295

## DRIVING TIPS

---

### BREAK-IN PERIOD

**Drive gently and avoid high speeds.**

You need not follow a break-in schedule with your new Lexus. But following a few simple tips for the first 1600 km (1000 miles) can add to the future economy and long life of your vehicle:

- ⚙️ Avoid full throttle acceleration when starting and driving.
- ⚙️ Avoid racing the engine.
- ⚙️ Try to avoid hard stops during the first 300 km (200 miles).
- ⚙️ Do not drive for a long time at any single speed, either fast or slow.
- ⚙️ Do not tow a trailer during the first 800 km (500 miles).

### OPERATION IN FOREIGN COUNTRIES

**If you plan to drive your Lexus in another country ...**

**First**, comply with the vehicle registration laws.

**Second**, confirm the availability of the correct fuel (unleaded and minimum octane rating).

### TIPS FOR DRIVING IN VARIOUS CONDITIONS

- ⚙️ Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. This will allow you much better control.
- ⚙️ Drive slowly onto curbs and, if possible, at a right angle. Avoid driving onto high, sharp-edged objects and other road hazards. Failure to do so can lead to severe tire damage resulting in tire bursts. Drive slowly when passing over bumps or travelling on a bumpy road. Otherwise, the impact could cause severe damage to the tires and/or wheels.
- ⚙️ When parking on a hill, turn the front wheels until they touch the curb so that the vehicle will not roll. Apply the parking brake, and place the transmission in "P". If necessary, block the wheels.
- ⚙️ Washing your vehicle or driving through deep water may get the brakes wet. To see whether they are wet, check that there is no traffic near you and then press the pedal lightly. If you do not feel a normal braking force, the brakes are probably wet. To dry them, drive the vehicle cautiously while lightly pressing the brake pedal with the parking brake applied. If they still do not work safely, pull to the side of the road and call a Lexus dealer for assistance.

 **CAUTION**

- ⚠ Before driving off, make sure the parking brake is fully released and that the parking brake reminder light is off.
- ⚠ Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- ⚠ Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. It can cause dangerous overheating, needless wear, and poor fuel economy.
- ⚠ To drive down a long or steep hill, reduce your speed and downshift. Remember, if you ride the brakes excessively, they may overheat and not work properly. See page 238.
- ⚠ Be careful when accelerating, upshifting, downshifting or braking on a slippery surface. The abrupt change in engine speed, such as sudden acceleration or engine braking, could cause the vehicle to spin or skid.
- ⚠ Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 140 km/h (85 mph) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 140 km/h (85 mph) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.

- ⚠ Do not continue normal driving when the brakes are wet. If they are wet, your vehicle will require a longer stopping distance, and it may pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Also, the parking brake will not hold the vehicle securely.

## DRIVING TIPS

---

### WINTER DRIVING TIPS

**Make sure you have a proper freeze protection of engine coolant.**

Your coolant must contain ethylene–glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components. Use "Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant" or equivalent. See "Checking the engine coolant level" on page 361 for instructions.

**NOTICE**

***Do not use alcohol type antifreeze or plain water alone.***

When it is extremely cold, we recommend to use 60% solution for your Lexus, to provide protection down to about  $-50^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-58^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). Do not use more than 70% solution for better coolant performance.

**Check the condition of the battery and cables.**

Cold temperatures reduce the capacity of any battery, so it must be in top shape to provide enough power for winter starting. Page 390 tells you how to visually inspect the battery. Your Lexus dealer and most service stations will be pleased to check the battery charge level.

**Make sure the engine oil viscosity is suitable for the cold weather.**

See page 360 for recommended viscosity. Leaving a heavy summer oil in your vehicle during winter months may cause harder starting. If you are not sure about which oil to use, call your Lexus dealer – they will be pleased to help.

**Check the electronic ignition system for loose connections or obvious damage.**

**Keep the door locks from freezing.**

Squirt lock de–icer or glycerine into the locks to keep them from freezing.

**Use a washer fluid containing an antifreeze solution.**

This product is available at your Lexus dealer and most auto parts stores. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with water.

**NOTICE**

***Do not use engine antifreeze or any other substitute because it may damage your vehicle's paint.***

**Do not use your parking brake when there is a possibility it could freeze.**

When parking, put the transmission into "P" and block the front wheels. Do not use the parking brake, or snow or water accumulated in and around the parking brake mechanism may freeze the parking brake, making it hard to release.

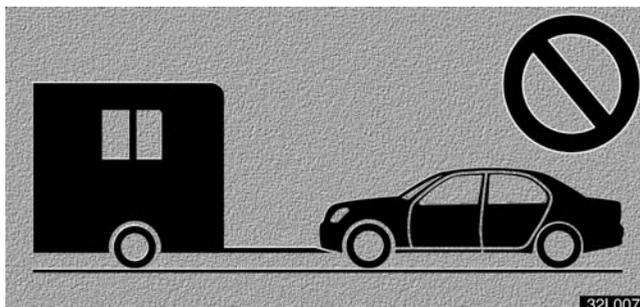
**Keep ice and snow from accumulating under the fenders.**

Ice and snow built up under your fenders can make steering difficult. During bad winter driving, stop and check under the fenders occasionally.

Depending on where you are driving, we recommend you carry some emergency equipment.

Some of the things you might put in the vehicle are tire chains, window scraper, bag of sand or salt, flares, small shovel, jumper cables, etc.

### DINGHY TOWING



Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with four wheels on the ground) behind a motorhome.

#### NOTICE

*Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to your vehicle.*

### TRAILER TOWING

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability and driving economy (fuel consumption, etc.). Your safety and satisfaction depend on the proper use of correct equipment and cautious driving habits. For your safety and the safety of others, you must not overload your vehicle or trailer. Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes. Ask your local Lexus dealer for further details before towing.

#### NOTICE

*When towing a trailer, be sure to consult your Lexus dealer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.*

## DRIVING TIPS

### Weight limits

**Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.**

The total trailer weight and tongue load can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing station, building supply company, trucking company, junk yard, etc.



✂ Certification label

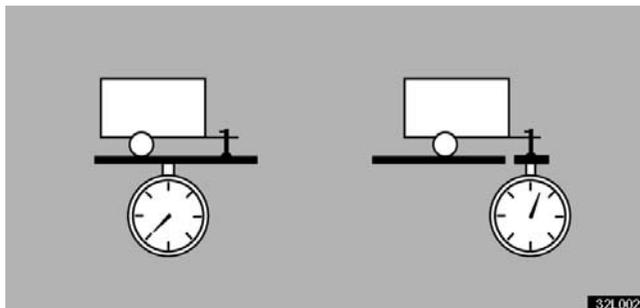
### CAUTION

 The total trailer weight (trailer weight plus its cargo load) must not exceed 907 kg (2000 lb.). Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

 Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be physically capable of towing a higher weight, the operator must determine the maximum weight rating of the particular hitch assembly and never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer hitch. Exceeding the maximum weight rating set by the trailer hitch manufacturer can cause an accident resulting in serious personal injuries.

 The gross vehicle weight must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) indicated on the Certification Label. The gross vehicle weight is the sum weight of the unloaded vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage, hitch and trailer tongue load. It also includes the weight of any special equipment installed on your vehicle.

 The load on either the front or rear axle resulting from distribution of the gross vehicle weight on both axles must not exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) listed on the Certification Label.



✕ Total trailer weight

✕ Tongue load

⚠ The trailer cargo load should be distributed so that the tongue load is 9 to 11 % of the total trailer weight, not exceeding the maximum of 90 kg (200 lb.).

$$\frac{\text{Tongue load}}{\text{Total trailer weight}} \times 100 = 9 \text{ to } 11\%$$

⚠ Never load the trailer with more weight in the back than in the front. About 60 % of the trailer load should be in the front half of the trailer and the remaining 40 % in the rear.

### Hitches

- ⚠ If you wish to install a trailer hitch, your Lexus dealer should be consulted.
- ⚠ Use only a hitch which is recommended by Lexus dealer and conforms to the total trailer weight requirement.
- ⚠ Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer. Lubricate the hitch ball with a light coat of grease.
- ⚠ Lexus recommends removing the trailer hitch whenever you are not towing a trailer to reduce the possibility of additional damage caused by the hitch if your vehicle is struck from behind. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting holes in the vehicle body to prevent entry of pollutants such as exhaust fumes, dirt, water, etc.

#### NOTICE

- ⚠ *Install the trailer hitch using only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.*
- ⚠ *Do not use axle-mounted hitches as they can cause damage to the axle housing, wheel bearings, wheels or tires.*

## DRIVING TIPS

---

### Brakes and safety chains

- 🔔 **Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to any applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.**
- 🔔 **A safety chain must always be used between the towing vehicle and the trailer. Leave sufficient slack in the chain for turns. The chain should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent the tongue from dropping to the ground in case it becomes damaged or separated. For correct safety chain procedures, follow the hitch or trailer manufacturer's recommendations.**

#### CAUTION

- 🔔 **If the total trailer weight exceeds 450 kg (1000 lb.), trailer brakes are required.**
- 🔔 **Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system as it will lower its braking effectiveness.**
- 🔔 **Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is possible danger of the trailer wandering over into another lane.**

### Tires

- 🔔 Ensure that your vehicle's tires are properly inflated. Adjust the tire pressure to the recommended cold tire pressure indicated below:

Tire pressure, kPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, psi)			
P225/60R16 97H	Front	210	(2.1, 30)
	Rear	210	(2.1, 30)
P225/55R17 95H	Front	220	(2.2, 32)
	Rear	220	(2.2, 32)
225/55R17 97W	Front	240	(2.4, 35)
	Rear	240	(2.4, 35)

- 🔔 The trailer tires should be inflated to the pressure recommended by the trailer manufacturer in respect to the total trailer weight.

### Trailer lights

- 🔔 Trailer lights must comply with federal, state/provincial and local regulations. See your local recreational vehicle dealer or rental agency for the correct type of wiring and relays for your trailer. Check for correct operation of the turn signals and stop lights each time you hitch up. Direct splicing may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction of your lights.

### Break-in schedule

- 🔔 Lexus recommends that you do not tow a trailer with a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new power train component (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearing, etc.) for the first 800 km (500 miles) of driving.

### Maintenance

- ⚠ If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. For this information, please refer to the scheduled maintenance information in the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”.
- ⚠ Retighten all fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 1000 km (600 miles) of trailer driving.

### Pre-towing safety check

- ⚠ Check that your vehicle remains level when a loaded or unloaded trailer is hitched. Do not drive if the vehicle has an abnormal nose-up or nose-down condition, and check for improper tongue load, overload, worn suspension or other possible causes.
- ⚠ Make sure the trailer cargo is securely loaded so that it cannot shift.
- ⚠ Check that your rear view mirrors conform to any federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install required rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

### Trailer towing tips

**When towing a trailer, your vehicle will handle differently than when not towing. The three main causes of vehicle-trailer accidents are driver error, excessive speed and improper trailer loading. Keep these in mind when towing:**

- ⚠ Before starting out, check the operation of the lights and all vehicle-trailer connections. After driving a short distance, stop and recheck the lights and connections. Practice turning, stopping and backing with a trailer in an area away from traffic until you learn the feel.
- ⚠ Backing with a trailer is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to the right. (This procedure is generally opposite to that when backing without a trailer.) Also, just turn the steering wheel a little at a time, avoiding sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when backing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- ⚠ Because stopping distance may be increased, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased when towing a trailer. For each 16 km/h (10 mph) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length between you and the vehicle ahead. Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- ⚠ Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.

## DRIVING TIPS

---

- ⚠ Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns. The trailer could hit your vehicle in a tight turn. Slow down before making a turn to avoid the need of sudden braking.
- ⚠ Remember that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Therefore, compensate for this by making a larger than normal turning radius with your vehicle.
- ⚠ Crosswinds and rough roads will adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Pay attention to the rear from time to time to prepare yourself for being passed by large trucks or buses, which may cause your vehicle and trailer to sway. If swaying happens, firmly grip the steering wheel and reduce speed immediately but gradually. Never increase speed. If it is necessary to reduce speed, brake slowly. Steer straight ahead. If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer will stabilize.
- ⚠ Be careful when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- ⚠ In order to maintain efficient engine braking and electrical charging performance, do not use overdrive. Transmission must be in the "4" position.
- ⚠ Because of the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 30°C [85°F]) when going up a long or steep grade with a trailer. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. See "If your vehicle overheats" on page 302.
- ⚠ Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly. Put the transmission in "P". Avoid parking on a slope with a trailer, but if it cannot be avoided, do so only after performing the following:
  1. Apply the brakes and keep them applied.
  2. Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.
  3. When the wheel blocks are in place, release your brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.
  4. Apply the parking brake firmly.
  5. Shift into "P" and turn off the engine.

When restarting out after parking on a slope:

1. With the transmission in "P" position, start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Shift into the "3", "2", "L" or "R" position.
3. Release the parking brake and brake pedal and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply your brakes.
4. Have someone retrieve the blocks.

 **CAUTION**

- ⚠ **Do not exceed 72 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower. Because instability (swaying) of a towing vehicle-trailer combination usually increases as the speed increases, exceeding 72 km/h (45 mph) may cause loss of control.**
- ⚠ **Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts.**
- ⚠ **Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.**

## HOW TO SAVE FUEL AND MAKE YOUR VEHICLE LAST LONGER

Improving fuel economy is easy – just take it easy. It will help make your vehicle last longer, too. Here are some specific tips on how to save money on both fuel and repairs:

- ⚠ **Keep your tires inflated at the correct pressure.** Check the pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. Underinflation causes tire wear and wastes fuel.
- ⚠ **Do not carry unneeded weight in your vehicle.** Excess weight puts a heavier load on the engine, causing greater fuel consumption.
- ⚠ **Avoid lengthy warm-up idling.** Once the engine is running smoothly, begin driving – but gently. Remember, however, that on cold winter days this may take a little longer.
- ⚠ **Accelerate slowly and smoothly.** Avoid jackrabbit starts.
- ⚠ **Avoid long engine idling.** If you have a long wait and you are not in traffic, it is better to turn off the engine and start again later.
- ⚠ **Avoid engine over-revving.** Use a gear position suitable for the road on which you are traveling.
- ⚠ **Avoid continuous speeding up and slowing down.** Stop-and-go driving wastes fuel.

## DRIVING TIPS

---

- 🔧 **Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking.** Maintain a steady pace. Try to time the traffic signals so you only need to stop as little as possible or take advantage of through streets to avoid traffic lights. Keep a proper distance from other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. This will also reduce wear on your brakes.
- 🔧 **Avoid heavy traffic or traffic jams whenever possible.**
- 🔧 **Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal.** This causes premature wear, overheating and poor fuel economy.
- 🔧 **Maintain a moderate speed on highways.** The faster you drive, the greater the fuel consumption. By reducing your speed, you will cut down on fuel consumption.
- 🔧 **Keep the front wheels in proper alignment.** Avoid hitting the curb and slow down on rough roads. Improper alignment not only causes faster tire wear but also puts an extra load on the engine, which, in turn, wastes fuel.
- 🔧 **Keep the bottom of your vehicle free from mud, etc.** This not only lessens weight but also helps prevent corrosion.

- 🔧 **Keep your vehicle tuned-up and in top shape.** A dirty air cleaner, improper valve clearance, dirty plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes not adjusted, etc. all lower engine performance and contribute to poor fuel economy. For longer life of all parts and lower operating costs, keep all maintenance work on schedule, and if you often drive under severe conditions, see that your vehicle receives more frequent maintenance. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”.)

 **CAUTION**

**Never turn off the engine to coast down hills. Your power steering and brake booster will not function without the engine running. Also, the emission control system operates properly only when the engine is running.**

## SECTION 4

---

### IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

#### In case of an emergency

If your engine stalls while driving .....	298
If your vehicle will not start .....	298
If you cannot increase the engine speed .....	302
If your vehicle overheats .....	302
If you have a flat tire .....	303
If your vehicle becomes stuck .....	313
If your vehicle needs to be towed .....	314
If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever .....	320
Lexus link system .....	321
If you lose your keys or lock yourself out .....	330

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

---

### IF YOUR ENGINE STALLS WHILE DRIVING

If your engine stalls while driving . . . .

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try starting the engine again.

If the engine will not start, see "If your vehicle will not start".



#### CAUTION

**If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not work, so steering and braking will be much harder than usual.**

### IF YOUR VEHICLE WILL NOT START

#### (a) Simple checks

Before making these checks, make sure you have followed the correct starting procedure instructions in "How to start the engine" on page 234 and that you have sufficient fuel. Since your vehicle is equipped with the engine immobiliser system, also check whether the other keys will start the engine. If they work, your key may be broken. Have the key checked at your Lexus dealer. If none of your keys work, the system is possibly broken. Call your Lexus dealer. See "Keys" on page 8.

#### If the engine is not turning over or is turning over too slowly –

1. Check that the battery terminals are tight and clean.
2. If the battery terminals are O.K., switch on the interior light.
3. If the light is out, dim or goes out when the starter is cranked, the battery is discharged. You may try jump starting. See "(c) Jump starting" for further instruction.

If the light is O.K., but the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See "Foreword".)

**NOTICE**

***Do not pull- or push-start the vehicle. It may damage the vehicle or cause a collision when the engine starts. Also the three-way catalytic converter may overheat and become a fire hazard.***

**If the engine turns over at its normal speed but will not start –**

1. The engine may be flooded because of repeated cranking. See "(b) Starting a flooded engine" for further instructions.
2. If the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See "Foreword".)

**(b) Starting a flooded engine**

**If the engine will not start, your engine may be flooded because of repeated cranking.**

If this happens, turn the ignition switch to "START" with the accelerator pedal held down. Continue this operation for 30 seconds and then stop cranking. Then try starting the engine with your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If the engine does not start after 30 seconds of cranking, release the ignition switch, wait a few minutes and try again.

If the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See "Foreword".)

**NOTICE**

***Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring systems.***

**(c) Jump starting**

**To avoid serious personal injury and damage to your vehicle which might result from battery explosion, acid burns, electrical burns, or damaged electronic components, these instructions must be followed precisely.**

If you are unsure about how to follow this procedure, we strongly recommend that you seek help from your Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See "Foreword".)

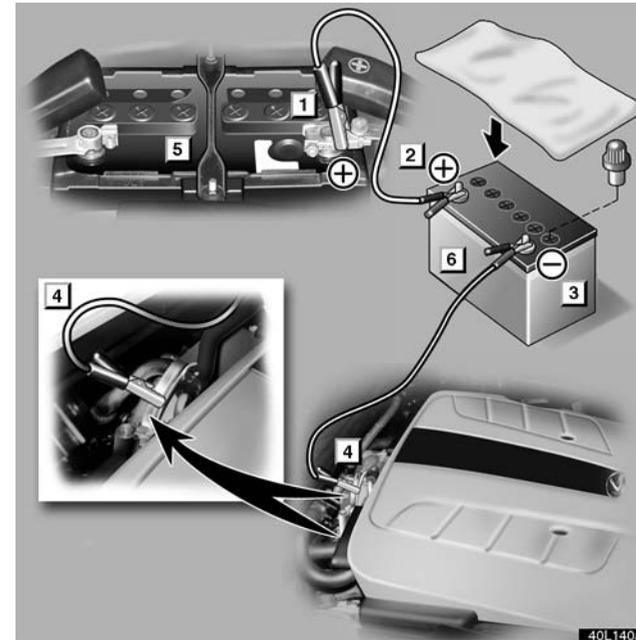
## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

### CAUTION

- ⚠ Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Wear protective safety glasses when jump starting, and avoid spilling acid on your skin, clothing, or vehicle.
- ⚠ If you should accidentally get acid on yourself or in your eyes, remove any contaminated clothing and flush the affected area with water immediately. Then get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while en route to the medical office.
- ⚠ The gas normally produced by a battery will explode if a flame or spark is brought near. Use only standardized jumper cables and do not smoke or light a match while jump starting.
- ⚠ **Warning:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

### NOTICE

*The battery used for boosting must be 12 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the booster battery is correct.*



⌘ **5** Discharged battery **6** Booster battery

### JUMP STARTING PROCEDURE

1. If the booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure the vehicles are not touching. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

2. If required, remove all the vent plugs from the booster battery. Lay a cloth over the open vents on the booster battery. (This helps reduce the explosion hazard, personal injuries and burns.)

If the booster battery is an extended maintenance interval battery, it is not necessary to remove the vent plugs.

3. If the engine in the vehicle with the booster battery is not running, start it and let it run for about 5 minutes. During jump starting, run the engine at about 2000 rpm with the accelerator pedal lightly depressed.

4. Locate positive (+) and negative (-) terminals of each battery. Connect the jumper cables in the exact order ( **1** **2** **3** **4** ) shown in the illustration.

- 1** Connect a positive (red) jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
- 2** Connect the clamp at the other end of the positive (red) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.
- 3** Connect a negative (black) cable clamp to the negative (-) terminal of the booster battery.
- 4** Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative (black) cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point (such as shown in the illustration) away from the battery. Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.



### CAUTION

**When making the connections, to avoid serious injury, do not lean over the battery or accidentally let the jumper cables or clamps touch anything except the correct battery terminals or the ground.**

5. Start your engine in the normal way. After starting, run it at about 2000 rpm for several minutes with the accelerator pedal lightly depressed.

6. Carefully disconnect the cables in the exact reverse order: the negative cable and then the positive cable.

7. Carefully dispose of the battery cover cloths which may now contain sulfuric acid.

8. If removed, replace all the battery vent plugs.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent (for example, lights left on), you should have it checked at your Lexus dealer.

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

---

### IF YOU CANNOT INCREASE THE ENGINE SPEED

If the engine speed does not increase when the accelerator pedal is depressed, the electronic throttle control system may be faulty. Move the vehicle to a safe place by means of creeping and call a Lexus dealer for assistance:

1. Depress the brake pedal and shift to the "D" position.
2. Gradually release the brake pedal, and the vehicle starts to move by creeping. After arriving at a safe place, stop the vehicle and call a Lexus dealer for assistance.

 **CAUTION**

-  **The above method of moving the vehicle is for emergency. Use it only for moving minimum distances to a safe place.**
-  **Be especially careful to prevent erroneous pedal operation.**

### IF YOUR VEHICLE OVERHEATS

If your engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, if you experience a loss of power, or if you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine has probably overheated.

#### When the engine overheats

Pull safely off the road, stop the vehicle and turn on your emergency flashers. Put the transmission in "P" and apply the parking brake.

#### **A: If steam is coming from your engine:**

Turn off the engine. Leave the hood closed until there is no sign of steam or coolant. Your engine could have been seriously damaged already. Call your Lexus dealer for assistance.

 **CAUTION**

**To help avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until there is no steam. Escaping steam or coolant is sign of very high pressure.**

**B: If no steam is coming from your engine:**

Leave the engine running and turn off the air conditioning. Check the following.

- 🔍 Is the cooling fan operating?
- 🔍 Is the coolant in the acceptable range?
- 🔍 Is the engine drive belt O.K.?

 <b>CAUTION</b>
🔍 <b>When the engine is running, keep hands and clothing away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.</b>
🔍 <b>Do not attempt to remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury could result from scalding hot fluid and steam blown out under pressure.</b>

If the cooling fan is not operating or the coolant is not in the acceptable range, turn off the engine and call your Lexus dealer.

If both conditions are O.K., after the engine coolant temperature has cooled to normal, continue driving your vehicle.

If the engine coolant temperature does not cool down, or your vehicle overheats again, have it checked as soon as possible by your Lexus dealer.

**IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE**

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place – well away from the traffic. Avoid stopping on the center divider of a highway. Park on a level spot with firm ground.
2. Stop the engine and turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P".
4. Have everyone get out of the vehicle on the side away from traffic.
5. Read the following instructions thoroughly.

<b>NOTICE</b>
<i>For vehicles equipped with the height control switch, be sure to turn the ignition switch off before jacking. If this is not done, the vehicle height adjustment function will operate, which may cause body damage.</i>

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<b>When jacking, be sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of personal injury:</b>
🔍 <b>Follow jacking instructions.</b>
🔍 <b>Do not put any part of your body under a vehicle supported by a jack. Otherwise, personal injury may occur.</b>

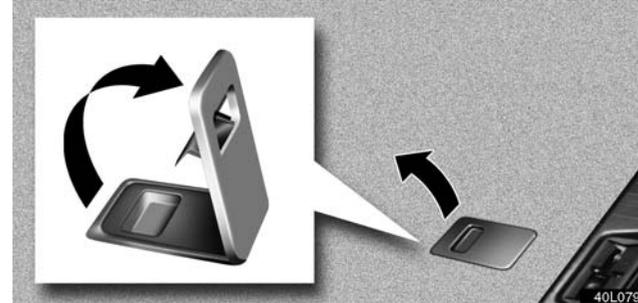
## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

- ⚠ Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- ⚠ Stop the vehicle on a level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P". Block the wheel diagonally opposite to the one being changed if necessary.
- ⚠ Make sure to set the jack properly in the jack point. Raising the vehicle with jack improperly positioned will damage the vehicle or may allow the vehicle to fall off the jack and cause personal injury.
- ⚠ Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone.
- ⚠ Use the jack only for lifting your vehicle during wheel changing.
- ⚠ Do not raise the vehicle with someone in the vehicle.
- ⚠ When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- ⚠ Raise the vehicle only high enough to remove and change the tire.

### **NOTICE**

***Do not continue driving with a deflated tire. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire and wheel beyond repair.***

### Access to spare tire



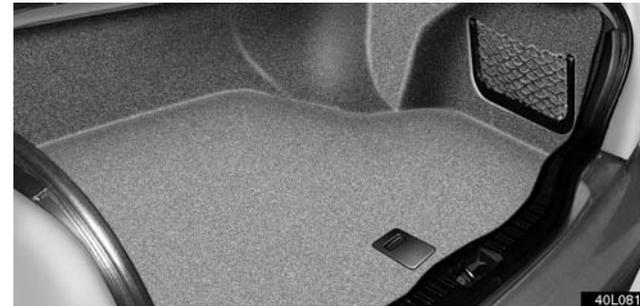
1. Pull up the deck board.

**IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY**



**2. Lift up the back side of the board and secure the board by hooking the lever at the top of the trunk lid opening as shown.**

Make sure the board is secured and does not fall down.



**When closing the board, replace the hook also in its original position as shown.**

***NOTICE***

***If you close the trunk lid with the board hooked, the hook may be damaged.***

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

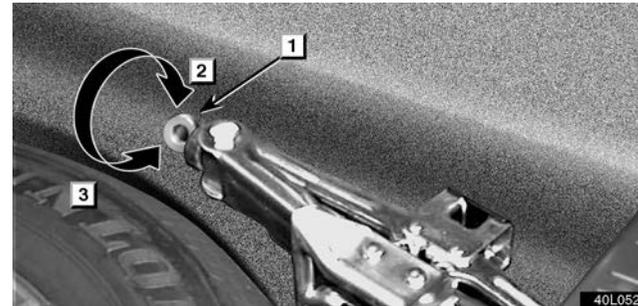
---



- ✕ **1** Tool box **2** Towing eyelet (For emergency towing)  
**3** Jack handle **4** Spare tire **5** Jack

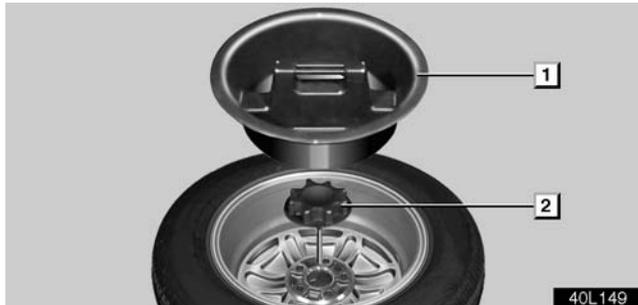
### 1. Get the tool, jack and spare tire.

To prepare yourself for an emergency, you should familiarize yourself with the use of the jack and each tool, and their storage locations.



- ✕ **1** Joint
- 2** When removing the jack, turn the joint by hand in the "contract" direction until the jack is free.
  - 3** When storing, turn the joint by hand in the "expand" direction until the jack is firmly secured to prevent it from flying forward during a collision or sudden braking.

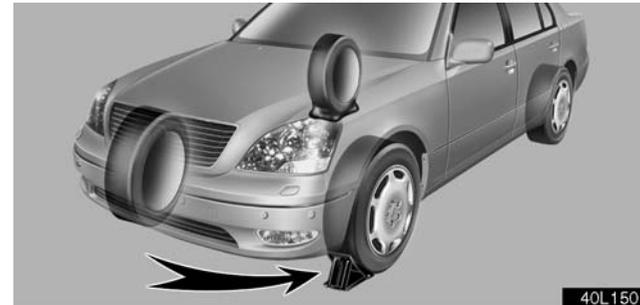
## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



To remove the spare tire:

- 1 Remove the spare tire cover.
- 2 Loosen the bolt and remove it.

When storing the spare tire, place it with the inner side of the wheel facing up. Then bolt the tire in place and install the spare tire cover to prevent the tire from flying forward during a collision or sudden braking.



**2. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire to keep the vehicle from rolling when it is jacked up.**

When blocking a wheel, place a wheel block in front of one of the front wheels or behind one of the rear wheels.

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

---



### 3. Loosen all the wheel nuts.

Always loosen the wheel nuts before raising the vehicle.

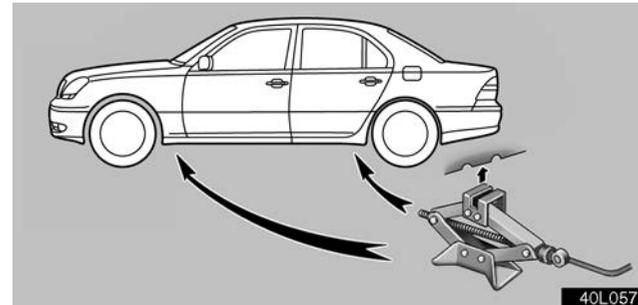
Turn the wheel nuts counterclockwise to loosen them. To get maximum leverage, fit the wrench to the nut so that the handle is on the right side, as shown above. Grab the wrench near the end of the handle and pull up on the handle. Be careful that the wrench does not slip off the nut.

Do not remove the nuts yet – just unscrew them about one-half turn.



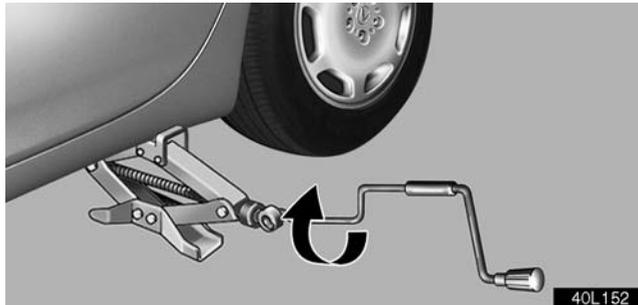
### CAUTION

Never use oil or grease on the bolts or nuts. The nuts may loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could cause a serious accident.



### 4. Position the jack at the jack points as shown.

Make sure the jack is positioned on a level and solid surface.



**5. After making sure no one is in the vehicle, raise it high enough so that the spare tire can be installed.**

Allow for the fact that you need more ground clearance when putting on the spare tire than when removing the flat tire.

To raise the vehicle, insert the jack handle into the jack (it is a loose fit) and turn it clockwise. As the jack touches the vehicle and begins to lift, double-check that it is properly positioned.

 **CAUTION**

**Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone.**



**6. Remove the wheel nuts and remove the flat tire.**

Lift the flat tire straight off and put it aside.

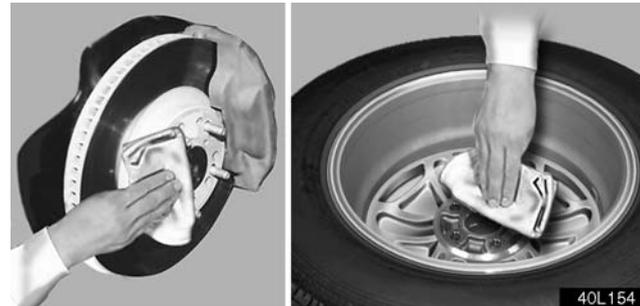
## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

---



### 7. Remove the wheel ornament.

When installing the alloy wheels, at this point, remove the wheel ornament from the flat tire.



Before putting on the wheel, remove any corrosion on the mounting surfaces with a wire brush or such. Installation of wheels without good metal-to-metal contact at the mounting surface can cause wheel nuts to loosen and eventually cause a wheel to come off while driving.



**8. Reinstall all the wheel nuts finger tight.**

Align the holes in the wheel with the bolts. Then lift up the wheel and get at least the top bolt started through its hole. Wiggle the tire and press it back over the other bolts.

Reinstall the wheel nuts and tighten them as much as you can by hand. Press the tire back and see if you can tighten them more.

**CAUTION**

Never use oil or grease on the bolts or nuts. Doing so may lead to overtightening the nuts and damaging the bolts. The nuts may loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could cause a serious accident. If there is oil or grease on any bolt or nut, clean it.



**9. Lower the vehicle completely and tighten the wheel nuts.**

Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.

Use only the wheel nut wrench to tighten the nuts. Do not use other tools or any additional leverage other than your hands, such as a hammer, pipe or your foot. Make sure the wrench is securely engaged over the nut.

Tighten each nut a little at a time in the order shown. Repeat the process until all the nuts are tight.

**CAUTION**

When lowering the vehicle, make sure all portions of your body and all other persons around will not be injured as the vehicle is lowered to the ground.

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

---

 Have the wheel nuts tightened by torque wrench at 103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf.), as soon as possible after changing wheels. Otherwise, the nuts may loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could cause a serious accident.



### 10. Reinstall the wheel ornament.

Put the wheel ornament into position and then tap it firmly with the side or heel of your hand to snap it into place.

### CAUTION

Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.

**11. After changing the wheel, check the air pressure of the replaced tire. Stow all the tools, jack and flat tire securely.**

If the pressure of the replaced tire is low, drive slowly to the nearest service station and fill to the correct pressure.

Do not forget to reinstall the tire valve cap as dirt and moisture could get into the valve core and possible cause air leakage. If the cap is missing, put a new one on as soon as possible.

This is the same procedure for changing or rotating your tires.

 **CAUTION**

**Before driving, make sure all the tools, jack and flat tire are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.**

## IF YOUR VEHICLE BECOMES STUCK

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward.**

**Turn off the vehicle skid control system to become unstuck. (For details, see “Vehicle skid control system” on page 277.)**

 **CAUTION**

**Do not attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

---

### NOTICE

*If you rock your vehicle, observe the following precautions to prevent damage to the transmission and other parts.*

- ⚠ Do not depress the accelerator pedal while shifting the selector lever or before the transmission is completely shifted to forward or reverse gear.*
- ⚠ Do not race the engine and avoid spinning the wheels.*
- ⚠ If your vehicle remains stuck after rocking the vehicle several times, consider other ways such as towing.*

## IF YOUR VEHICLE NEEDS TO BE TOWED

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by your Lexus dealer or a commercial tow truck service. In consultation with them, have your vehicle towed using either (a) or (b).

- (a) Towing with a wheel lift type truck
- (b) Using a flat bed truck
- (c) Never tow with a sling type truck

Only when you cannot receive a towing service from a Lexus dealer or commercial tow truck service, tow your vehicle carefully in accordance with the instructions given in "(d) Emergency towing" on page 318.

Proper equipment will help ensure that your vehicle is not damaged while being towed. Commercial operators are generally aware of the state/provincial and local laws pertaining to towing.

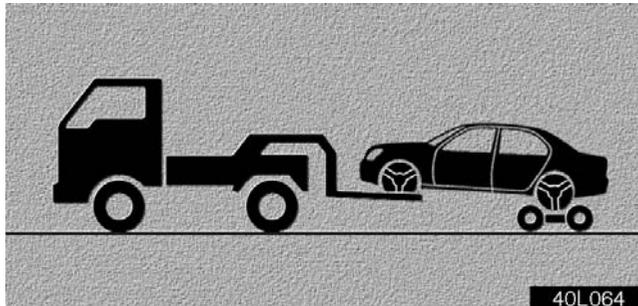
Your vehicle can be damaged if it is towed incorrectly. Although most operators know the correct procedure, it is possible to make a mistake. To avoid damage to your vehicle, make sure the following precautions are observed. If necessary, show this page to the tow truck driver.

### TOWING PRECAUTIONS:

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by the state/provincial and local laws. The wheels and axle on the ground must be in good condition. If they are damaged, use a towing dolly.

(a) Towing with a wheel lift type truck

From front

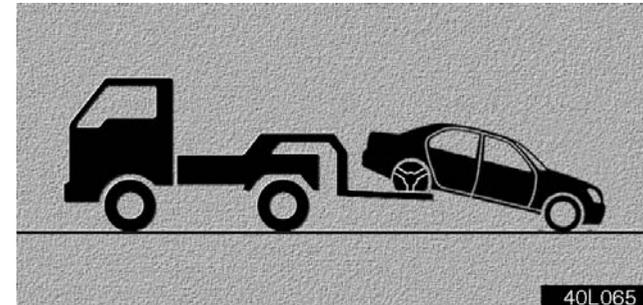


Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

**NOTICE**

*Never tow a vehicle with an automatic transmission from the front with rear wheels on the ground, as this may cause serious damage to the transmission.*

From rear



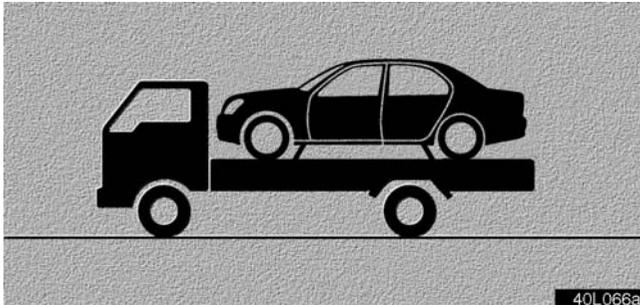
Place the ignition switch in the "ACC" position.

**NOTICE**

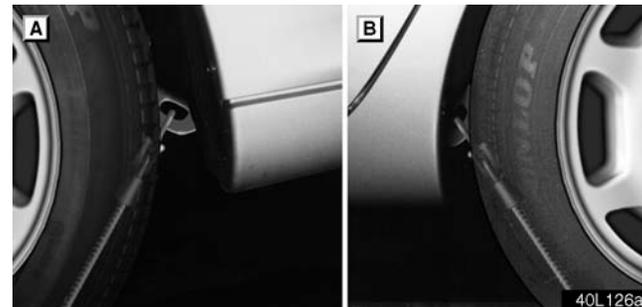
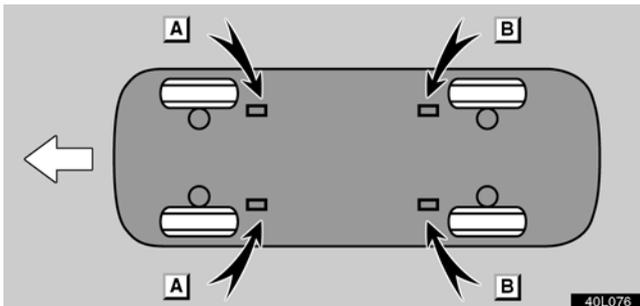
- ⚠ *Do not tow with the key removed or in the "LOCK" position, as the steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.*
- ⚠ *When lifting wheels, take care to ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Otherwise, the bumper and/or underbody of the towed vehicle will be damaged during towing.*

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

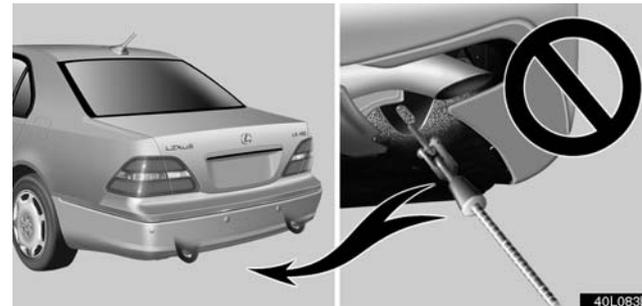
### (b) Using a flat bed truck



🔧 Tie down points



If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed, it should be tied down at locations A and B as shown above.

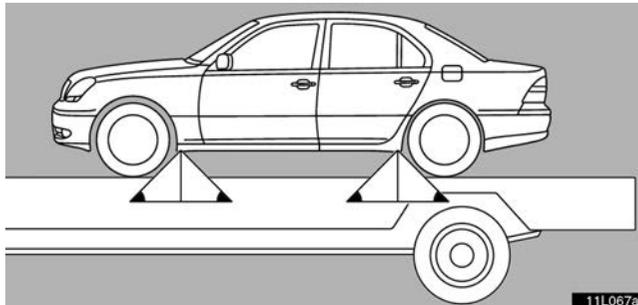


✗ *Rear emergency towing eyelets*

**NOTICE**

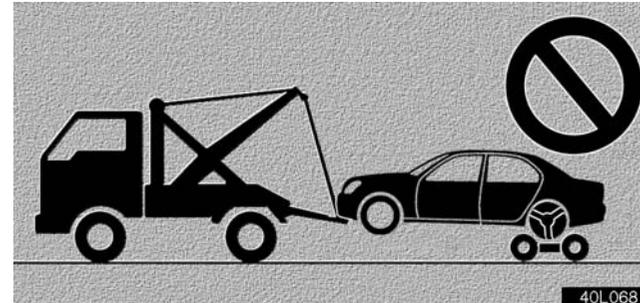
- ⚠ *Do not use the rear emergency towing eyelets.*
- ⚠ *Before your vehicle is transported by flat bed, the height control switch, if so equipped, must be in the "HIGH" mode.*

⚠ **Tie down angle**



If you use chains or wires to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded black must be at 45°.

**(c) Towing with a sling type truck**



**NOTICE**

*Do not tow with a sling type truck, either from the front or rear. This may cause body damage.*

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

### (d) Emergency towing



If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by your Lexus dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

To install the front towing eyelet, see "Installing front towing eyelet" on page 319.

#### **NOTICE**

***Only use specified towing eyelet; otherwise your vehicle may be damaged.***

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

**Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelet and towing cable or chain. The eyelet and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**

#### **NOTICE**

***Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing eyelet provided.***

Before towing, release the parking brake and put the transmission in "N". The ignition switch must be in "ACC" (engine off) or "ON" (engine running).

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

**If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not work so steering and braking will be much harder than usual.**

**(e) Installing front towing eyelet**



1. Remove the front towing eyelet cover on the front bumper by pushing the right side of the cover.



2. Use the front towing eyelet in the trunk. Secure it to the hole on the bumper by turning clockwise. (For the eyelet location, see page 306.)



3. Tighten the front towing eyelet securely by a wheel nut wrench.

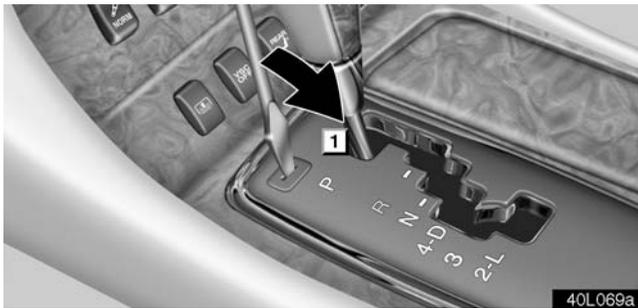
**CAUTION**

When installing the eyelet on the vehicle, be sure to tighten the front eyelet securely. If the tightening is loose, it may come off when being towed and result in death or serious injury.

**IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY**

---

**IF YOU CANNOT SHIFT  
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION  
SELECTOR LEVER**



**If you cannot shift the selector lever, use the shift lock override button as follows:**

- 1 Turn the ignition switch to "LOCK" or "ACC". Make sure the parking brake is applied. Pry up the cover with a flat-bladed screwdriver or equivalent.



- 2 Insert your finger, the screwdriver or equivalent into the hole to push down the shift lock override button. You can shift the selector lever while pushing the button.

**For your safety, keep the brake pedal depressed.**

Be sure to have the system checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

## LEXUS LINK SYSTEM (U.S.A. ONLY)



The Lexus Link System is an in-vehicle communications service that provides you with enhanced safety, security and convenience. With an active subscription you can push the “SERVICES” button for operator assistance or in an emergency situation such as a vehicle accident (in which the airbag was activated), you will automatically be connected to the Lexus Link Call Center which will assist you and/or send help 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

The Lexus Link System can also record your voice or your conversation with the Lexus Link Call Center Advisor.

The Lexus Link System is a subscription-based service. To obtain any of the Lexus Link services you must have enrolled with the Lexus Link Call Center and have an active subscription. It is important to be aware that an active subscription is required to receive safety and security services.

To learn more about your subscription status or how to renew or extend your subscription, please push the “SERVICES” button and speak to the Lexus Link Advisor, or you may dial toll free 1-800-25 Lexus (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987) and select the option for Lexus Link. If you are not enrolled, you will hear the explanation about Lexus Link System. The actual message is shown on “Audible voice prompts” on page 328. If you push the “SERVICES” button again, the services enrollment call will be announced. To cancel the enrollment call, push the “SERVICES” button one more time.

### NOTICE

*This system is only operational in GPS (Global Positioning System) and analog cellular coverage areas. Services may not be available in an area where the GPS and analog cellular phone signals cannot be received.*

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



### **NOTICE**

**Observe the following instructions, or reception by GPS antenna may be affected.**

- Do not place luggage (especially metallic type) on the package tray.**
- Do not apply window tint (especially a conductive or metallic tape) by yourself. Consult with your Lexus dealer if you need to add window tint.**

When the ignition is turned to the “ON” position, “The Lexus Link System is active” is announced to inform you that the system is on. If your Lexus Link subscription expires, you will hear “The Lexus Link System is not active. To activate your Lexus Link System, press the “SERVICES” button now”. To learn more about your subscription status or how to renew or extend your subscription, please push the “SERVICES” button to speak to a Lexus Link Advisor, or you may dial toll free 1-800-25 Lexus (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987) and select the option for Lexus Link. If problems are detected in the Lexus Link System, you will hear “A Lexus Link System error has been detected. Please contact your Lexus dealer.” If you hear this message, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

In some cases, even if your subscription has expired, you may hear “The Lexus Link System is active”. This is due to the time delay required to process the deactivation of your Lexus Link System. During this period, when you push the “SERVICES” button, your call will be forwarded to enrollment. Once the deactivation process has been completed, you will hear “The Lexus Link System is not active”.

### **NOTICE**

**The voice prompt messages are the primary means to let you know the status of your subscription. It is important to be aware that an active subscription is required to receive safety and security services. If these voice prompt messages are disabled and you desire to have them re-activated, contact your Lexus dealer.**

When you push the “- VOL +” button on the “-” side immediately followed by the “PLAY” button, you can hear an explanation about the Lexus Link System. However, this function is not available when you are recording or hearing a playback. See “Audible voice prompts” on page 328 for a written version of this recorder message.

The basic subscriber service package is available free of charge for the first year.

**NOTICE**

***Do not remove the Lexus Link fuse and wiring harness with the ignition on, or an emergency call will be placed to the Lexus Link Call Center.***

**Automatic notifications**

**If an airbag deploys**, an emergency signal is sent automatically to the Lexus Link Call Center. In your vehicle, the system announces “Placing an emergency call to Lexus Link Center.” In response to the signal, the Lexus Link Advisor will attempt to communicate with you first. If the Advisor cannot get any response from you, the Advisor will locate your vehicle through the GPS, call the nearest emergency services provider, describe the situation and your location. If necessary, the Advisor will transfer your call to the emergency services operator.

**If the theft deterrent system on your vehicle is activated**, the Lexus Link System on your vehicle will automatically call the Lexus Link Call Center. The Advisor will attempt to contact you to determine whether the alarm is valid.

If you report to the Lexus Link Call Center that your vehicle has been stolen, the Advisor will locate, track and provide location information to the appropriate law enforcement authority. To protect subscriber privacy, the Lexus Link Call Center will not provide the location of a vehicle to anyone other than a law enforcement authority.

If you accidentally activate the vehicle alarm, push the “UNLOCK” button on the wireless remote control key within 55 seconds after the alarm was set off, or insert the key into the door keyhole or ignition switch. The Lexus Link System will cancel the theft call.

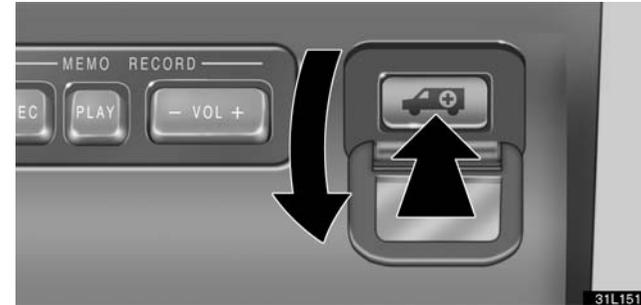
## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

---

### NOTICE

- ⚠ **Once the emergency button is pushed, an emergency call cannot be cancelled.**
- ⚠ **This system is only operational in GPS and analog cellular coverage areas. Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions, door locking/unlocking function) are deactivated.**

### Manual emergency calling



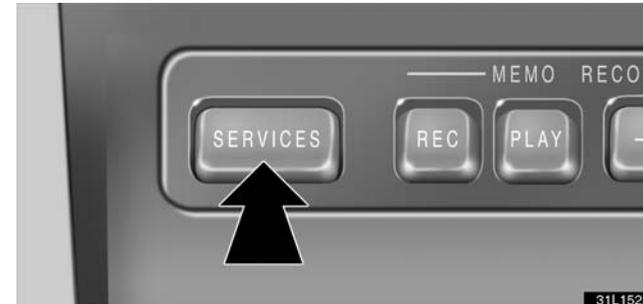
You can place an emergency call manually. Open the cover and push the emergency button. You will hear “Placing an emergency call to Lexus Link Center.” Upon reception of your call, the Advisor will locate your vehicle and contact you to assess the situation. If necessary, the Advisor will alert the nearest emergency service provider. This emergency call should only be made in life-threatening situations.

If your vehicle is stolen, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987). The Center will locate, track and provide location information to the appropriate police authority. To protect subscriber privacy, the Lexus Link Call Center will not provide the location of a vehicle to anyone other than a law enforcement authority.

**NOTICE**

*This system is only operational in GPS and analog cellular coverage areas. Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions, door locking/unlocking function) are deactivated.*

**Other Services**



When you push the “SERVICES” button, you will hear “Calling the Lexus Link Center”. When the Advisor receives your location and ID from the system, the Advisor provides you with the service. The services provided will depend on the level of service package selected.

For details about various services that are available, contact your Lexus dealer, or push the “SERVICES” button and speak to the Lexus Link Advisor, or you may dial toll free 1-800-25 Lexus (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987) and select the option for Lexus Link.

To cancel a services call, push the “SERVICES” button a second time. “Lexus Link call cancelled” will be announced.

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

---

If any problem concerning the Lexus Link System occurs during driving, the system will announce "A Lexus Link System error has been detected. Please contact your Lexus dealer." If you hear this message, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

### **Lexus Link services may not be available if:**

- ❖ The components or wire harnesses for the system are damaged;
- ❖ The Lexus Link Call Center is not operational;
- ❖ The antenna does not work properly due to vehicle damage;
- ❖ In a weak or non-analog cellular coverage area;
- ❖ In area where the GPS signal is weak or cannot be received;
- ❖ The Lexus Link subscription has expired.

### **NOTICE**

***Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions) are deactivated.***

## **Door Locking/Unlocking by Lexus Link System**

**The Lexus Link System will allow your vehicle to be locked and unlocked remotely.**

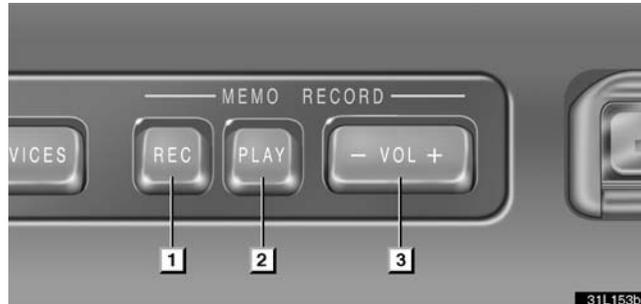
If you find that your vehicle has not been locked, call the Lexus Link Call Center 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987), the Lexus Link Advisor can assist in locking your vehicle.

In case you are locked out, call the Lexus Link Call Center 1-800-25 Lexus (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987), a Lexus Link Advisor can assist in unlocking your vehicle.

### **NOTICE**

***You must provide the Lexus Link operator with your Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number ) or personal security word, before they lock/unlock your vehicle. However, the Lexus Link System will not be able to lock or unlock your vehicle if it has been parked for 48 hours or more after the ignition is turned off. Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions, door locking/unlocking function) are deactivated.***

**Memo record**



- ✕ **1** "REC" button
- 2** "PLAY" button
- 3** "- VOL +" button

During a service call, you can record a conversation with the Lexus Link Call Center Advisor. This function is very convenient for drivers so they do not have to take notes while driving.

**"REC" button:** Push this button to record information or a conversation with Lexus Link Call Center. To stop recording, push the button again. Up to 5 minutes of recording time is available.

When you push the "REC" button, all previous messages are deleted and the system begins recording your new message.

At the start of recording, "Recording" will be announced. At the end of recording, you will hear "Recording complete". If there are only 15 seconds left for recording, two chimes sound. If the recording memory is full, "Recording time exceeded" will be announced and recording will be terminated.

If you push this button while you are hearing a playback of recording, it terminates the playback and recording will start. At this time, the previous recording will be erased.

**"PLAY" button:** Push this button to play the recorded conversation. "Playback Complete" is announced when the playback is complete. To stop the operation, push the button again. "Playback Cancelled" is announced. The volume has a total of seven positions/levels available.

**"- VOL +" button:** Push this button on either side to adjust the volume. When you change the volume, one chime sounds.

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

### Audible voice prompts

The following table shows the voice responses from the Lexus Link System.

Voice phrase: Explanation about Lexus Link System		
<p>This is the Lexus Link system. Integrating global positioning satellite and wireless communication technology into your Lexus and providing enhanced safety, security, and convenience. At the touch of a button, or automatically in the event of an accident, you are connected to a Lexus Link Advisor who will assist you – 24 hours a day, 7 days a week where GPS and cellular coverage is available. The Lexus Link System also has an audio recorder allowing you to record reminders to yourself or information from a Lexus Link Advisor.</p> <p>To contact a Lexus Link Advisor, press the “SERVICES” button. The Lexus Link System will inform the advisor of your vehicle’s current location and your identity. The advisors can handle a wide variety of services, such as giving directions to shops, gas stations, ATMs, restaurants and roadside assistance with location. Services available will depend on the service package you selected.</p>	<p>In an emergency, press the emergency services button on your Lexus Link console. It is marked with a red ambulance. Upon receiving your call, the advisor will assess the situation and, if necessary, alert the nearest emergency services provider. The emergency button should only be used in life threatening situations.</p> <p>If your Lexus detects that an airbag deployment may have occurred, the Lexus Link System will automatically send an emergency message to the Lexus Link Call Center.</p> <p>The system will also automatically contact the call center if the security system alarm goes off. An advisor will first contact you to determine if the alarm is valid. Upon your confirmation, the advisor will then provide the vehicle location to the police.</p>	<p>If you accidentally set off the alarm, press the remote door unlock, or insert your key in the door lock or ignition within 55 seconds. This will prevent the Lexus Link System from placing a theft call.</p> <p>The volume control lets you adjust the volume level for Lexus Link calls, system prompts, and memos. Press the plus key to increase volume and the minus key to decrease it.</p> <p>To record a memo or a call, press the key labeled “REC”. When you are finished recording, press the “REC” button again. To listen to the memo, press the “PLAY” button. You can record one message up to five minutes long. When you record a new memo, all of the previous memos will be erased.</p> <p>For more detailed information on the use, features and limitations of this system, please consult your Lexus Link Owner’s Manual.</p>

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

Voice phrase	Description
The Lexus Link System is active.	The system is operational with the ignition on.
Placing an emergency call to Lexus Link Center	Emergency call is placed.
Calling the Lexus Link Center	Service call is placed.
Lexus Link Call cancelled	Service call is cancelled.
Previous attempt to call the Lexus Link Center was unsuccessful.	The attempt to call the Lexus Link Center was unsuccessful.
Recording	The recording will start.
Recording complete	The recording is complete.
Recording time exceeded	The recording memory is now full.
Playback complete	The playback is complete.
Playback cancelled	The playback is cancelled.
A Lexus Link System error has been detected. Please contact your Lexus dealer.	An error has been detected with the Lexus Link System. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Voice phrase	Description
The Lexus Link System is not active. To activate your Lexus Link System, press the "SERVICES" button now.	Message notifies vehicle occupants that the subscription has expired.
Your Lexus Link subscription has expired. Services are not available.	You operated a Lexus Link button despite an expired subscription. Your Lexus Link subscription has expired, push the "Services" button a second time to reactivate.
No cellular service available. Unable to contact the Call Center.	In cellular coverage areas without analog coverage, you cannot use the Lexus Link System. Unable to contact the Lexus Link Call Center until you have cellular coverage.

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

---

### Lexus Link transceiver antenna



**The Lexus Link transceiver antenna is removable. Before taking the vehicle to an automatic car wash, disconnect the antenna by unscrewing it from the roof mount.**

#### **NOTICE**

***If you forget reattaching the Lexus Link transceiver antenna, the Lexus Link System may not function properly.***

## IF YOU LOSE YOUR KEYS OR LOCK YOURSELF OUT

**You can purchase a new key at your Lexus dealer if you can give them the key number and master key.**

Even if you lose only one key, contact your Lexus dealer to make a new key. If you lose all your master keys, you cannot make new keys; the whole engine immobiliser system must be replaced.

See the suggestion given in "Keys" on page 8.

You can use the wireless remote control system with the new key. Contact your Lexus dealer for detailed information.

If your keys are locked in the vehicle and you cannot get a duplicate, many Lexus dealers can still open the door for you using special tools. If your vehicle is equipped with Lexus Link System, call the Lexus Link Call Center 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987). Once you provide the Lexus Link Call Center Advisor with your Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number), or personal security word, they will unlock your vehicle.

**NOTICE**

*You must provide the Lexus Link operator with your Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number ) or personal security word, before they lock/unlock your vehicle. However, the Lexus Link System will not be able to lock or unlock your vehicle if it has been parked for 48 hours or more after the ignition is turned off. Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions) are deactivated.*

If you must break a window to get in, we suggest breaking the smallest side window because it is the least expensive to replace. Be extremely cautious to avoid glass cuts.



# SECTION 5

---

## MAINTENANCE

### Maintenance

Maintenance requirements .....	334
General maintenance .....	335
Does your vehicle need repairing? .....	338
Emissions inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs .....	339

*For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”.*

## MAINTENANCE

---

### MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

Your Lexus vehicle has been designed to have fewer maintenance requirements with longer service intervals to save both your time and money. However, each regular maintenance as well as day-to-day care is more important than ever before to ensure smooth, trouble-free, safe, and economical driving.

It is the owner's responsibility to make sure the specified maintenance, including general maintenance services, is performed. Note that both the new vehicle and emission control system warranties specify that proper maintenance and care must be performed. See "Owner's Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet" for complete warranty information.

#### General maintenance

General maintenance items are those day-to-day care practices that are important to your vehicle for proper operation. It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that the general maintenance items are performed regularly.

These checks or inspections can be done either by yourself or your Lexus dealer.

#### Scheduled maintenance

The scheduled maintenance items listed in the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance" are those required to be serviced at regular intervals.

For details of your maintenance schedule, read the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance".

**It is recommended that only genuine Lexus parts be used for maintenance or for the repair of the emission control system.**

**The owner may elect to use non-Lexus supplied parts for replacement purposes without invalidating the emission control system warranty. However, use of replacement parts which are not of equivalent quality may impair the effectiveness of the emission control systems.**

**You may also elect to have maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and system performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual without invalidating this warranty. See "Owner's Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet" for complete warranty information.**

### Where to go for service?

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips, and in-dealership training programs. They are well informed about the operation of all the systems on your vehicle.

You can be confident that your Lexus dealer's service department performs the best job to meet the maintenance requirements of your vehicle – reliably and economically.

Your copy of the repair order is proof that all required maintenance has been performed for warranty coverage. And if any problems should arise with your vehicle while under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it. Again, be sure to keep a copy of the repair order for any service performed on your Lexus.

### What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself, if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform them are presented in Section 6.

If you are a skilled do-it-yourself mechanic, the Lexus service manuals are recommended. Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance can affect your warranty coverage. See "Owner's Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet" for the details.

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified. It is recommended that any problem you notice be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for their advice.



### CAUTION

**Make these checks only where adequate ventilation can be obtained if you run the engine.**

### Vehicle exterior

**Items listed below should be performed from time to time, unless otherwise specified.**

#### Tire pressure

Check the pressure with a gauge every two weeks, or at least once a month and adjust as shown on the tire pressure label. See page 373 for additional information.

#### Tire surface

Check the tires carefully for cuts, damage or excessive wear. See page 376 for additional information.

#### Wheel nuts

When checking the tires, make sure to check the nuts for looseness. Tighten them if necessary.

## MAINTENANCE

---

### **Tire rotation**

Rotate the tires according to the maintenance schedule. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance".) See page 375 for additional information.

### **Fluid leaks**

Check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, water or other fluid after the vehicle has been parked for a while. If you smell fuel fumes or notice any leak, have the cause found and corrected immediately.

### **Doors and engine hood**

Check that all doors, including trunk lid, operate smoothly and all latches lock securely. Make sure the engine hood secondary latch secures the hood when the primary latch is released.

### **Vehicle interior**

**Items listed below should be checked regularly, e.g. while performing periodic services, cleaning the vehicle, etc.**

#### **Lights**

Make sure the headlights, stop lights, tail lights, turn signal lights, and other lights are working. Check headlight aim.

#### **Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers**

Check that all service reminder indicators and warning buzzers function properly.

### **Steering wheel**

Check that it has the specified free play. Be alert for changes in steering condition, such as hard steering, excessive free play or strange noise.

### **Seats**

Check that all front seat controls such as seat adjusters, seatback recliner, etc. operate smoothly. Check that the head restraints move up and down smoothly and that the locks hold securely in any latched position.

### **Seat belts**

Check that the seat belt system such as buckles, retractors and anchors operate properly and smoothly. Make sure the belt webbing is not cut, frayed, worn or damaged.

### **Accelerator pedal**

Check the pedal for smooth operation and uneven pedal effort or catching.

### **Brake pedal**

Check the pedal for smooth operation and the proper clearance and free play. Check the brake booster function.

### **Brakes**

At a safe place, check that the brakes do not pull to one side when applied.

**Parking brake**

Check that the pedal has the proper travel and that, on a safe incline, your vehicle is held securely with only the parking brake applied.

**Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism**

On a safe incline, check that your vehicle is held securely with the selector lever in "P" position and all brakes released.

**Engine compartment**

**Items listed below should be checked from time to time, e.g. each time when refueling.**

**Washer fluid**

Make sure there is sufficient fluid in the tank. See page 397 for additional information.

**Engine coolant level**

Make sure the coolant level is between the Upper and Lower lines on the see-through reservoir when the engine is cold. See page 361 for additional information.

**Radiator, condenser and hoses**

Check that the front of the radiator and condenser are clean and not blocked with leaves, dirt, or insects. See page 363 for additional information.

**Battery**

Your Lexus has a maintenance free battery. You do not have to add distilled water. For longer life of the battery, however, see page 390 for additional information.

**Brake fluid level**

Make sure the brake fluid level is correct. See page 371 for additional information.

## MAINTENANCE

---

### Engine oil level

Check the level on the dipstick with the engine turned off and the vehicle parked on a level spot. See page 358 for additional information.

### Power steering fluid level

Check the level through the reservoir. The level should be in the "HOT" or "COLD" range depending on the fluid temperature. See page 372 for additional information.

### Exhaust system

If you notice any change in the sound of the exhaust or smell exhaust fumes, have the cause located and corrected immediately. (See "Engine exhaust cautions" in Section 3-1.)

## DOES YOUR VEHICLE NEED REPAIRING?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- 🔧 Engine missing, stumbling, or pinging
- 🔧 Appreciable loss of power
- 🔧 Strange engine noises
- 🔧 A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- 🔧 Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- 🔧 Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- 🔧 Vehicle pulls to one side when driving straight on a level road
- 🔧 Strange noises related to suspension movement
- 🔧 Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches floors, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- 🔧 Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. It probably needs adjustment or repair.

 CAUTION

**Do not continue driving with the vehicle unchecked. It could result in serious vehicle damage and possibly personal injury.**

## EMISSION INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE (I/M) PROGRAMS

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) checks.

The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system. When the OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. In this case, your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

Even if the malfunction indicator lamp does not come on, your vehicle may not pass the I/M test as readiness codes have not been set in the OBD system.

Readiness codes are automatically set during ordinary driving. However, when the battery is disconnected or run down, the codes are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the codes may not be completely set.

Also, if the malfunction indicator lamp had come on recently due to temporary malfunction such as a loose fuel tank cap, your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after taking several driving trips, but the error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless about 40 trips or more are taken.

If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test and the malfunction indicator lamp does not come on, contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.



# **SECTION 6-1**

---

## **SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS**

### **Introduction**

Vehicle identification .....	342
Engine compartment overview .....	343
Do-it-yourself service precautions .....	344
Positioning the jack .....	345
Parts and tools .....	346

## INTRODUCTION

---

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION



**The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This number is on the left top of the instrument panel and can be seen through the windshield from outside.**

This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

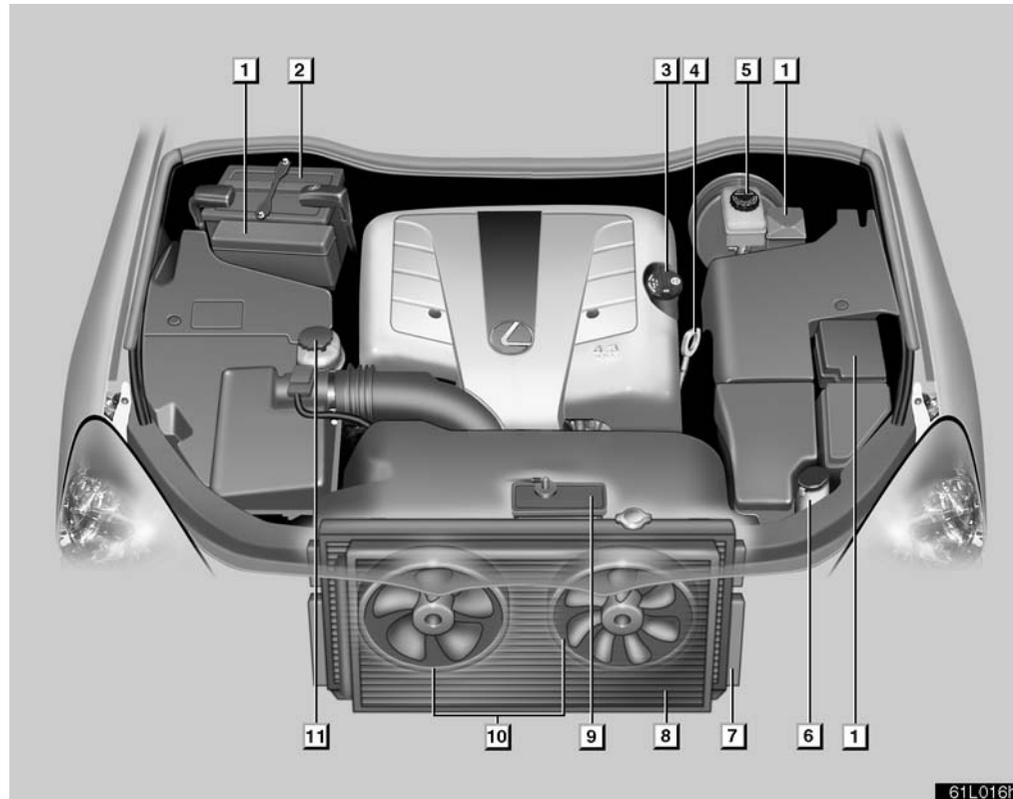


The vehicle identification number (VIN) is also on the Certification Label.



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW



- 1** Fuse box
- 2** Battery
- 3** Engine oil filler cap
- 4** Engine oil level dipstick
- 5** Brake fluid reservoir
- 6** Washer fluid tank
- 7** Radiator
- 8** Condenser
- 9** Engine coolant reservoir
- 10** Electric cooling fans
- 11** Power steering fluid reservoir

61L016h

## INTRODUCTION

### DO-IT-YOURSELF SERVICE PRECAUTIONS

**If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in this Section.**

You should be aware that improper or incomplete servicing may result in operating problems.

Performing do-it-yourself maintenance during the warranty period may affect your warranty coverage. Read the separate Lexus Warranty statement for details and suggestions.

This Section gives instructions only for those items that are relatively easy for an owner to perform. As explained in Section 5, there are still a number of items that must be performed by a qualified technician with special tools.

For information on tools and parts for do-it-yourself maintenance, see "Parts and tools" on page 346.

Utmost care should be taken when working on your vehicle to prevent accidental injury. Here are a few precautions that you should be especially careful to observe:

#### CAUTION

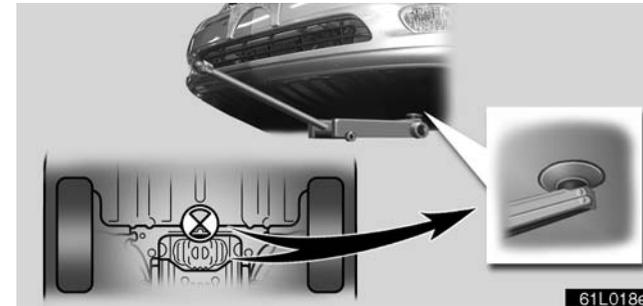
-  **When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt. (Removing rings, watches, and ties is advisable.)**
-  **Right after driving, the engine compartment – the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and power steering fluid reservoir, etc. – will be hot. So be careful not to touch them. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.**
-  **Do not smoke, cause sparks or allow open flames around fuel or the battery. Their fumes are flammable.**
-  **Do not get under your vehicle with just the body jack supporting it. Always use automotive jack stands or other solid supports.**
-  **Be sure the ignition is off if you work near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille. With the ignition on, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or if the coolant temperature is high.**
-  **Use eye protection whenever you work on or under your vehicle where you may be exposed to flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc.**
-  **Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.**

**Warning:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

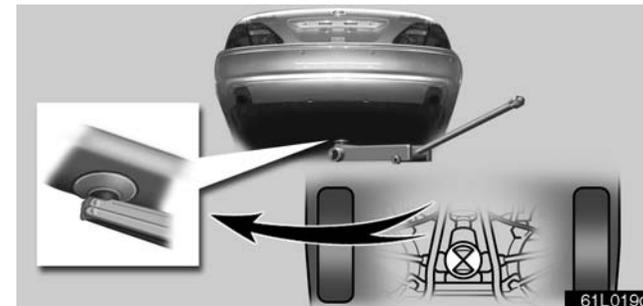
### NOTICE

- Remember that battery and ignition cables carry high currents or voltages. Be careful of accidentally causing a short circuit.**
- Before closing the engine hood, check to see that you have not forgotten any tools, rags, etc.**
- Do not drive with the air cleaner removed, or excessive engine wear could result. Also backfiring could cause a fire in the engine compartment.**
- Do not overfill automatic transmission fluid, or the transmission could be damaged.**
- Be careful not to scratch the glass surface with the wiper frame.**

## POSITIONING THE JACK



✂ Front



✂ Rear

When jacking up your vehicle with the jack, position the jack correctly as shown in the illustrations.

## INTRODUCTION

---



### CAUTION

**When jacking, be sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of personal injury:**

- 🔧 **Follow jacking instructions.**
- 🔧 **Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by the jack. Personal injury may occur.**
- 🔧 **Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.**
- 🔧 **Stop the vehicle on a level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in “P”.**
- 🔧 **Make sure to set the jack properly in the jack point. Raising the vehicle with jack improperly positioned will damage the vehicle or may allow the vehicle to fall off the jack and cause personal injury.**
- 🔧 **Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone; use vehicle support stands.**
- 🔧 **Do not raise the vehicle with someone in the vehicle**
- 🔧 **When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the jack.**

### NOTICE

***Make sure to place the jack correctly, or your vehicle may be damaged.***

## PARTS AND TOOLS

Here is a list of parts and tools you will need to perform do-it-yourself maintenance. Remember all Lexus parts are designed in metric sizes, so your tools must be metric.

### Checking the engine oil level

#### Parts (if level is low):

- 🔧 “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent  
Oil grade: API grade SJ “Energy-Conserving”, SL “Energy-Conserving” or ILSAC multigrade engine oil. For recommended oil viscosity, see page 360.

#### Tools:

- 🔧 Rag or paper towel
- 🔧 Funnel (only for adding oil)

### Checking the engine coolant level

#### Parts (if level is low):

- 🔧 “Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant” or equivalent  
See “Checking the engine coolant level” on page 361 for instructions.
- 🔧 Demineralized or distilled water

#### Tools:

- 🔧 Funnel (only for adding coolant)

**Checking brake fluid****Parts (if level is low):**

- 🔧 FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid

**Tools:**

- 🔧 Funnel (only for adding fluid)

**Checking power steering fluid****Parts (if level is low):**

- 🔧 Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON<sup>®</sup> II or III

**Tools:**

- 🔧 Rag or paper towel
- 🔧 Funnel (only for adding fluid)

**Checking battery condition****Tools:**

- 🔧 Warm water
- 🔧 Baking soda
- 🔧 Grease
- 🔧 Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)

**Checking and replacing the blade type fuses****Parts (if replacement is necessary):**

- 🔧 Fuse with same amperage rating as original

**Checking the cartridge type fuses****Parts (if replacement is necessary):**

- 🔧 Genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent with same amperage rating as original

**Adding washer fluid****Parts:**

- 🔧 Water
- 🔧 Washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use)

**Tools:**

- 🔧 Funnel



## **SECTION 6-2**

---

### **SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS**

#### **Engine**

Specifications .....	350
Fuel .....	353
Fuel pump shut off system .....	355
Facts about engine oil consumption .....	356
Used engine oil .....	357
Checking the engine oil level .....	358
Checking the engine coolant level .....	361
Checking the radiator and condenser .....	363
Spark plugs .....	364

## ENGINE

---

### SPECIFICATIONS

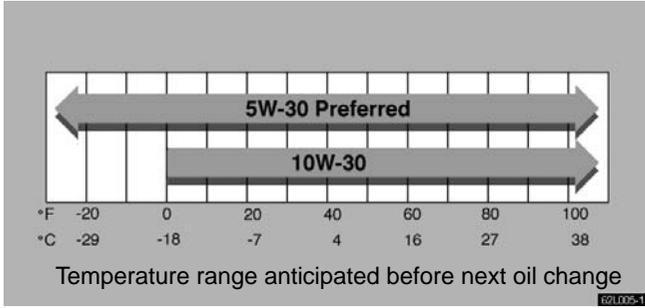
#### – GENERAL

Model	3UZ-FE
Type	8 cylinder V type, 4 cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	91.0 X 82.5 mm (3.58 X 3.25 in.)
Displacement	4293 cm <sup>3</sup> (262.0 cu.in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold) Intake Exhaust	0.15 – 0.25 mm (0.006 – 0.010 in.) 0.25 – 0.35 mm (0.010 – 0.014 in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

#### – FUEL

Fuel type	Only UNLEADED
Octane rating	91 (Research octane number 96) or higher

**- LUBRICATION SYSTEM**

<p>Oil capacity Drain and refill with filter without filter</p>	<p>4.5 L (4.8 qt., 4.0 Imp.qt.) 4.2 L (4.4 qt., 3.7 Imp.qt.)</p>
<p>Oil grade</p>	<p>API grade SJ "Energy-Conserving", SL "Energy-Conserving" or ILSAC multigrade engine oil</p>
<p>Recommended oil viscosity (SAE)</p>	 <p>Temperature range anticipated before next oil change</p>

**NOTE:**

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is filled in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the above grade and viscosity. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

## ENGINE

---

### – COOLING SYSTEM

Capacity	9.5 L (10.0 qt., 8.4 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	“Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant” or equivalent With ethylene–glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components Do not use alcohol type antifreeze or plain water alone.

#### NOTE:

“Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant” is filled in your Lexus vehicle. In order to avoid technical problems, we strongly recommend using “Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant” or equivalent. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

### – IGNITION SYSTEM

Spark plug	– Make	DENSO NGK	SK20R11 IFR6A11 1.1 mm (0.043 in.)
	– Gap		

### – ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Battery	– Open voltage at 20°C (68°F):	12.7 V Fully charged 12.3 V Half charged 11.9 V Discharged [Voltage that is checked 20 minutes after the key is removed with all the lights turned off]
	– Charging rates	5A max.

## FUEL

### Fuel type

**Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.**

To help prevent gas station mixups, your Lexus has a smaller fuel tank opening. The special nozzle on pumps with unleaded fuel will fit it, but the larger standard nozzle on pumps with leaded gas will not.

At a minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB 3.5–M93 in Canada.

#### NOTICE

***Do not use leaded gasoline. Use of leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly. Also, this can increase maintenance costs.***

### Octane rating

Select premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher for optimum engine performance. However, if such premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91).

Use of unleaded fuel with an octane number or rating lower than stated above will cause persistent heavy knocking. If severe, this will lead to engine damage.

### If your engine knocks ...

If you detect heavy knocking even when using the recommended fuel, or if you hear steady knocking while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult your Lexus dealer.

However, occasionally, you may notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving up hills. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

### Gasoline containing detergent additives

**Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.**

However, all gasoline sold in the U.S. contains detergent additives to keep clean and/or clean intake systems.

### Quality gasoline

Automotive manufacturers in the U.S., Europe and Japan have developed a specification for quality fuel named World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied world wide. The WWFC consists of three categories that depend on required emission levels. In the U.S., category 3 has been adopted. The WWFC improves air quality by providing for better emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better vehicle performance.

## ENGINE

---

### Cleaner burning gasoline

**Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE is available in many areas.**

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions, and improve air quality.

### Oxygenates in gasoline

**Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE. If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.**

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

### Gasoline containing MMT

**Some gasoline contain an octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).**

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected. The Malfunction Indicator Lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

### Gasoline quality

In a very few cases, you may experience driveability problems caused by the particular gasoline that you are using. If you continue to have unacceptable driveability, try changing gasoline brands. If this does not rectify your problem, then consult your Lexus dealer.

#### **NOTICE**

***Do not use gasohol other than stated above. It will cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.***

***If drivability problems are encountered (poor hot starting, vaporizing, engine knock, etc.), discontinue its use.***

 **Take care not to spill gasohol during refueling. Gasohol may cause paint damage.**

### **Fuel tank capacity**

**84 L (22.2 gal., 18.5 Imp.gal.)**

## **FUEL PUMP SHUT OFF SYSTEM**

The fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine to minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision. To restart the engine after the fuel pump shut off system activates, turn the ignition switch to "ACC" or "LOCK" once and start it.



### **CAUTION**

**Inspect the ground under the vehicle before restarting the engine. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, it is the fuel system that has been damaged and it is in need of repair. In this case, do not restart the engine.**

## ENGINE

---

### FACTS ABOUT ENGINE OIL CONSUMPTION

#### Functions of engine oil

Engine oil has the primary function of lubricating and cooling the inside of the engine, and plays a major role in maintaining the engine in proper working order.

#### Engine oil consumption

**It is normal that an engine should consume some engine oil during normal engine operation. The causes of oil consumption in a normal engine are as follows.**

- 🔍 Oil is used to lubricate pistons, piston rings and cylinders. A thin film of oil is left on the cylinder wall when a piston moves downwards in the cylinder. High negative pressure generated when the vehicle is decelerating sucks some of this oil into the combustion chamber. This oil as well as some part of the oil film left on the cylinder wall is burned by the high temperature combustion gases during the combustion process.
- 🔍 Oil is also used to lubricate the stems of the intake valves. Some of this oil is sucked into the combustion chamber together with the intake air and is burned along with the fuel. High temperature exhaust gases also burn the oil used to lubricate the exhaust valve stems.

**The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the viscosity of the oil, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.**

More oil is consumed by high-speed driving and frequent acceleration and deceleration.

A new engine consumes more oil, since its pistons, piston rings and cylinder walls have not become conditioned.

**When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.**

For example, if a vehicle is used for repeated short trips and consumes a normal amount of oil, the dipstick may not show any drop in the oil level at all, even after 1000 km (600 miles) or more. This is because the oil is gradually becoming diluted with fuel or moisture, making it appear that the oil level has not changed.

The diluting ingredients evaporate out when the vehicle is then driven at high speeds, as on an expressway, making it appear that oil is excessively consumed after driving at high speeds.

### Importance of engine oil level check

One of the most important points in proper vehicle maintenance is to keep the engine oil at the optimum level so that oil function will not be impaired. Therefore, it is essential that the oil level be checked regularly. Lexus recommends that the oil level be checked every time you refuel the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

***Failure to check the oil level regularly could lead to serious engine trouble due to insufficient oil.***

For detailed information on oil level check, see "Checking the engine oil level" described below.

### USED ENGINE OIL

#### CAUTION

-  **Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact with it. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.**
-  **Do not leave used oil within the reach of children.**
-  **Dispose of used oil and used oil filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and used oil filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer or a service station for information concerning recycling or disposal.**

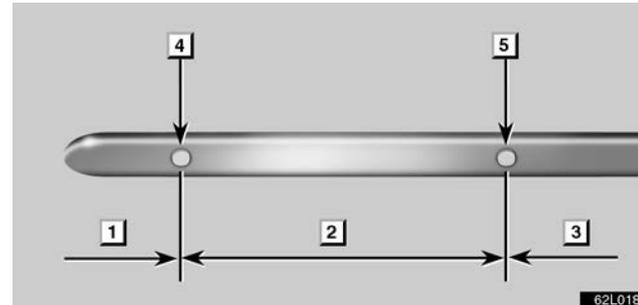
## ENGINE

### CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL



**With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.**

1. To get a true reading, the vehicle should be on a level spot. After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.
2. Pull the dipstick out, hold a rag under the end and wipe it clean.
3. Reinsert the dipstick and push it in as far as it will go, or the reading will not be correct.



✕ **1 Add oil** **2 O.K.** **3 Too full**

4. Pull the dipstick out and look at the oil level while holding a rag under the end. If it is between the full line ( **5** ) and the low line ( **4** ), it is O.K.

#### **NOTICE**

***Be careful not to drop the engine oil on the vehicle components.***



**If the oil level is below or only slightly above the low mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.**

Remove the oil filler cap and add engine oil a little at a time, checking the dipstick. We recommend that you use a funnel when adding oil. The approximate quantity of oil needed to fill between the low level mark and the full level mark on the dipstick is indicated below for reference.

When the level reaches within the correct range, return the filler cap and turn the cap clockwise until you hear a click.

Oil quantity. L (qt., Imp. qt.)                      1.5 (1.6, 1.3)

### NOTICE

-  **Be careful not to spill the engine oil on the vehicle components.**
-  **Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.**
-  **Check the oil level on the dipstick once again after adding the oil.**

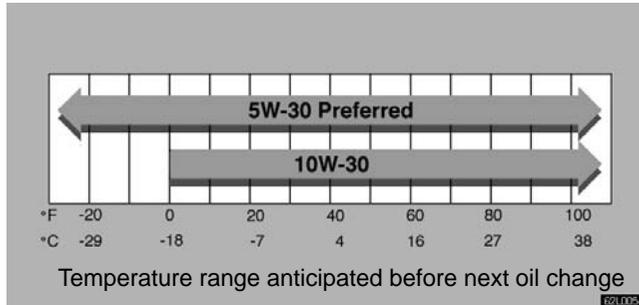
## ENGINE

### Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is filled in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: API grade SJ "Energy-Conserving", SL "Energy-Conserving" or ILSAC multigrade engine oil.

Recommended viscosity (SAE):



**SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for your vehicle, for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.**

**If you use SAE 10W-30 engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.**

### Oil identification marks



✂ **API Service Symbol**

✂ **ILSAC Certification Mark**

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.

🔍 The API Service Symbol is located anywhere on the outside of the container.

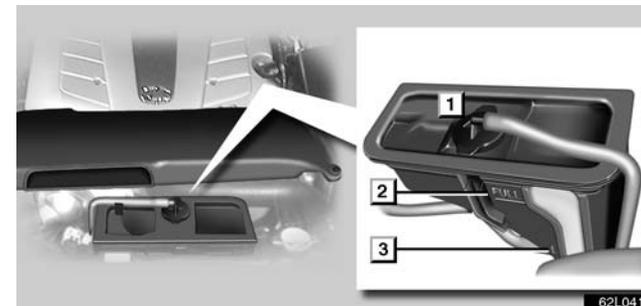
The top portion of the label shows the oil quality by API (American Petroleum Institute) designation such as SL. The center portion of the label shows the SAE viscosity grade such as SAE 5W-30. "Energy-Conserving", shown in the lower portion, indicates that the oil has fuel-saving capabilities.

🔍 The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

To ensure excellent lubrication performance for your engine, the "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" range is available, which has been specifically tested and approved for all Lexus engines.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details of the "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" range.

## CHECKING THE ENGINE COOLANT LEVEL



✂ 1 Reservoir cap 2 Upper line 3 Lower line

**Look at the see-through coolant reservoir when the engine is cold. The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir. If the level is low, add ethylene-glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components.**

The coolant level in the reservoir will vary with engine temperature. However, if the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant. Bring the level up to the "FULL" line.

Always use ethylene-glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components. See information in the next column.

## ENGINE

---

If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing, there may be a leak in the system. Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant filler cap, radiator cap and drain cock and water pump.

If you can find no leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap pressure and check for leaks in the cooling system.



### **CAUTION**

**To prevent burning yourself, do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot.**

### **Coolant type selection**

Use of improper coolants may damage your engine cooling system. Your coolant must contain ethylene-glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of your engine that contains aluminum components. We have used "Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant" in your Lexus vehicle. In order to avoid technical problems, we strongly recommend using "Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant" or equivalent.

In addition to preventing freezing and subsequent damage to the engine, this type of coolant will also prevent corrosion. Further supplemental inhibitors or additives are neither needed nor recommended.

Read the coolant container for information on freeze protection. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with plain water (preferably demineralized water or distilled water). The total capacity of the cooling system is given on page 352.

We recommend to use 50% solution for your Lexus, to provide protection down to about  $-35^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-31^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). When it is extremely cold, to provide protection down to about  $-50^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-58^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), 60% solution is recommended. Do not use more than 70% solution for better coolant performance.

### **NOTICE**

***Do not use alcohol type antifreeze or plain water alone.***

The engine cooling system is integral to maximizing performance of your Lexus vehicle. In line with this, it is strongly recommended that you use "Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant" for protecting the system, as it is an ethylene-glycol based premium antifreeze coolant with excellent corrosion protection properties that has been specifically formulated for use in Lexus vehicles.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details of the "Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant" range.

## CHECKING THE RADIATOR AND CONDENSER

If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, take your vehicle to Lexus dealer.



### CAUTION

**To prevent yourself from burning, be careful not to touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot.**

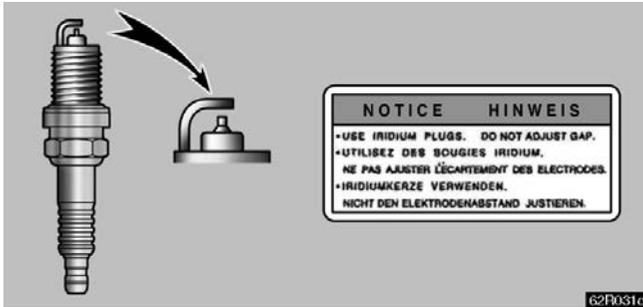
### NOTICE

***To prevent damage to the radiator and condenser, do not perform the work by yourself.***

## ENGINE

---

### SPARK PLUGS



Your engine is fitted with iridium-tipped spark plugs.

#### **NOTICE**

*Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs and do not adjust gaps for your engine performance and smooth drivability.*

## **SECTION 6-3**

---

### **SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS**

#### **Chassis**

Specifications .....	366
Checking brake fluid .....	371
Checking power steering fluid .....	372
Checking tire pressure .....	373
Rotating tires .....	375
Checking and replacing tires .....	376
Installing snow tires and chains .....	379
Replacing wheels .....	380
Aluminum wheel precautions .....	381
Suspension and chassis .....	381

## CHASSIS

---

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### – DIFFERENTIAL

Oil capacity	1.35 L (1.42 qt., 1.19 Imp.qt.)
Oil type	Hypoid gear oil API GL-5
Oil viscosity	Above –18°C (0°F): SAE 90 Below –18°C (0°F): SAE 80W or SAE 80W-90

#### – AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Fluid capacity Drain and refill	1.8 L (1.9 qt., 1.6 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	<b>Toyota Genuine ATF Type T – IV*</b>

\*Change automatic transmission fluid only as necessary. Generally, it is necessary to change automatic transmission fluid only if your vehicle is driven under one of the Special Operating Conditions listed in your “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”. When changing the automatic transmission fluid, use only “Toyota Genuine ATF Type T-IV” (ATF JWS3309 or NWS6500) to aid in assuring optimum transmission performance.

#### **NOTICE**

***Using automatic transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF Type T-IV” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.***

**– BRAKES**

Pedal clearance	70 mm (2.8 in.) Min. *1
Pedal free play	1 – 6 mm (0.04 – 0.24 in.)
Brake pad wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Parking brake lining wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Parking brake adjustment	5 – 7 clicks *2
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

\*1Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with the pressure of 490 N (50 kgf, 110 lbf.) with the engine running

\*2Parking brake adjustment when depressed with the pressure of 294 N (30 kgf, 66.1 lbf.)

**– STEERING**

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)
Power steering fluid	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON <sup>®</sup> II or III

## CHASSIS

---

### - TIRES AND WHEELS (Type A)

Tire size	P225/60R16 97H
Tire inflation pressure Recommended cold tire inflation pressure	Front 210 kPa (2.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, 30 psi) Rear 210 kPa (2.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, 30 psi)  For sustained high speeds above 200 km/h (124 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add 30 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, 5 psi) to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	16 x 7JJ
Wheel nut torque	103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf.)

**NOTE:**

For complete information on tires (e.g. replacing tires or replacing wheels), see "Checking tire pressure" through "Aluminum wheel precautions" on page 373 through 381.

**– TIRES AND WHEELS (Type B)**

Tire size	P225/55R17 95H
Tire inflation pressure Recommended cold tire inflation pressure	<p>Front 220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar, 32 psi) Rear 220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar, 32 psi)</p> <p>For sustained high speeds above 200 km/h (124 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add 20 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar, 3 psi) to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.</p>
Wheel size	17 x 7 1/2JJ
Wheel nut torque	103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf.)

**NOTE:**

For complete information on tires (e.g. replacing tires or replacing wheels), see “Checking tire pressure” through “Aluminum wheel precautions” on page 373 through 381.

## CHASSIS

---

### - TIRES AND WHEELS (Type C)

Tire size	225/55R17 97W
Tire inflation pressure Recommended cold tire inflation pressure	Front 240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, 35 psi) Rear 240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, 35 psi)  For sustained high speeds above 200 km/h (124 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add 10 kPa (0.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, 1 psi) to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	17 x 7 1/2JJ
Wheel nut torque	103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf.)

#### NOTE:

For complete information on tires (e.g. replacing tires or replacing wheels), see "Checking tire pressure" through "Aluminum wheel precautions" on page 373 through 381.

## CHECKING BRAKE FLUID



To check the fluid level, simply look at the see-through reservoir. The level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear. So be sure to keep the reservoir filled.

If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious mechanical problem.

**If the level is low, add FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid to the brake reservoir.**

Remove and replace the reservoir cap by hand. Add brake fluid up to the "MAX" line.

Use only newly opened brake fluid. Once opened, brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air, and excess moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency.

### CAUTION

Take care when filling the reservoir because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately. If you still feel uncomfortable with your eyes, go to the doctor.

### NOTICE

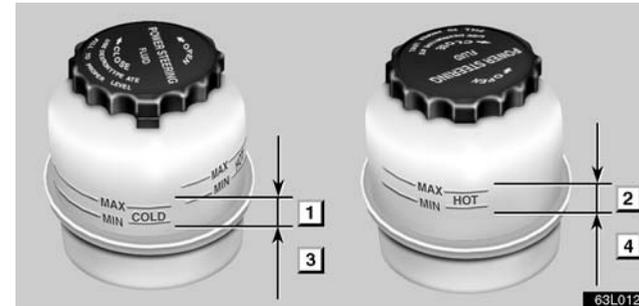
*If you spill some of the fluid, be sure to wipe it off to prevent it from damaging the parts or paintwork.*

## CHECKING POWER STEERING FLUID



**Check the fluid level on the through the reservoir. If necessary, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON<sup>®</sup> II or III.**

If the vehicle has been driven around 80 km/h (50 mph) for 20 minutes (a little more in frigid temperatures), the fluid is hot (60°C – 80°C or 140°F – 175°F). You may also check the level when the fluid is cold (about room temperature, 10°C – 30°C or 50°F – 85°F) if the engine has not been run for about five hours.



✕ **1** If cold O.K. **2** If hot O.K. **3** If cold add  
**4** If hot add

Clean all dirt off the reservoir and look at the fluid level. If the fluid is cold, the level should be in the "COLD" range. Similarly, if it is hot, the fluid level should be in the "HOT" range. If the level is at the low side of the appropriate range, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON<sup>®</sup> II or III to bring the level within the range.

To remove the reservoir cap, turn it counterclockwise and lift up. To reinstall it, turn it clockwise. After replacing the reservoir cap, visually check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The reservoir may be hot so be careful not to burn yourself.

**NOTICE**

- ⚡ **Avoid overfilling, or the power steering could be damaged.**
- ⚡ **When adding the power steering fluid, avoid spilling it. The generator under the power steering reservoir could be damaged if fluid is spilled on it.**

**CHECKING TIRE PRESSURE**

The recommended cold tire pressures, tire size and the vehicle capacity weight are given on the label inside the glove box lid.

You should check the tire pressures every two weeks, or at least once a month. And don't forget the spare! The pressure for the spare tire should be the same as that for the standard tire. (See page 368 through 370.)

Incorrect tire pressure may waste fuel, reduce the comfort of driving, reduce tire life and make your vehicle less safe to drive.

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

## CHASSIS

---

### CAUTION

Keep your tire pressure properly. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and cause an accident resulting in death or serious injuries.

#### Low tire pressure (underinflation):

- ⚠ **Excessive wear**
- ⚠ **Uneven wear**
- ⚠ **Poor handling**
- ⚠ **Possibility of blowouts from overheated tire.**
- ⚠ **Poor sealing of the tire bead**
- ⚠ **Wheel deformation and/or tire separation**

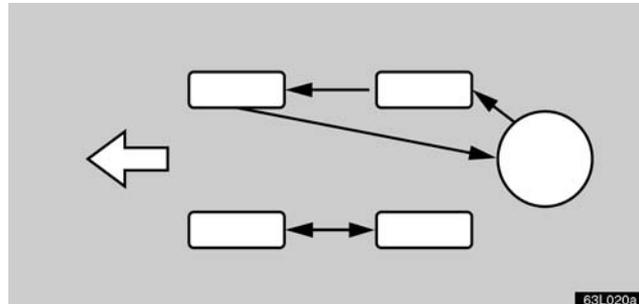
#### High tire pressure (overinflation):

- ⚠ **Poor handling**
- ⚠ **Excessive wear at the center of the tire tread**
- ⚠ **A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards**

The following instructions for checking tire pressure should be observed:

- ⚠ **The pressure should be checked only when the tires are cold.** If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile since, you will get an accurate cold tire pressure reading.
- ⚠ **Always use a tire pressure gauge.** The appearance of the tire can be misleading. Besides, tire pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- ⚠ **Do not bleed or reduce tire pressure after driving.** It is normal for the tire pressure to be higher after driving.
- ⚠ **Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.** The passengers and luggage weight should be located so that the vehicle is balanced.
- ⚠ **Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.** Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If the caps have been lost, have new ones put on as soon as possible.

## ROTATING TIRES



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires according to the maintenance schedule. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”.) However, the most appropriate timing for tire rotation may vary according to your driving habits and road surface conditions.

The wheel assemblies must be rotated as illustrated above.

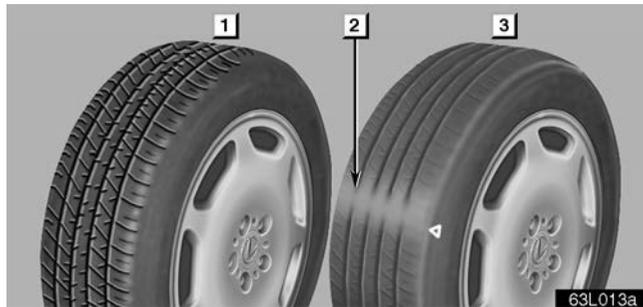
When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, or severe braking.

Before storing radial, snow or studded tires, mark the direction of rotation and be sure to install them in the same direction when using them again. Tires should be stored in a cool dry place.

## CHASSIS

### CHECKING AND REPLACING TIRES

#### When to replace your tires



- ✕ 1 New tread 2 Tread wear indicator  
3 Worn tread

Replace the tires when the tread wear indicators show. The location of the tread wear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "△" marks molded on the sidewall of each tire.

The tires on your Lexus have built-in tread wear indicators to help you know when the tires need replacement. When the tread depth wears to 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) or less, the indicators will appear. If you can see the indicators in two or more adjacent grooves, the tire should be replaced.

**Vehicles equipped with 225/55R17 97W tires:** Your Lexus has been fitted with specially developed tires which provide exceptional dynamic performance under general road conditions. However your riding comfort may worsen a little and road noise may increase during driving. You may also notice that your tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on the snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to have snow tires or tire chains on the snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully with the speed appropriate for road conditions.

#### NOTICE

**Avoid driving onto high, sharp-edged objects and other road hazards. Failure to do so can lead to severe tire damage.**

The effectiveness of snow tires is lost if the tread wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.).

If you have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, or bulges indicating internal damage, the tire should be replaced.

If a tire often goes flat or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage, it should be replaced. If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

If an air loss occurs while driving, do not continue driving with a deflated tire. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.

**Any tires which are over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if damage is not obvious.**

Tires deteriorate with age even if they have never or seldom been used.

This also applies to the spare tire and tires stored for future use.

### **Uniform tire quality grading**

**This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation. It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.**

**Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.**

**DOT quality grades – All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

**Treadwear** – The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 – 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

**Traction AA, A, B, C** – The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

## CHASSIS

---

**Temperature A, B, C** – The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

### Tire selection

**When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size and construction, and the same or greater load capacity as the originally installed tires.**

Using any other size or type of tire may seriously affect handling, ride, speedometer/odometer calibration, ground clearance, and clearance between the body and tires or snow chains.

**CAUTION**

**Observe the following instructions. Otherwise, an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**

- Do not mix radial, bias belted, or bias-ply tires on your vehicle, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.**
- Do not use tires other than the manufacturer's recommended size, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.**

If you need to change from conventional tires to radial tires or vice versa, replace them as a set.

## INSTALLING SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS

### When to use snow tires or chains

**Snow tires or chains are recommended when driving on snow or ice.**

On wet or dry roads, conventional or radial tires provide better traction than snow or studded tires.

### Snow tire selection

**If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires.**

Do not use tires other than stated above. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restrictions.

#### CAUTION

**Observe the following instruction. Otherwise, an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**

-  **Do not use snow tires other than the manufacturer's recommended size, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.**

### Snow tire installation

**Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.**

Installing snow tires on the rear wheels only can lead to an excessive difference in road grip capability between the front and rear tires which could cause loss of vehicle control.

#### CAUTION

-  **Do not drive with the snow tires incorrectly inflated.**
-  **Never drive over 120 km/h (75 mph) with any type of snow tires.**

### Tire chain selection

**Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location or type of road. Always check the local regulations before installing chains.**

Use SAE Class "S" type radial tire chains, with the exception of radial cable chains or V-bar type chains.

## CHASSIS

---

### Chain installation

Install the chains on the rear tires as tightly as possible. Do not use tire chains on the front tires. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 – 1.0 km (1/4 – 1/2 mile).

When installing chains on your tires, carefully follow the instructions of the chain manufacturer.



#### CAUTION

- ⚠ Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- ⚠ Drive carefully avoiding bumps, holes, and sharp turns, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
- ⚠ Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- ⚠ When driving with chains installed, be sure to drive carefully. Slow down before entering the curves to avoid losing control of the vehicle. Otherwise an accident may occur.

## REPLACING WHEELS

### When to replace your wheels

If you have wheel damage such as bending, cracks or heavy corrosion, the wheel should be replaced.

If you fail to replace damaged wheels, the tire may slip off the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

### Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset.

Correct replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

A wheel of a different size or type may adversely affect handling, wheel and bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer/odometer calibration, stopping ability, headlight aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or snow chain clearance to the body and chassis.

Replacement with used wheels is not recommended as they may have been subjected to rough treatment or high mileage and could fail without warning. Also, bent wheels which have been straightened may have hidden structural damage and therefore should not be used. Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire.

 CAUTION

Observe the following instruction. Otherwise, an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

- Do not use wheels other than the manufacturer's recommended size, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.

**ALUMINUM WHEEL PRECAUTIONS**

- When installing aluminum wheels, check that the wheel nuts are tight after driving your vehicle the first 1600 km (1000 miles).
- If you have rotated, repaired, or changed your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- When using tire chains, be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels.
- Use only the Lexus wheel nuts and wrench designed for your aluminum wheels.
- When balancing your wheels, use only Lexus balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer.
- As with any wheel, periodically check your aluminum wheels for damage. If damaged, replace immediately.

**SUSPENSION AND CHASSIS** CAUTION

Do not modify the suspension/chassis with lift kits, spacers, springs, etc. It can cause dangerous handling characteristics, resulting in loss of control.



## **SECTION 6-4**

---

### **SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS**

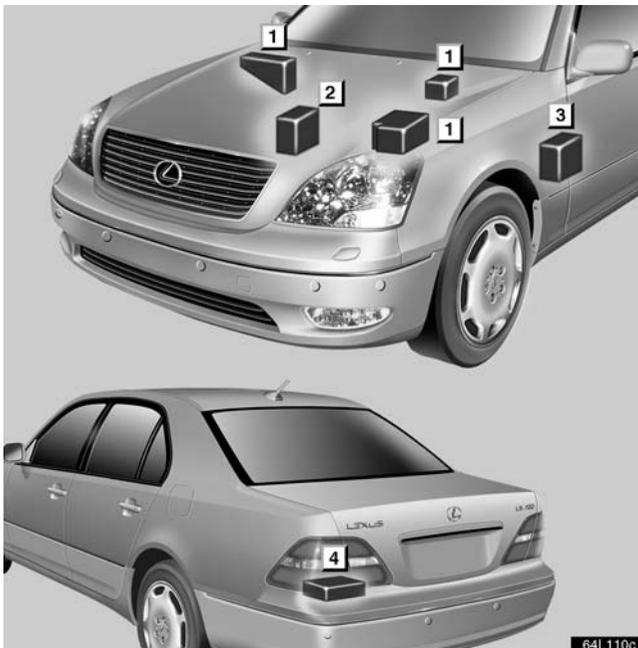
#### **Electrical components**

Specifications .....	384
Checking battery condition .....	390
Battery recharging precautions .....	393
Checking and replacing the blade type fuses .....	393
Checking the cartridge type fuses .....	396
Adding washer fluid .....	397
Checking the headlight aim .....	398
Replacing light bulbs .....	399

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

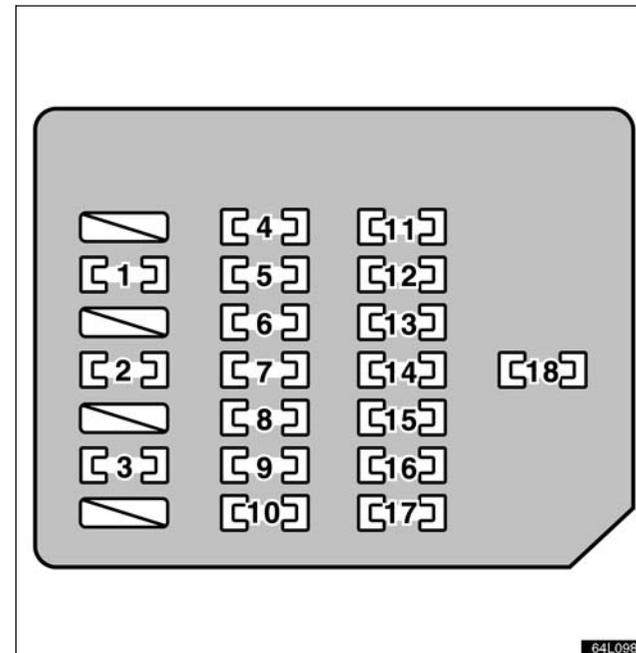
### SPECIFICATIONS

#### - FUSE LOCATIONS



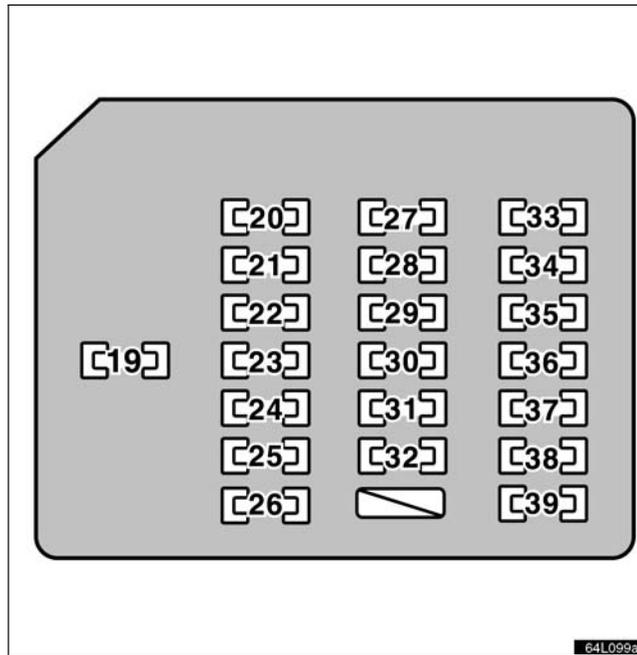
- ✂ 1 Engine compartment
- ✂ 2 Passenger's side kick panel
- ✂ 3 Driver's side kick panel
- ✂ 4 Trunk

#### - FUSES

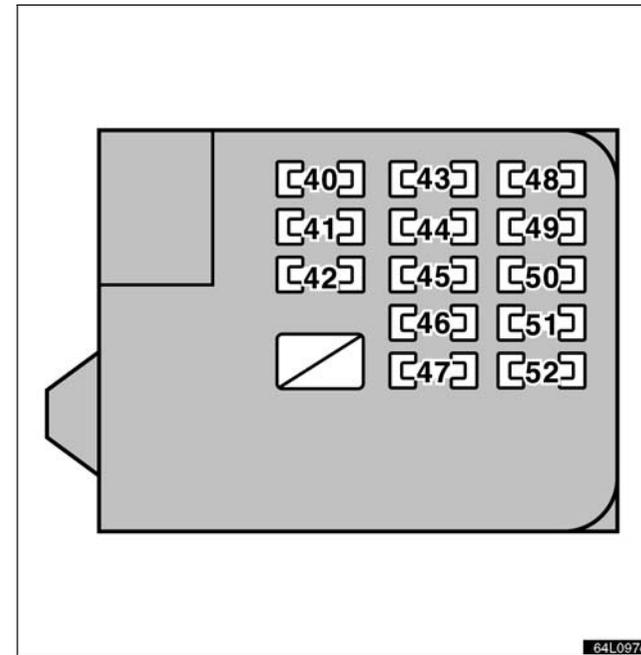


✂ Driver's side kick panel

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

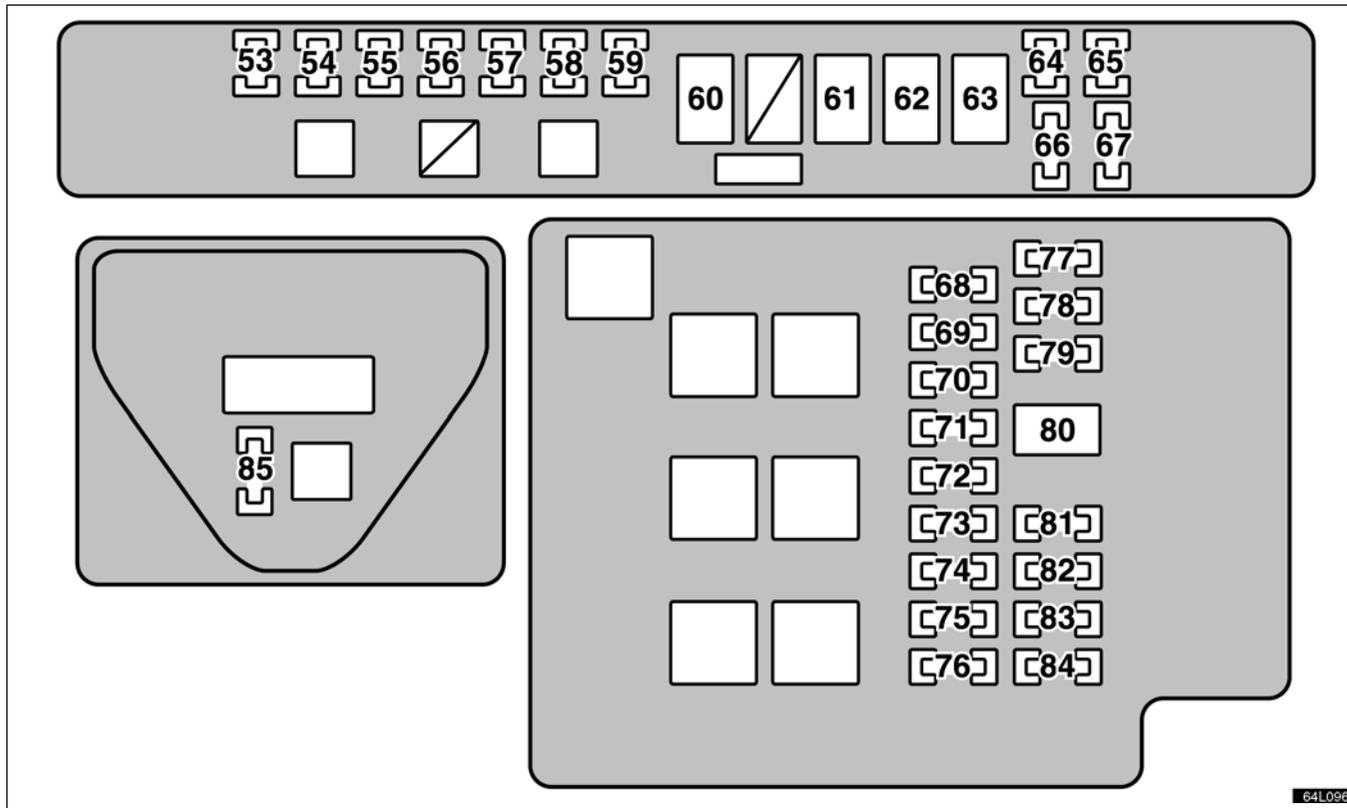


✕ Passenger's side kick panel



✕ Trunk

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS



✕ *Engine compartment*

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
1	TI & TE	20	Tilt and telescopic steering
2	PANEL	7.5	Instrument panel light, Glove box light, Clock
3	D P/SEAT	30	Power seat system
4	GAUGE	7.5	Gauges and meters, Lexus park assist system, Shift lock system
5	MPX-IG	7.5	Tilt and telescopic steering, Power door lock system, SRS, Power seat system
6	D S/HTR	15	Seat heater, Climate control seat system
7	AIR SUS	20	Electronically modulated air suspension system
8	D-ACC	7.5	Shift lock system, Theft deterrent system
9	PWR OUTLET	15	Power outlet
10	D-CIG	15	Rear cigarette lighter
11	OBD	7.5	On-board diagnosis system
12	AM1	7.5	Power source
13	ABS-IG	7.5	Vehicle skid control system
14	D B/ANC	5	Seat belts
15	SECURITY	7.5	Theft deterrent system
16	A/C	7.5	Air conditioning system

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
17	STOP	5	Stop lights
18	D RR-IG	10	Refreshing seat
19	IG2	7.5	SRS, Engine immobiliser system, Steering lock system
20	HAZ	15	Emergency flashers
21	STR LOCK	7.5	Steering lock system
22	CRT	7.5	Multi-information display
23	MPX-B1	7.5	Power door lock system, Engine immobiliser system, Steering lock system, Front power seat, Rear power seat
24	MPX-B3	7.5	Tilt and telescopic steering, Headlight switch, Windshield wiper and washer switch, Turn signal switch
25	DOME	10	Vanity lights, Outer foot lights, Ignition switch light, Clock, Gauges and meters, Interior lights, Personal lights
26	MPX-B2	7.5	Gauges and meters, Vehicle skid control system, Illuminated entry system, TEL
27	P RR-IG	10	Refreshing seat
28	H-LP LVL	5	Headlight leveling system
29	P-IG	7.5	Rain sensor, Air conditioning system, Moon roof, Multi-information display, Clock

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
30	P S/HTR	15	Seat heater, Climate control seat system
31	P-ACC	7.5	Air conditioning system, Audio system, Clock, Multi-information display, Illuminated entry system
32	P-CIG	15	Front cigarette lighter
33	RADIO NO.1	7.5	Audio system
34	RR DOOR LH	20	Power door lock system, Power window, Door closer system, Door courtesy lights
35	P DOOR	25	Power door lock system, Power rear view mirror control system, Outside rear view mirror defogger, Door closer system, Door courtesy lights
36	TEL	7.5	Audio system, Navigation system
37	P B/ANC	5	Seat belts
38	RR DOOR RH	20	Power door lock system, Power window, Door closer system, Door courtesy lights
39	D DOOR	25	Power door lock system, Door closer system, Power rear view mirror control system, Outside rear view mirror defogger, Door courtesy lights, Power windows

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
40	RR IG	7.5	Lexus park assist system, Electronically modulated air suspension system, Theft deterrent system
41	RR ACC	7.5	Audio system
42	RR ECU-B	7.5	Rear air conditioning system, Theft deterrent system, Trunk light, Refreshing rear seat
43	RR A/C	7.5	Rear air conditioning system
44	RR S/HTR	20	Seat heater
45	RR S/SHADE	15	Sunshade
46	LCE LP	7.5	License plate lights
47	S/ROOF	25	Moon roof
48	FUEL OPN	10	Fuel opener system
49	AMP, PP/SEAT	30	Audio system
50	P P/SEAT	30	Power seat system
51	RR SEAT LH	30	Power seat system
52	RR SEAT RH	30	Power seat system

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
53	LUG J/B	50	All components in "RR SEAT RH", "RR SEAT LH", "RR DOOR RH", "RR DOOR LH", "RR IG", "RR ECU-B", "P P/SEAT", "RR S/HTR", "RR S/SHADE", "RR A/C", "RR ACC", "FUEL OPN" and "LCE LP", Tail lights and Stop lights
54	ABS 2	40	Vehicle skid control system
55	HEATER	50	Air conditioning system
56	ABS 1	40	Vehicle skid control system
57	DEFOG	40	Rear window defogger
58	AIR SUS	40	Electronically modulated air suspension system
59	FAN	50	Air conditioning system
60	R/B	60	All components in "FR FOG", "TAIL", "WASHER", "FR IG", "WIP", "H-LP CRN" and "A/C IG"
61	D-J/B	80	All components in "TI & TE", "D P/SEAT", "A/C", "OBD", "STOP", "AM1", "MPX-IG", "ABS-IG", "GAUGE", "AIRSUS", "D S/HTR", "SECURITY", "PANEL", "D B/ANC", "PWR OUTLET", "D-CIG", "D RR-IG" and "D-ACC"
62	ALT	140	Charging system

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
63	P-J/B	80	All components in "S/ROOF", "AMP", "D DOOR", "H-LP LVL", "P DOOR", "P S/HTR", "P-IG", "P-ACC", "P B/ANC", "P-CIG", "TEL" and "P RR-IG"
64	BATT	30	All components in "RADIO NO.1", "CRT", "HAZ" and "STR LOCK"
65	AM 2	30	All components in "STA" and "IG2", Starting system
66	D/C CUT	20	All components in "DOME", "MPX-B1", "MPX-B2" and "MPS-B3"
67	ALT-S	5	Charging system
68	H-LP R LWR	15	Right-hand headlight (low beam)
69	H-LP L LWR	15	Left-hand headlight (low beam)
70	EFI NO.2	7.5	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
71	STA	7.5	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
72	INJ	10	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
73	IGN	7.5	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
74	FR IG	7.5	Electric cooling fan, Headlight cleaner, Charging system, Starting system, Rear window defogger
75	A/C IG	7.5	Air conditioning system
76	WIP	30	Windshield wiper
77	FR FOG	15	Fog lights
78	WASHER	20	Windshield washer
79	TAIL	7.5	Tail lights, Parking lights, Side marker lights
80	H-LP CLN	30	Headlight cleaner
81	EFI NO.1	30	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
82	HORN	10	Horns
83	ETCS	10	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
84	H-LP HI	20	Headlights (high beam)
85	ABS 3	7.5	Vehicle skid control system

## CHECKING BATTERY CONDITION

### Precautions



**CAUTION**

#### BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

The battery produces flammable and explosive hydrogen gas.

⚠ Do not cause a spark by contacting the battery terminals with tools.

⚠ Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.

The electrolyte contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

⚠ Avoid contact with eyes, skin or clothes.

⚠ Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.

⚠ Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.

⚠ Keep children away from the battery.

#### EMERGENCY MEASURES

⚠ If electrolyte gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the medical office.

- ⚠ If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or burn, get medical attention immediately.
- ⚠ If electrolyte gets on your clothes, there is a possibility of its soaking through to your skin, so immediately take off the exposed clothing and follow the procedure above, if necessary.
- ⚠ If you accidentally swallow electrolyte, drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Then go immediately for emergency help.
- ⚠ **Warning:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

### Checking battery exterior



✂ **1** Terminals **2** Hold-down clamp

**Check the battery for corroded or loose connections, cracks, or loose hold-down clamps.**

1. If the battery is corroded, wash it off with a solution of warm water and baking soda. Coat the terminals with grease to prevent further corrosion.
2. If the connections are loose, tighten the clamp bolts – but do not overtighten.
3. Tighten the hold-down clamp only enough to keep the battery firmly in place. Overtightening may damage the battery case.

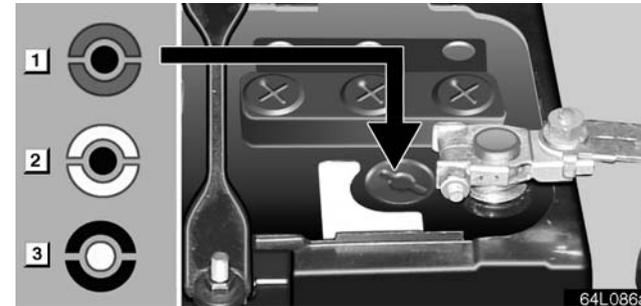
## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

### NOTICE

-  **Make sure the engine and all accessories are turned off before performing maintenance.**
-  **When checking the battery, remove the ground cable first and reinstall it last.**
-  **Be careful not to cause a short circuit with tools.**
-  **Take care no solution gets into the battery when washing it.**

### Checking battery condition

#### Checking by indicator



#### Check the battery condition by the indicator color.

- 1** BLUE – Good condition.
- 2** WHITE – Charging necessary. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.
- 3** RED – Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

### NOTICE

**Do not refill the battery with water.**

## BATTERY RECHARGING PRECAUTIONS

During recharging, the battery is producing hydrogen gas.

Therefore, before recharging:

1. If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
2. Make sure the power switch on the recharger is off when connecting the charger cables to the battery and when disconnecting them.

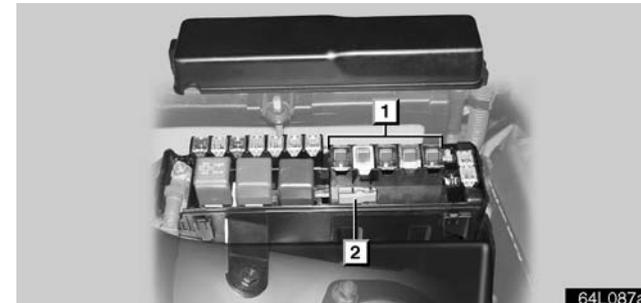
### CAUTION

- Always charge the battery in an unconfined area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.
- Only do a slow charge (5 A or less). Charging at a quicker rate is dangerous. The battery may explode causing personal injuries.

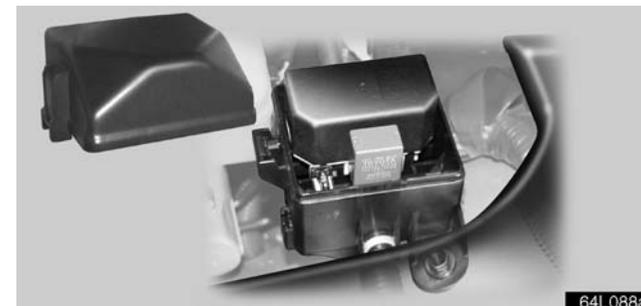
### NOTICE

*Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, make sure all accessories are turned off.*

## CHECKING AND REPLACING THE BLADE TYPE FUSES



✂ Engine compartment 1 Spare fuses 2 Pull-out tool



✂ Engine compartment

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

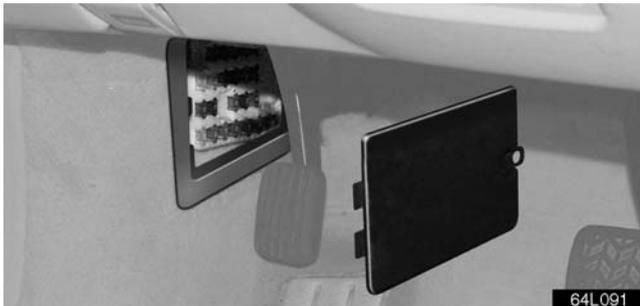
---



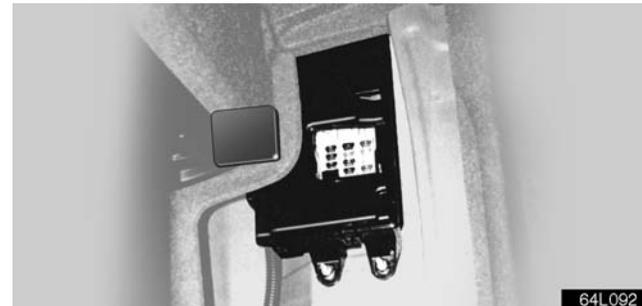
✂ *Engine compartment*



✂ *Passenger's side kick panel*

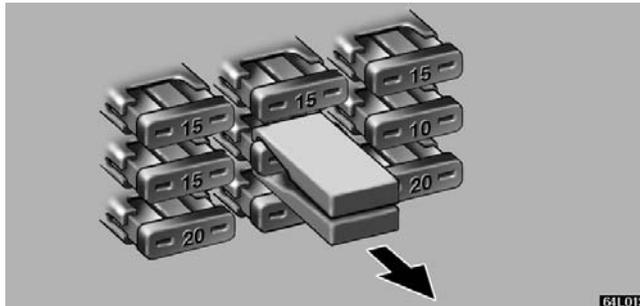


✂ *Driver's side kick panel*

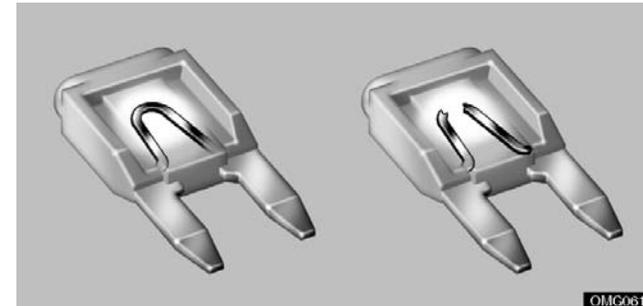


✂ *Trunk*

- 1. Turn the ignition switch off and open the fuse box lid.**  
Determine which fuse may be causing the problem. The lid of the fuse box shows the name of the circuit for each fuse.



**2. Make sure the inoperative component is turned off. Pull the suspected fuse straight out with the pull-out tool and check it. If it has blown, push a new fuse into the clips.**



✕ **Good**

✕ **Blown**

a. Look carefully at the fuse. If the thin wire is broken, the fuse has blown. If you are not sure or if it is too dark to see, try replacing the suspected fuse with one of the same value that you know is good.

b. Only install a fuse with the amperage rating designated on the fuse box lid.

If you do not have a spare fuse, in an emergency you can pull out the "D-CIG" "P RR-IG" or "OBD" fuse, which may be dispensable for normal driving, and use it if its amperage rating is the same.

If you cannot use one of the same amperage, use one lower than, but as close as possible to, the amperage. If the amperage is lower than that specified, the fuse might blow out again but this does not indicate anything wrong. Be sure to get the correct fuse as soon as possible and return the substitute to its original clips.

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

---

It is a good idea to purchase a set of spare fuses and keep them in your vehicle for emergencies.

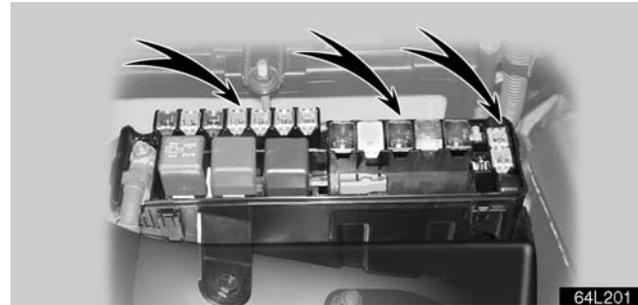
If the new fuse immediately blows out, there is a problem with the electrical system. Have your Lexus dealer correct it as soon as possible.



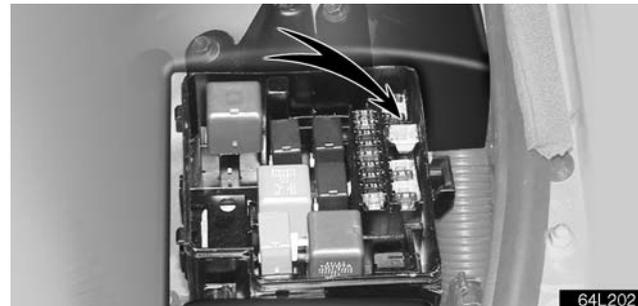
### CAUTION

Never use a fuse with a higher amperage rating, or any other object, in place of a fuse. This may cause extensive damage and possibly a fire.

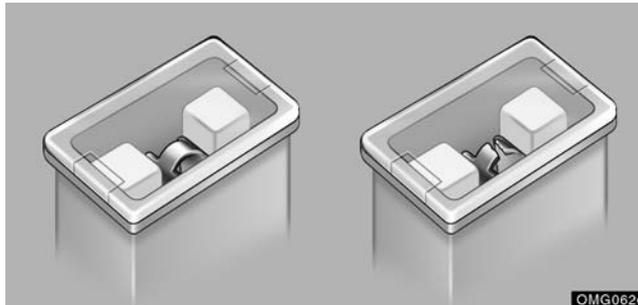
## CHECKING THE CARTRIDGE TYPE FUSES



✂ *Engine compartment*



✂ *Engine compartment*



✕ **Good**

✕ **Blown**

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the blade type fuses are O.K., check the cartridge type fuses. If any of the cartridge type fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

If there is an overload in the circuits from the battery, the fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

**CAUTION**

Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent for replacement. Never install an ordinary wire—even for a temporary fix. This may cause extensive damage and possibly a fire.

**NOTICE**

Before replacing the fuses, have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

**ADDING WASHER FLUID**



If the washer tank becomes nearly empty, add washer fluid.

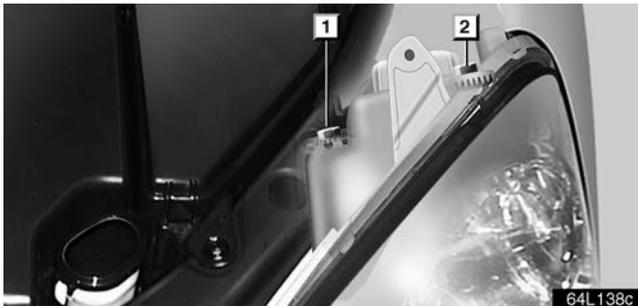
You may use plain water as washer fluid. However, in cold areas where temperatures range below the freezing point, use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at your Lexus dealer and most auto parts stores. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with water.

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

### NOTICE

*Do not use engine antifreeze or any other substitute because it may damage your vehicle's paint.*

### CHECKING THE HEADLIGHT AIM

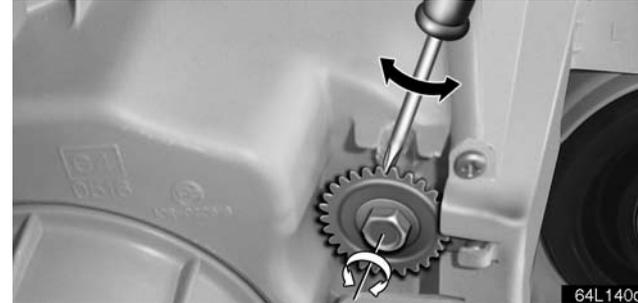


- ✕ **1** Vertical movement adjusting bolt 1
- 2** Vertical movement adjusting bolt 2

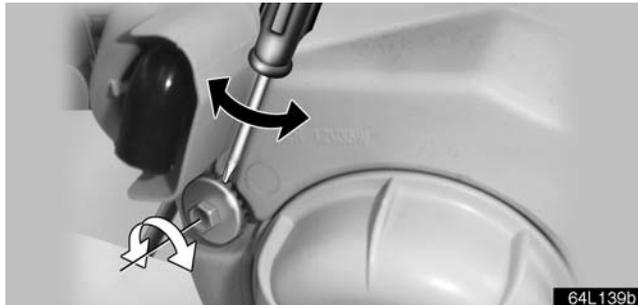
Before checking the headlight aim:

1. Be sure that the body around the headlight is not deformed.
2. Park the vehicle on a level spot.
3. Get into the driver's seat and put the vehicle in a state ready for driving (with a full tank).
4. Bounce the vehicle several times.

### Adjusting the vertical aiming



1. Turn the vertical movement adjusting bolt 1 in either direction using a Phillips-head screwdriver. At this time, keep the turning direction and number of turns in mind.



2. Turn the vertical movement adjusting bolt 2 the same number of turns and in the same direction at step 1 using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

## REPLACING LIGHT BULBS

The illustrations on the following pages show the locations of light bulbs. If it is necessary to replace a bulb, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Use bulbs with the bulb numbers and wattage ratings given in the table.

### CAUTION

-  To prevent burning yourself, do not replace the light bulbs while they are hot.
-  Do not disassemble, repair or take apart the low beam headlight bulbs, connector, power supply circuits and rotated components. Or you may be injured by electric shocks. Call your dealer when the headlights fail to work or have to be replaced or disposed of.
-  Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and require special handling. They can burst or shatter if scratched or dropped. Hold a bulb only by its plastic or metal case. Do not touch the glass part of a bulb with bare hands.

### NOTICE

*Only use a bulb of the listed type.*

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

---

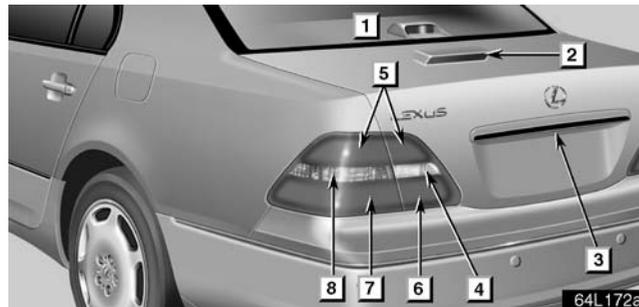
The inside of the lens of exterior lights such as headlights may temporarily fog up when the lens becomes wet in the rain or in a car wash. This is not a problem because the fogging is caused by the temperature difference between the outside and inside of the lens, just like the windshield fogged up in the rain. However, if there is a large drop of water on the inside of the lens, or if there is water pooled inside the light, contact your Lexus dealer.

### LIGHT LOCATION

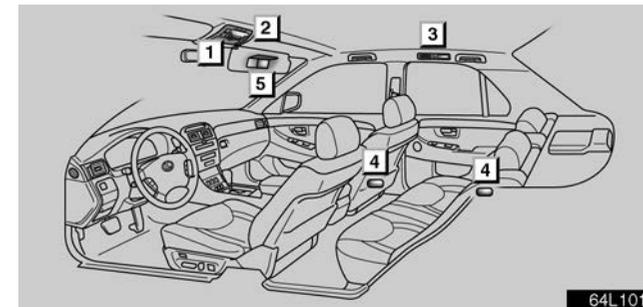


	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
<b>1</b>	Headlight (High beam)	9005	60	A
<b>2</b>	Parking light	---	5	D
<b>3</b>	Headlight (Low beam)	---	35	B
<b>4</b>	Front turn signal light	---	21	D
<b>5</b>	Front side marker light	---	5	D
<b>6</b>	Fog light	9006	51	C

## ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS



Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
<b>1</b> High mounted stoplight	---	21	D
<b>2</b> Trunk light	194	3.8	D
<b>3</b> License plate light	---	5	D
<b>4</b> Back-up light	---	21	D
<b>5</b> Tail lights	---	5	D
<b>6</b> Stop light (Vehicles sold in U.S.A.)	---	21	D
Rear fog light (Vehicles sold in Canada)	---	21	D
<b>7</b> Tail light (Vehicles sold in U.S.A.)	---	5	D
Stop light (Vehicles sold in Canada)	---	21	D
<b>8</b> Rear turn signal light	---	21	D



Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
<b>1</b> Front personal light	---	8	F
<b>2</b> Front interior light	---	8	E
<b>3</b> Rear interior light	---	8	D
Rear personal light	---	8	D
<b>4</b> Door courtesy light	194	3.8	D
<b>5</b> Vanity light	---	3	E

- A: HB3 halogen bulbs
- B: D2R discharge bulbs
- C: HB4 halogen bulbs
- D: Wedge base bulbs
- E: Double end bulbs
- F: Single end bulbs



## **SECTION 6-5**

---

### **SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS**

#### **Body**

Specifications .....	404
Protecting your vehicle from corrosion .....	405
Washing and waxing .....	406
Cleaning the interior .....	408

## BODY

---

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### – DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHT

Overall length	4995 mm (196.7 in.)
Overall width	1830 mm (72.0 in.)
Overall height – with electronically modulated air suspension – without electronically modulated air suspension	1470 mm (57.9 in.)* 1490 mm (58.7 in.)*
Wheelbase	2925 mm (115.2 in.)
Tread – Front with electronically modulated air suspension without electronically modulated air suspension – Rear with electronically modulated air suspension without electronically modulated air suspension	1575 mm (62.0 in.) 1570 mm (61.8 in.) 1575 mm (62.0 in.) 1570 mm (61.8 in.)
Vehicle capacity weight (occupants + luggage)	410 kg (900 lb.)

\*Unladen vehicle

#### – FUEL TANK

Capacity	84 L (22.2 gal., 18.5 Imp.gal.)
----------	---------------------------------

## PROTECTING YOUR VEHICLE FROM CORROSION

Proper care of your Lexus can help ensure long-term corrosion prevention.

**The most common causes of corrosion to your vehicle are:**

- ❖ The accumulation of road salt, dirt and moisture in hard-to-reach areas under the vehicle.
- ❖ Chipping of paint or undercoating caused by minor accidents or by stones and gravel.

**The following conditions will cause or accelerate corrosion of your vehicle, so it is important to keep your vehicle, particularly the underside, as clean as possible and to repair any damage to paint or protective coatings as soon as possible.**

- ❖ The presence of road salt or dust control chemicals, salt in the air near the sea coast, industrial air pollution.
- ❖ High humidity, especially at temperatures just above freezing point.
- ❖ Certain parts of your vehicle are wet or damp for an extended period of time, even though other parts of the vehicle are dry.
- ❖ Components of the vehicle which are prevented from quick-drying due to lack of proper ventilation are exposed to high ambient temperature.

**To help prevent corrosion on your Lexus, follow these guidelines:**

**Keep your vehicle clean by regular washing.** In addition, observe the following points.

- ❖ If you drive on salted roads in the winter or if you live near the ocean, you should hose off the undercarriage at least once a month to minimize corrosion.
- ❖ High pressure water or steam is effective for cleaning the vehicle's underside and wheel housings. Pay particular attention to these areas as it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to simply wet the mud and debris without removing them. The lower edge of doors, rocker panels and frame members have drain holes which should not be allowed to clog with dirt as trapped water in these areas can cause corrosion.
- ❖ Wash the underside of the vehicle thoroughly when winter is over.

See "Washing and waxing" on page 406 for more tips.

**Check the condition of your vehicle's paint and trim.** If you find any chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately to prevent corrosion from starting. If the chips or scratches have gone through the bare metal, have a qualified body shop make the repair.

## BODY

---

**Check the interior of your vehicle.** Water and dirt can accumulate under the floor mats and could cause corrosion. Occasionally check under the mats to make sure the area is dry. Be particularly careful when transporting chemicals, cleansers, fertilizers, salt, etc. These should be transported in proper containers. If a spill or leak should occur, immediately clean and dry the area.

**Keep your vehicle in a well ventilated garage or a roofed place. Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage.** If you wash your vehicle in the garage, or if you drive it in covered with water or snow, your garage may be so damp it will cause corrosion. Even if your garage is heated, a wet vehicle can corrode if the ventilation is poor.

## WASHING AND WAXING

### Washing your Lexus

**Keep your vehicle clean by regular washing.**

The following cases may cause weakness to the paint or corrosion to the body and parts. Wash your vehicle as soon as possible.

- 🔧 When driving in a coastal area
- 🔧 When driving on a road sprinkled with antifreeze
- 🔧 When having coal tar, tree sap, bird droppings and carcass of an insect
- 🔧 When driving in the areas where there is a lot of smoke, soot, dust, iron dust and chemical substance
- 🔧 When the vehicle becomes remarkably dirty with dust and mud

### Hand-washing your Lexus

**Work in the shade and wait until the vehicle body is not hot to the touch.**

1. Rinse off loose dirt with a hose. Remove any mud or road salt from the underside of the vehicle or in the wheel wells.
2. Wash with a mild car-wash soap, mixed according to the manufacturer's instructions. Use a soft cotton mitt and keep it wet by dipping it frequently into the wash water. Do not rub hard – let the soap and water remove the dirt.

**Plastic wheel ornaments:** The plastic wheel ornaments are damaged easily by organic substances. If any organic substance splashes an ornament, be sure to wash it off with water and check if the ornament is damaged.

 **CAUTION**

**Do not attach the heavily damaged plastic wheel ornament. It may fly off the wheel and cause accidents while the vehicle is moving.**

**Aluminum wheels:** Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent.

**Urethane bumpers and side moldings:** Wash carefully. Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners. The bumper and side molding faces are soft.

**Road tar:** Remove with turpentine or cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces.

**NOTICE**

***Do not use organic substances (gasoline, kerosene, benzine or strong solvents), which may be toxic or cause damage.***

3. Rinse thoroughly – dried soap can cause streaking. In hot weather you may need to rinse each section right after you wash it.

4. To prevent water spots, dry the vehicle using a clean soft cotton towel. Do not rub or press hard – you might scratch the paint.

**Automatic car wash**

**NOTICE**

***To prevent damage to the antenna, make sure to remove it before driving your Lexus through an automatic car wash.***

Your vehicle may be washed in an automatic car wash, but remember that the paint can be scratched by some type of brushes, unfiltered washing water, or the washing process itself. Scratching reduces paint durability and gloss, especially on darker colors. The manager of the car wash should be able to advise you whether the process is safe for the paint on your vehicle.

**Waxing your Lexus**

**Polishing and waxing is recommended to maintain the original beauty of your Lexus' finish.**

Once a month or if the vehicle surface does not repel water well, apply wax.

1. Always wash and dry the vehicle before you begin waxing, even if you are using a combined cleaner and wax.
2. Use a good quality polish and wax. If the finish has become extremely weathered, use a car-cleaning polish, followed by a separate wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Be sure to polish and wax the chrome trim as well as the paint.

## BODY

---

3. Wax the vehicle again when water does not bead but remains on the surface in large patches.

### CLEANING THE INTERIOR



#### CAUTION

- ⚠ Be careful not to splash water or spill liquid on the floor. This may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, resulting in serious injury.**
- ⚠ Do not wash the vehicle floor with water, or allow water to get onto the floor when cleaning the vehicle interior or exterior. Water may get into audio components or other electrical components above or under the floor carpet (or mat) and cause a malfunction; and it may cause body corrosion.**

### Leather Interior

The selected leather is used in your Lexus. Due to a leather product, some parts of leather may be rough, uneven or scratched originally.

To keep good appearance, we recommend you to clean it periodically twice a year.

Remove dirt on the leather in the following ways:

1. Wipe it off lightly using a soft cloth (e.g. gauze) dampened with 5% solution of neutral detergent for wool.
2. Wring water from a clean cloth and thoroughly wipe off all traces of detergent with it.
3. Wipe off the surface of the leather with a dry soft cloth. Allow the leather to dry in a ventilated shaded area. Excess of wet may cause the hardening or shrinking of the leather.

**NOTICE**

- ⚠ *Dirt or sand adhered to the leather may damage the treated surface and cause it to wear earlier. Remove dirt or sand using a vacuum cleaner.*
- ⚠ *If a stain should fail to come out with a neutral detergent, apply a cleaner that does not contain an organic solvent.*
- ⚠ *Never use organic substances such as benzine, alcohol or gasoline, or alkaline or acid solutions for cleaning the leather as these could cause discoloring.*
- ⚠ *Use of a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, etc. may scratch the fine grained surface of the leather.*
- ⚠ *Mildew may develop on soiled leather upholstery. Be especially careful to avoid oil spots. Try to keep your upholstery always clean.*
- ⚠ *Long exposure to direct sunlight may cause the leather surface to harden and shrink. Keep your vehicle in a shaded area, especially in the summer.*
- ⚠ *The interior of your vehicle is apt to heat up on hot summer days, so avoid placing on the upholstery items made of vinyl or plastic or containing wax as these tend to stick to leather when warm.*
- ⚠ *Improper cleaning of the leather upholstery could result in discoloration or staining.*

**Synthetic Leather Areas  
(Dash and sun visors)**

The synthetic leather areas may be easily cleaned with a mild soap or detergent and water.

First vacuum over the upholstery to remove loose dirt. Then, using a sponge or soft cloth, apply the soap solution to the synthetic leather. After allowing it to soak in for a few minutes to loosen the dirt, remove the dirt and wipe off the soap with a clean damp cloth. If all the dirt does not come off, repeat the procedure. Commercial foaming-type cleaners are also available which work well. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

**NOTICE**

*Do not use solvent, thinner, gasoline or window cleaner on the interior.*

## BODY

---

### Carpets, Windows and Seat Belts

Begin by vacuuming thoroughly to remove as much dirt as possible. Several types of foam cleaners are available; some are in aerosol cans and others are powders or liquids which you mix with water to produce a foam. To shampoo the carpets, use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water – the best results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible. Read the shampoo instructions and follow them closely.

**The seat belts may be cleaned with mild soap and water or with lukewarm water.**

Use a cloth or sponge. As you are cleaning, check the belts for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

#### NOTICE

-  **Use a good foam-type shampoo to clean the carpets.**
-  **Do not use dye or bleach on the belts – it may weaken them.**
-  **Do not use the belts until they become dry.**
-  **The windows may be cleaned with any household window cleaner.**
-  **When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires.**

### Air Conditioning Control Panel, Car Audio, Instrument Panel, Console Panel, and Switches

Use a soft damp cloth for cleaning.

Soak a clean soft cloth in water or lukewarm water then lightly wipe off any dirt.

#### NOTICE

-  **Do not use organic substances (solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline, etc.) or alkaline or acidic solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloring, staining or peeling of the surface.**
-  **If you use cleaners or polishing agents, make sure their ingredients do not include the substances mentioned above.**
-  **If you use a liquid car freshener, do not spill the liquid onto the vehicle's interior surfaces. It may contain the ingredients mentioned above. Immediately clean any spill using the method mentioned above.**

If you have any questions about the cleaning of your Lexus, your local Lexus dealer will be pleased to answer them.

# **SECTION 7**

---

## **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS FOR U.S. OWNERS**

### **Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners**

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners ..... 412

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS FOR U.S. OWNERS

---

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS FOR U.S. OWNERS

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in Washington, D.C. area) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

## ***INDEX***

---



## INDEX (A – B)

<b>A</b>	
"ABS" warning light .....	281
Adjusting lumbar support .....	112
Adding washer fluid .....	397
Adjustment	
Driver's seat cushion length .....	109
Driver's seat lumbar support .....	112
Front seat cushion angle and height ..	111
Front seat position .....	109
Front seatback angle .....	111
Rear seat position .....	115
Seat belts .....	126
Air purification .....	197
Airbags (SRS) .....	136
Aluminum wheel precautions .....	381
Antifreeze .....	362
Anti-lock brake system .....	280
Anti-theft steering column lock .....	232
Appearance care	
Cleaning the interior .....	408
Protecting your Lexus from corrosion .	405
Washing and waxing .....	406
Audio system .....	200
Automatic air conditioning	
controls .....	180, 182

Automatic transmission	
Driving with an automatic	
transmission .....	235
Shift pattern .....	235
Shifting speed .....	238
Auxiliary boxes .....	84
Auxiliary catch, Engine hood .....	98

<b>B</b>	
Battery	
Checking battery condition .....	390
Gas caution .....	390
Handling safety .....	390
Recharging precautions .....	393
Winter driving tips .....	288
Before starting the engine .....	232
Belts	
Seat belts .....	126
Brake pad wear limit warning light .....	283
Brake system warning light .....	48
Brakes	
Anti-lock brake system .....	280
Booster .....	279
Braking tips .....	279
Fluid level .....	371
Pad wear limit warning light .....	283
Parking .....	233
Parking brake reminder light .....	48
Break-in period .....	286
Brightness control .....	67

**INDEX (C – D)**

**C**

Car audio system operating tips ..... 222  
Carbon monoxide caution ..... 231  
Card holder ..... 87  
Cassette tape player ..... 212  
Center vents ..... 194  
Checking and replacing the  
blade type fuses ..... 393  
Checking brake fluid ..... 371  
Checking the cartridge type fuses ..... 396  
Checking the engine oil level ..... 358  
Checking the radiator and condenser ... 363  
Child restraint ..... 151  
Child restraint precautions ..... 151  
Child-protector, Rear door ..... 22  
Cigarette lighter and ashtray ..... 74  
Cleaning the interior ..... 408  
Climate control seat switches ..... 38  
Clock ..... 73  
Coat hook ..... 90  
Coin box ..... 83  
Cold weather, Operation ..... 288  
Compact disc player ..... 215  
Compass ..... 63  
Converters, Three-way catalytic ..... 230  
Cool box ..... 88

Condenser  
Checking the condenser ..... 363  
Consumer information  
Uniform tire quality grading ..... 377  
Controls, Instrument panel ... Pictorial index  
Cooling system  
Coolant level ..... 361  
Engine overheating ..... 302  
Radiator and reservoir ..... 361  
Radiator cap ..... 302  
Winter driving tips ..... 288  
Corrosion prevention ..... 405  
Cruise control ..... 248  
Cruise information ..... 54  
Cup holder ..... 81  
Curtain shield airbags ..... 138

**D**

Defogger, Rear window ..... 32  
Dimmer switch, Headlight ..... 5, 26  
Directional signals ..... 5, 26  
Discharge warning light ..... 50  
Does your vehicle need repairing? ..... 338  
Do-it-yourself maintenance ..... 344  
Door closer ..... 21  
Door locks ..... 19  
Driver's seat ..... 2, 108  
Driver's seat cushion length ..... 109  
Driving

Automatic transmission ..... 235  
Driving tips ..... 285  
Driving position memory system ..... 170  
Driving tips  
Driving tips in various conditions ..... 286  
Driving with an automatic  
transmission ..... 235  
Economical driving ..... 295  
Good braking practice ..... 279  
Good driving practice ..... 241  
Winter driving tips ..... 288  
During break-in ..... 286  
Dynamic laser cruise control ..... 251  
Dynamic laser cruise control  
Braking control ..... 264  
Changing the dynamic laser cruise  
control mode ..... 252  
Changing vehicle-to-vehicle distance  
setting ..... 263  
Conventional cruise control fixed  
speed mode ..... 269  
Laser radar sensor ..... 266  
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control  
mode ..... 253



## INDEX (E – F)

E	
Economical driving	
Saving money on both fuel and repairs	295
Electrical system	
Battery	390, 393
Fuse locations	384
Fuses	384, 393, 396
Spark plugs	364
Electronic throttle control system	242
Emergency flasher switch	36
Emergency, in case of	
Blown fuse	395
Emergency flasher switch	36
Flat tire	303
If you lose your keys	330
If your vehicle needs to be towed	314
If your vehicle becomes stuck	313
If your vehicle will not start	298
Jump starting	299
Overheating	302
Towing	314
Engine	
Antifreeze	362
Before starting the engine	232

Checking the coolant level	361
Coolant	361
Coolant temperature gauge	44
Emission control device	230
Engine compartment	343
Exhaust gas caution	231
Hood release	98
Identification number	342
Oil consumption	356
Oil level	358
Overheating	302
Spark plugs	364
Starting procedure	234
Three-way catalytic converters	230
Engine coolant, Winter driving tips	288
Engine immobiliser system	11
Engine oil, Winter driving tips	288
Engine coolant temperature gauge	44
Exhaust gas caution	231

F	
Facts about engine oil consumption	356
First-aid kit net	94
Flasher, Headlight	5, 26
Flat tire	
After changing wheels	313
Changing tires	309
If you have a flat tire	303
Jack point	308
Jacking precautions	303
Jacking up	308
Loosening wheel nuts	308
Lowering vehicle	311
Reinstalling wheel ornament	312
Removing wheel ornament	310
Wheel block	307
Wheel nuts	308
Floor mat	89
Fluid level	
Battery	390
Brake	371
Engine coolant	361
Power steering	372
Washer fluid	397
Fog light	
Front	27
Rear	28
Foreign countries, Operation in	286

**INDEX (F – J)**

Front passenger's seat ..... 113  
 Front seat  
   Adjusting seat cushion length ..... 109  
   Lumbar support ..... 112  
   Position ..... 109  
   Seat cushion angle and height ..... 111  
   Seatback angle ..... 111  
 Fuel  
   Filler door opener ..... 102  
   Fuel economy ..... 295  
   Fuel information ..... 353  
   Gauge ..... 44  
   MTBE ..... 354  
   Operation in foreign countries ..... 286  
   Tank cap ..... 102  
 Fuse  
   Blade type fuses ..... 393  
   Cartridge type fuses ..... 396  
   Fuse locations ..... 384  
   Fuse box ..... 343

**G**

Garage door opener ..... 78  
 Gas station information ... Inside back cover  
 Gauge  
   Engine coolant temperature ..... 44  
   Fuel ..... 44  
 Glove box ..... 77  
 Graphic information ..... 57  
 Good driving practice ..... 241

**H**

Hazard switch ..... 36  
 Headlight cleaner switch ..... 31  
 Headlight switch ..... 5, 24  
 Head restraints ..... 116  
 Height control system ..... 274  
 High speed operation  
   During break-in ..... 286  
 Hood release, Engine ..... 98  
 How to start the engine ..... 234

**I**

Identification  
   Engine ..... 342  
   Vehicle ..... 342  
 Ignition switch ..... 232  
 Immobiliser,  
   Engine immobiliser system ..... 11  
 Ignition switch light ..... 72  
 Instrument panel  
   Brightness control ..... 67  
   Cigarette lighter and ashtray ..... 74  
   Clock ..... 73  
   Fuel gauge ..... 44  
   Multi information display ..... 54  
   Odometer ..... 46  
   Outside temperature display ..... 73  
   Tachometer ..... 45  
   Trip meter ..... 46  
   Twin trip meter ..... 46  
 Inside rear view mirror ..... 125  
 Instrument panel light control ..... 67  
 Instrument panel overview ... Pictorial index  
 Interior lights ..... 71  
 Internal trunk release handle ..... 101

**J**

Jack, location ..... 306  
 Jump starting ..... 299



## INDEX (K – O)

---

### K

Keys .....	8
Key reminder buzzer .....	52

### L

Lexus link system .....	321
Lexus park assist system .....	243
Light bulbs, Replacing .....	399
Lights, Interior	
Ignition switch light .....	72
Interior lights .....	71
Personal lights .....	72
Lock	
Doors .....	19
Steering column .....	232
Trunk lid .....	99
Trunk lid opener .....	100
Low fuel level warning light .....	44
Lower vent .....	195
Luggage stowage precautions .....	94
Luggage net .....	93

### M

Maintenance	
Do-it-yourself maintenance .....	344
Does your vehicle need repairing? .....	338
General maintenance .....	335
Maintenance requirements .....	334
Parts and tools .....	346
Where to go for service? .....	335
Malfunction indicator lamp .....	50
Manual sunshades .....	92
Master warning light .....	51
Maximum allowable speed .....	239
Mirrors	
Anti-glare inside rear view .....	125
Folding rear view .....	123
Outside rear view .....	121
Power rear view .....	122
Vanity .....	70
Moon roof .....	104
MTBE .....	354
Multi-information display .....	54

### N

New vehicle break-in .....	286
----------------------------	-----

### O

Odometer .....	46
Oil	
Checking the engine oil .....	358
Consumption .....	356
Power steering .....	372
Viscosity and grade .....	360
Open door warning light .....	52
Opener	
Trunk lid .....	99
Fuel filler door .....	102
Operation in foreign countries .....	286
Outer foot lights .....	124
Outside rear view mirrors .....	121
Outside temperature display .....	73
Overhead console box .....	83
Overheating, Engine .....	302
Overview	
Engine compartment .....	343

**INDEX (P – S)**

**P**

Parking brake  
 Operation ..... 233  
 Reminder light ..... 48  
 Parts ..... 346  
 Personal lights ..... 72  
 Polishing ..... 406  
 Power door locks ..... 20  
 Power outlets ..... 75  
 Power rear view mirror control ..... 122  
 Power steering fluid level ..... 372  
 Power window switches ..... 33  
 Protecting your Lexus from corrosion ... 405

**Q**

Quick index ..... Back cover

**R**

Radiator  
 Checking the radiator ..... 363  
 Coolant, Engine ..... 361  
 Radio ..... 206  
 Radio, FM reception tips ..... 223  
 Rear air conditioning controls ..... 196  
 Rear armrest ..... 115  
 Rear console box ..... 76  
 Rear controller ..... 220  
 Rear door child–protector ..... 22  
 Rear electric sunshade ..... 91  
 Rear seat position memory system .... 172  
 Rear seats ..... 115  
 Rear seat belts,  
 Seat belt comfort guides ..... 130  
 Rear vents ..... 195  
 Rear view mirror, Anti–glare inside ..... 125  
 Rear view mirrors, Folding ..... 123  
 Rear view mirrors, Outside ..... 121  
 Rear view mirrors, Power ..... 122  
 Rear window defogger switch ..... 32  
 Refreshing rear seat switches ..... 41  
 Reporting safety defects  
 for U.S. owners ..... 412

**S**

Safety  
 Reporting safety defects  
 for U.S. owners ..... 412  
 Scrapping of your vehicle ..... Introduction  
 Seats, Seat adjustments ..... 108  
 Seat belt comfort guides ..... 130  
 Seat belt extender ..... 131  
 Seat belt pretensioners ..... 133  
 Seat belts  
 Cleaning ..... 410  
 Fastening ..... 128  
 Seat belt precautions ..... 126  
 Seat belt pretensioners ..... 133  
 Seat belt reminder light ..... 49  
 Seat heater switches ..... 37  
 Service and maintenance ..... 334  
 Service reminder indicators ..... 46  
 Shoulder belt anchor adjustment ..... 129  
 Side airbags ..... 137  
 Side vents ..... 195  
 Slip indicator light ..... 276, 277  
 Spare tire ..... 306  
 Spark plugs ..... 364  
 Specifications  
 Engine ..... 350  
 Chassis ..... 366  
 Electrical component ..... 384  
 Body ..... 404

## INDEX (S – W)

SRS airbags .....	136
SRS warning light .....	49
Starting	
Cold weather .....	288
Engine .....	234
Jump starting .....	299
Steering	
Column lock .....	232
Telescopic steering column .....	119
Tilt steering wheel .....	119
Pad switches .....	221
Sunshades .....	91
Manual sunshade .....	92
Rear electric sunshade .....	91
Sun visors .....	70
Supplemental restraint system (SRS) ..	136
Suspension and chassis .....	381
Switch	
Emergency flasher .....	36
Fog light .....	27
Headlight .....	5, 24
Headlight cleaner .....	5, 31
Headlight dimmer and turn signal .....	26
Ignition .....	232
Rear window defogger .....	32
Windshield wiper and washer .....	28

### T

Tachometer .....	45
Telescopic steering column .....	119
Theft deterrent system .....	176
Theft prevention labels .....	178
Tilt steering wheel .....	119
Tires	
Chains .....	379
Changing .....	309
Flat tire .....	303
Inflation .....	373
Rotation .....	375
Snow .....	379
Spare .....	306
Tire information .....	373
Types .....	283
Uniform tire quality grading .....	377
Tool box .....	306
Tools .....	346
Towing	
Emergency towing .....	318
If your vehicle needs to be towed .....	314
Trailer .....	289
Traction control system .....	276
Trailer towing .....	289
Transporting your Lexus by flat bed .....	316
Trip meter .....	46
Trunk storage extension .....	86
Trunk lid .....	99

Trunk lid opener .....	100
Turn signals .....	26
Twin trip meter .....	46
Types of tires .....	283

### V

Vanity mirrors .....	70
Vehicle identification number (VIN) .....	342
Vehicle skid control system .....	277

### W

Warning buzzers .....	46
Warning messages .....	58
Washer fluid, Adding .....	397
Washing and waxing .....	406
Wheels, Aluminum .....	381
Windshield wiper and washer switch .....	28
Winter driving tips .....	288
Wireless remote control transmitter .....	13

## GAS STATION INFORMATION

🔍 **Fuel selection:**

Select premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher for optimum engine performance. However, if such premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91).

🔍 **Fuel tank capacity:**

84 L (22.2 gal., 18.5 Imp.gal.)

🔍 **Engine oil:**

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent

Oil grade: API grade SJ “Energy–Conserving”, SL “Energy–Conserving” or ILSAC multigrade engine oil.

Recommended oil viscosity – SAE 5W–30 if normal temperatures are below 38°C (100°F)

Oil capacity: L (qt., Imp.qt.)

Drain and refill

with filter 4.5 (4.8 , 4.0)

without filter 4.2 (4.4 , 3.7)

See page 358 for detailed information.

🔍 **Engine coolant:**

Capacity: 9.5 L (10.0 qt, 8.4 Imp.qt.)

Coolant type – “Toyota Genuine Long Life Coolant” or equivalent

With ethylene–glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components

Do not use alcohol type antifreeze or plain water alone.

For checking the engine coolant, see page 361.

For changing the engine coolant, see the label on the coolant reservoir.

🔍 **Automatic transmission:**

Fluid type – “Toyota Genuine ATF Type T–IV”

See page 366 for detailed information.

🔍 **Tire information:**

See page 373 through 381 for detailed information.

🔍 **Tire pressure:**

Tire size	cold tires kPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, psi)	
	Front	Rear
P225/60R16 97H	210 (2.1, 30)	210 (2.1, 30)
P225/55R17 95H	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
225/55R17 97W	240 (2.4, 35)	240 (2.4, 35)

For sustained high speeds above 200 km/h (124 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add the tire pressure given below to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.

P225/60R16 97H	30kPa (0.3 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, 5 psi)
P225/55R17 95H	20kPa (0.2 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, 3 psi)
225/55R17 97W	10kPa (0.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> or bar, 1 psi)